

FOCUS


GLOBAL SCALE
of English

WORKBOOK

DANIEL BRAYSHAW | BARTOSZ MICHAŁOWSKI

3

ALWAYS LEARNING

PEARSON

Pearson Education Limited

Edinburgh Gate, Harlow
Essex, CM20 2JE, England
and Associated Companies throughout the world

www.english.com/focus

© Pearson Education Limited 2016

The right of Daniel Brayshaw and Bartosz Michałowski to be identified as authors of this work has been asserted by them in accordance with the Copyright, Designs and Patents Act, 1988.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise without the prior written permission of the copyright holders.

First published 2016
Third impression 2017
ISBN 978-1-4479-9817-4

Set in Avenir
Printed and bound by Golden Cup in China (03)

Acknowledgements

The publisher and authors would like to thank the following people for their feedback and comments during the development of the material:
Humberto Santos Duran, Anna Maria Grochowska, Inga Lande,
Magdalena Loska, Rosa Maria Maldonado, Juliana Queiroz Pereira,
Tomasz Siuta, Renata Tomaka-Pasternak

Text

We are grateful to the following for permission to reproduce copyright material:
Article on page 5 adapted from <http://www.webuser.co.uk/websites/online-fun-blog/websites/393104/10-amazing-lego-facts>, Lego, with permission from LEGO;
Article on page 25 adapted from 'Autistic boy's basketball dream becomes a reality', The Telegraph, 12/03/2006 (Wapshott, N), copyright © Telegraph Media Group Limited;
Article on page 49 adapted from 'Sam Stern's tips and recipes for student cooks', The Telegraph, 11/09/2013 (Stern, S), copyright © Telegraph Media Group Limited;
Article on page 60 adapted from Norwegian town places mirrors on hillsides to shine light into valley, The Telegraph, 23/10/2013 (Alexander, H), copyright © Telegraph Media Group Limited;
Quote on page 82 from '50 Rules Children Won't Learn in School' (Sykes, C) 21/08/2007, St. Martin's Press;
Quote on page 82 from Cold Hard Truth: On Business, Money & Life Doubleday, Canada (O'Leary, K) p.151, Random House of Canada Limited and Kevin O'Leary, author of Cold Hard Truth on Men, Women & Money (www.kevinoleary.com);
Article on page 96 adapted from Tim Robbins back behind bars - as an acting mentor, The Telegraph, 02/09/2013 (Hawksley, R), copyright © Telegraph Media Group Limited.

In some instances we have been unable to trace the owners of copyright material, and we would appreciate any information that would enable us to do so.

Photo Acknowledgements

The publisher would like to thank the following for their kind permission to reproduce their photographs:

(Key: b-bottom; c-centre; l-left; r-right; t-top)

123RF.com: fastfun23 76; **Alamy Images:** BSIP SA 71l, Hemis 35, Juice Images 50, MBI 89, Michael Preston 13l, Kumar Sriskandan 40, David Wall 96bl, ZUMA Press, Inc. 96r; Corbis: In Pictures / Andrew Aitchison 95, Reuters / NTB Scanpix 60tl, 60br; **DK Images:** Steve Gorton 14, Mockford and Bonetti 32/2, Eric Thomas 22t; **Fotolia.com:** abdrahimmahfar 71r, allapen 130bl, alswart 88, auremar 8/3, Goran Bogicevic 20br, Franck Boston 47l, dabldy 56, Philippe Devanne 20tr, Jeanette Dietl 8/6, floral_set 96tl, fovivafoto 20bl, Christos Georghiou 22b, graphit 133, Anton Gvozdikov 37l, high_resolution 132, ikonoklast_hh 15, ioStephy.it 130r, JackF 32tl, kanate 1t, Lsantilli 20cr, macrovector 128, markos86 8/1, Neyak 32/1, nickolae 62, oksix 100, Dirk Peddinghaus 8/2, pixarno 70l, roza 32/3, Gina Sanders 28, Gino Santa Maria 70br, shock 20cl, silvae 80tr, stokkete 85, THesIMPLIFY 80cr, Dmytro Titov 8/4, valeriy555 47r, vbaleha 13r, Vjom 10br, Tom Wang 8br, yellowj 8/5, 58bl, 58br; **Getty Images:** Archive Photos 84tr, David Buffington 49b, Digital Vision / James Whitaker 37r, Brendan Hoffman 72, Johner Images 49t, Photolibrary / Francois De Heel 37c, Purestock 93, Fox / Kevin Winter 25; **Imagestate Media:** John Foxx Collection 8tl; **Pearson Education Ltd:** Naki Kouyioumtzis 32/4; Rex Features: 13cl, 13cr; **Shutterstock.com:** bikeriderlondon 20tl, 80bl, Bocman1973 2, Greg Epperson 68, Helga Esteb 98, Everett Collection 84tl, Fifian Iromi 26, LesPalenik 84b, MaxFX 36, Monkey Business Images 99, Phase4Studios 8/7, Dan Schreiber 57, Viorel Sima 94, Sylverarts 21, Tsian 92, Dave Turner 32/5, Peter Weber 23; **Survival International:** 61

Illustrations

Illustrated by Jacek Krajewski (Studio Gardengraf) p. 4, 7, 10, 27, 32, 34, 39, 51, 63, 75, 87, 97

All other images © Pearson Education

Every effort has been made to trace the copyright holders and we apologise in advance for any unintentional omissions. We would be pleased to insert the appropriate acknowledgement in any subsequent edition of this publication.

CONTENTS

Intro	
0.1 Home sweet home, 0.2 National dishes	4
0.3 Flashmob, 0.4 Money, money, money	5
0.5 At the movies, 0.6 My technology	6
0.7 Growing up, 0.8 Young entrepreneurs	7
Unit 1 Looks	
1.1 Vocabulary	8
1.2 Grammar	10
1.3 Listening language practice	11
1.4 Reading	12
1.5 Grammar	14
1.6 Speaking language practice	15
1.7 Writing	16
1.8 Use of English	17
1.9 Self-assessment	18
1.10 Self-check	19
Unit 2 Just do it!	
2.1 Vocabulary	20
2.2 Grammar	22
2.3 Listening language practice	23
2.4 Reading	24
2.5 Grammar	26
2.6 Speaking language practice	27
2.7 Writing	28
2.8 Use of English	29
2.9 Self-assessment	30
2.10 Self-check	31
Unit 3 Going places	
3.1 Vocabulary	32
3.2 Grammar	34
3.3 Listening language practice	35
3.4 Reading	36
3.5 Grammar	38
3.6 Speaking language practice	39
3.7 Writing	40
3.8 Use of English	41
3.9 Self-assessment	42
3.10 Self-check	43
Unit 4 Eat up	
4.1 Vocabulary	44
4.2 Grammar	46
4.3 Listening language practice	47
4.4 Reading	48
4.5 Grammar	50
4.6 Speaking language practice	51
4.7 Writing	52
4.8 Use of English	53
4.9 Self-assessment	54
4.10 Self-check	55
Unit 5 One world	
5.1 Vocabulary	56
5.2 Grammar	58
5.3 Listening language practice	59
5.4 Reading	60
5.5 Grammar	62
5.6 Speaking language practice	63
5.7 Writing	64
5.8 Use of English	65
5.9 Self-assessment	66
5.10 Self-check	67
Unit 6 Get well	
6.1 Vocabulary	68
6.2 Grammar	70
6.3 Listening language practice	71
6.4 Reading	72
6.5 Grammar	74
6.6 Speaking language practice	75
6.7 Writing	76
6.8 Use of English	77
6.9 Self-assessment	78
6.10 Self-check	79
Unit 7 In the spotlight	
7.1 Vocabulary	80
7.2 Grammar	82
7.3 Listening language practice	83
7.4 Reading	84
7.5 Grammar	86
7.6 Speaking language practice	87
7.7 Writing	88
7.8 Use of English	89
7.9 Self-assessment	90
7.10 Self-check	91
Unit 8 Good citizens	
8.1 Vocabulary	92
8.2 Grammar	94
8.3 Listening language practice	95
8.4 Reading	96
8.5 Grammar	98
8.6 Speaking language practice	99
8.7 Writing	100
8.8 Use of English	101
8.9 Self-assessment	102
8.10 Self-check	103
Exam strategies	104
Function phrase bank, writing	107
Function phrase bank, speaking	112
Vocabulary bank	114
Vocabulary bank – practice exercises	127
Self-checks answer key	135

0.1 Home sweet home

Present tenses – review • Houses

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the words in the sentences. The first letter of each word is given.

- 0 Amy lives **n**ear **t**he **s**ea. In summer, we sunbathe in her garden and we can hear the waves.
- 1 They've moved into a **d**_____ **h**_____. Because it's not joined to the neighbours' house, it's quiet.
- 2 Many old people choose to live in **b**_____ because there are no stairs to climb.
- 3 We only have meals in the **d**_____ **r**_____ on special occasions. Normally, we eat in the kitchen.
- 4 It's very convenient living in the **c**_____ **c**_____. My flat is only five minutes from the main station and all the shops.
- 5 I have a big **b**_____ against the wall in my bedroom and I'm slowly filling it with all the novels I've read.
- 6 Our boots are down in the **b**_____. Mum won't go there because she says spiders live under the house.

2 Read the email and choose the correct options.

Hi Vicky,
 How are you? Guess what! We're moving house again! ☹️
 I know, I know! It's ridiculous, right? I ¹*hate / am hating* it. We ²*move / have moved* three times in two years. I'm ³*just getting / I just got* to know my new school friends and suddenly it's time to leave again. Mum and Dad ⁴*are packing up / have packed up* things upstairs right now – I should be helping, but the thought of putting all my stuff in boxes again ⁵*makes / has made* me want to cry. It would be so much better if Dad had a normal job. I just want to stay in one place for a few years! I ⁶*go / am going* crazy with all this constant change.
 Miss you,
 C.

3 Complete the sentences with the Present Simple, Present Continuous or Present Perfect form of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms.

- 0 *I'm driving* (drive) now. Can I call you back later?
- 1 Graham _____ (not clean) the bathroom once so far this year. Avoid it if you can!
- 2 Every September Helen _____ (order) all the stuff she needs for school from that website.
- 3 What _____ (you/wait) for? The washing-up isn't going to do itself, you know.
- 4 I _____ (never/live) in a house with a balcony. It's really annoying in the summer when it's hot.
- 5 _____ (you/really/enjoy) tidying up? If so, you can do my room any time you like!
- 6 What's that smell? It's coming from the kitchen. _____ (something/burn)?

0.2 National dishes

Quantifiers • Food and drink

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Write C (countable) or U (uncountable) next to the words in the box. Then use them to complete the shopping list.

bread U butter chicken
 chocolate eggs jam
 olive oil potatoes soup

Shopping

- 2 loaves of ⁰bread (white/brown)
- 3 cans of ¹_____ (minestrone, chicken, tomato)
- a packet of ²_____
- a jar of ³_____ (raspberry)
- a box of ⁴_____ (free-range)
- 2 bars of ⁵_____ (milk/white)
- a big bag of ⁶_____
- a bottle of ⁷_____
- 4 pieces of ⁸_____ (breast)

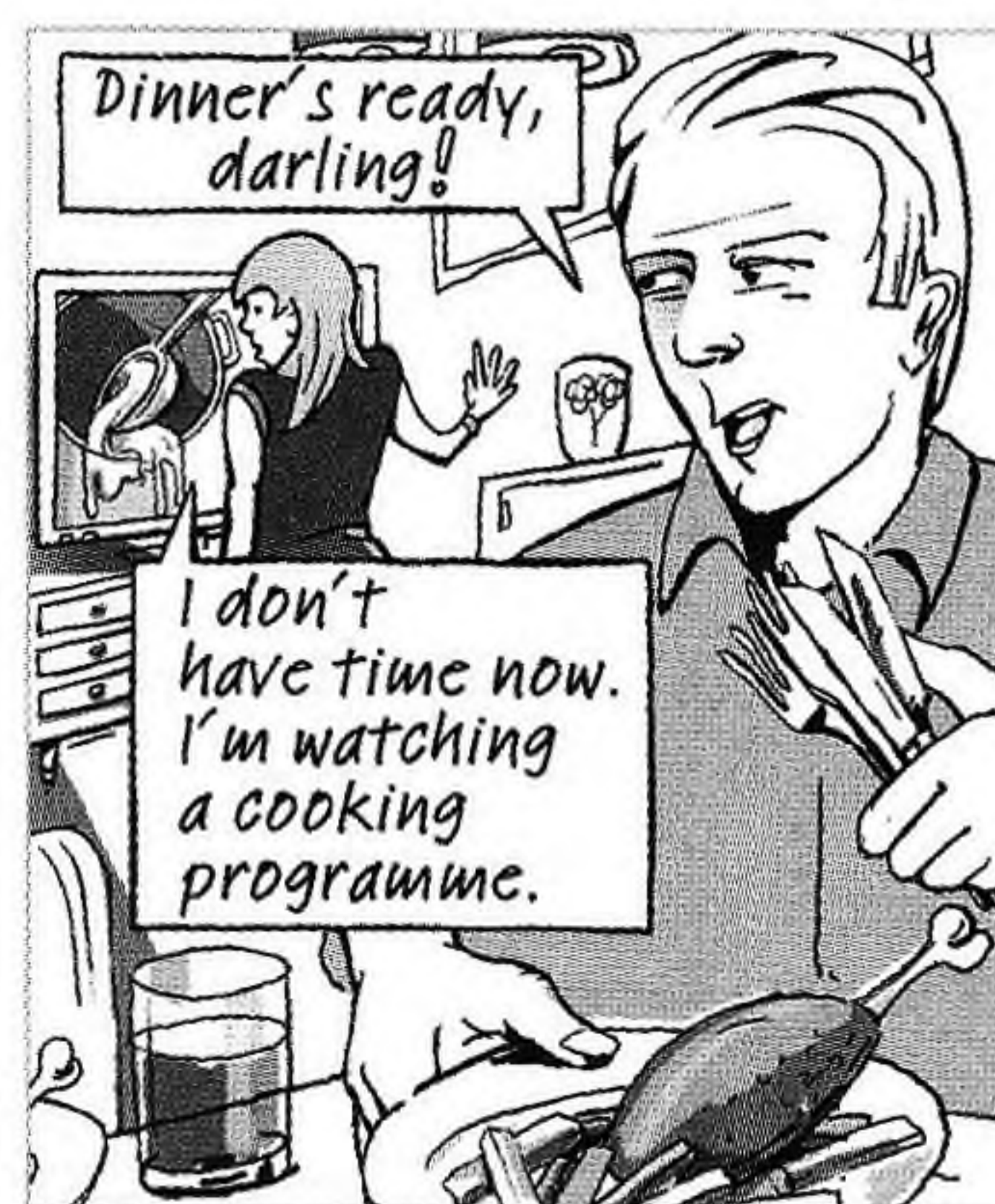
2 Cross out one incorrect option in each sentence.

- 1 Don't put *so much / so many / a lot of* salt on your food. It's not good for you.
- 2 I would like *any / some / lots of* chilli sauce with my burger, please.
- 3 They have *a few / many / little* different pizza toppings to choose from. Which do you fancy?
- 4 I have *few / little / a little* time to help you.
- 5 *Few / Some / A little* people have actually tasted the world's most expensive coffee.

3 Complete the text with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

a little a lot of any few
 little many much some

There are ⁰*a lot of* cooking programmes on television these days. They seem to be on day and night. In fact, ¹_____ channels are nothing but cooking. How ²_____



TV chefs do we need? I actually think that very ³_____ people make ⁴_____ of the dishes they see on these programmes. Perhaps people spend so ⁵_____ time watching cooking shows that they don't actually have time to cook or eat!

0.5 At the movies

Future forms • Books and films

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the words in the sentences. Some letters are given.

- 0 Next Friday the school drama group will perform comedy versions of *Cinderella* and other **fairy tales**.
- 1 There aren't many books to choose from in the airport bookshop. They only have the top ten **b_____t s_____s** and a few travel guides.
- 2 It's what all 'Beliebers' have been waiting for – Justin Bieber's exclusive **a_____y**. Justin tells his own story.
- 3 Al would never tell his male friends, but he quite enjoys watching **r_____c c_____s** with his girlfriend.
- 4 Zoe loves watching **m_____s**, but Dan would rather listen to actors speaking words than singing them.
- 5 **S_____e f_____n** films have been popular with many young people ever since *Star Wars* was a huge hit in the 1980s.

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 The phone is ringing. ___ it, please?
A Will you answer B Are you going to answer
C Are you answering
- 2 The students ___ their final exam tomorrow at 9 a.m.
A will sit B are going to sit
C are sitting
- 3 ___ some new books online tonight if I have time.
A I'll order B I'm going to order
C I'm ordering
- 4 I can't come over this evening. Jane and I ___ at 7 p.m. to talk about our Science project.
A will meet B are going to meet
C are meeting
- 5 Look at all this traffic! ___ late for the appointment, I'm afraid.
A We'll be B We're going to be
C We're being

3 Complete the conversations with the most appropriate future forms of the words in brackets. Use short forms.

Conversation 1

Assistant: Which colour phone would you like, sir? We have black, white and champagne.

Jake: Hmm, good question. I think I **o'll have** (have) black.

Assistant: Very good, sir. I **1 _____** (just/check) that we have that particular model here in the shop ... Yes, we do. How would you like to pay?

Jake: Erm ... I guess I **2 _____** (pay) in cash.

Conversation 2

Molly: Have you decided what you **3 _____** (do) this afternoon?

Scott: Yeah, I **4 _____** (meet) Paul at two and we **5 _____** (play) Frisbee if the weather is good.

Molly: Well, it's clear and blue at the moment, so I don't think it **6 _____** (rain).

0.6 My technology

First and Second Conditionals • Technology and the Internet

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the notifications with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

[change chat click upload
follow log switch type visit]

We don't recognise your location. Are you **o'logging** on to our website with a new device or connection?

1 _____ us on Twitter at #Eurolot.

Please make sure you have **2 _____** off your phone.

To open the program, **3 _____ on the blue and white icon.**

Please 4 _____ our website to find out more.

To access your account, please **5 _____** in your password.

To **6 _____** your profile picture, select a new photograph, right click and choose 'Make this my profile picture'.

2 Put the words in the correct order to form conditional sentences. Add commas where necessary.

- 0 the same phone / know / won't / as your sister / you / you / buy
If **you buy the same phone as your sister, you won't know** which is yours.
- 1 go crazy / if / would / he / wasn't able to
Liam _____ check Twitter at least once every hour.
- 2 charges / last all day / she / if
Will Lucy's phone battery _____ it fully?
- 3 late again / we'll / is / get stuck
If Mum _____ in the rush hour traffic.
- 4 she / would / had more time / talk to her friends
If Jasmine _____ rather than text with them.

3 Complete the First and Second Conditional sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 0 If we **finish** (finish) band practice on time tonight, I **o'll meet** (meet) you for sushi.
- 1 If we _____ (not have) school tomorrow, I _____ (go) cross-country skiing with my brother. Unfortunately, it's Wednesday and we do have school.
- 2 I _____ (not buy) that model of phone if I _____ (be) you. My sister has one and she hates it.
- 3 OK, OK, you can borrow my bike, but if I _____ (lend) it to you, _____ (you/ride) safely?
- 4 If everybody _____ (look) the same, we _____ (get) tired of looking at each other.
- 5 If you _____ (eat) nothing but junk food, you _____ (feel) tired all the time. You should change your diet.

0.7 Growing up

Modal verbs for obligation and permission • Education

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the headings in the box with the word groups. There are two extra headings.

Agriculture Art Business Engineering
 Geography History Languages
 Physical Education (PE)

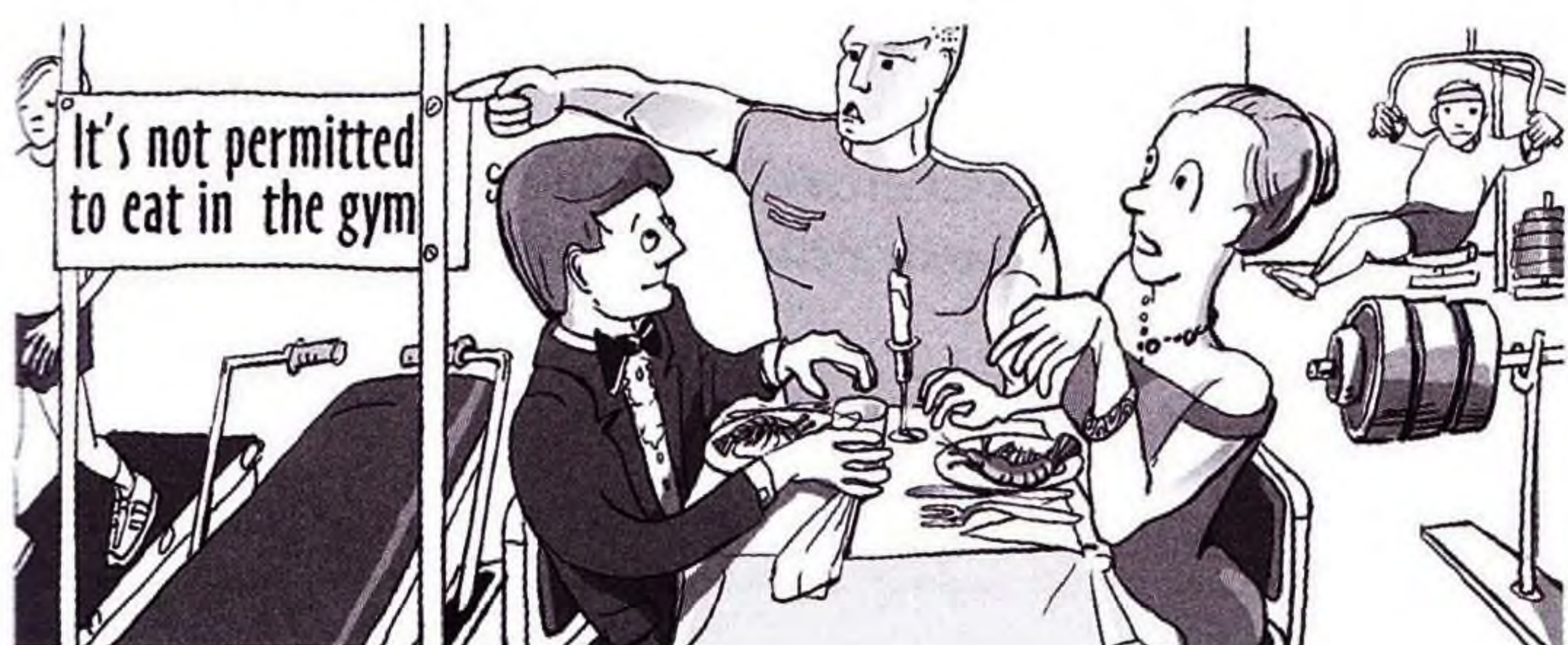
- 0 **Agriculture** : farming, plants, food
- 1 _____ : maps, countries, continents
- 2 _____ : kings and queens, wars and battles
- 3 _____ : vocabulary, grammar, pronunciation
- 4 _____ : painting, drawing, sculpture
- 5 _____ : sales, marketing, accounting

2 Choose the correct options.

- 1 You *need to* / *don't have to* / *mustn't* be male to be an astronaut.
- 2 You *have to* / *mustn't* / *can't* be eighteen to vote in a general election in most countries.
- 3 PE teachers *mustn't* / *are allowed to* / *need to* be physically fit.
- 4 I'm *allowed to* / *must* / *mustn't* remember to send Pauline a birthday card this year.
- 5 Children *can* / *must* / *can't* watch films that have an '18 certificate'.
- 6 Men *can* / *must* / *needn't* wear pink if they want to.

3 Rewrite the sports centre rules. Use modal verbs for permission and obligation. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 0 Pets are not permitted in the sports centre.
 You can't/aren't allowed to bring pets into the sports centre.
- 1 It is necessary to have the correct change for the lockers in the changing rooms.
 You _____ have the correct change for the lockers in the changing rooms.
- 2 It is not necessary to wear a swimming cap in the pool.
 You _____ wear a swimming cap in the pool.
- 3 Parents are permitted to enter the baby pool with their child.
 Parents _____ enter the baby pool with their child.
- 4 It is not permitted to eat in the gym.
 You _____ eat in the gym.



0.8 Young entrepreneurs

Defining relative clauses • Work

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the words in the sentences. Some letters are given.

- 0 Ellen wants to be rich, so she is looking for a job that **pays** a **high salary**.
- 1 Mum is often home late because her job involves **l_____g h_____s**.
- 2 So, the job is forty hours a week and you will get paid extra if you work **o_____e**.
- 3 I don't want a boss telling me what to do all the time. I want to **w_____k** for **m_____f**.
- 4 Uncle Steve has **a_____d f_____r** nine different jobs this month, but he hasn't had even one interview.
- 5 Dad hates travelling to and from work every day. He'd much prefer to **w_____k** from **h_____e**.

2 Write sentences with defining relative clauses. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 0 Sochi / the Russian city / the 2014 Winter Olympics were held
Sochi is the Russian city where the 2014 Winter Olympics were held.
- 1 an igloo / a traditional type of Inuit house / is made of snow

- 2 a puck / a small flat disk / is used instead of a ball in ice hockey

- 3 an ice dancer / a performer / skates to music

- 4 ski jumping and cross country skiing / the winter sports / Poland is best at

- 5 this amazing speed skating track / the place / three world records were broken yesterday

3 Add relative pronouns to the sentences where necessary. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 0 This is the type of business **ø** I think people will be keen to invest in.
- 1 Do you have an idea for a product or service _____ you think people will love?
- 2 This is the university department _____ Economics, Finance and Banking are taught.
- 3 Nobody wants a career _____ they find boring or unrewarding.
- 4 Welcome to the house _____ Steve Jobs lived when he first had the idea for Apple computers.
- 5 I'm not the sort of person _____ likes to take risks.
- 6 We are now on the boat _____ Coco Chanel bought after she made her millions as a fashion designer.
- 7 If you have an idea for a product _____ is more environmentally friendly, please tell us about it.

1.1 Vocabulary

Appearance • Personality

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the words in the box with the photos. There are two extra words.

[blouse boots coat hoodie jacket shirt shoes skirt suit trousers]



0 coat



1



2



3



4



5



6



7

2 Write the opposites. The first letter of each word is given.

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 0 tall | <u>short</u> |
| 1 caring | s_____ |
| 2 hard-working | l_____ |
| 3 outgoing | s_____ |
| 4 arrogant | m_____ |
| 5 cheerful | m_____ |
| 6 crazy | s_____ |
| 7 curly | s_____ |
| 8 blond | d_____ |
| 9 long | s_____ |

WORD STORE 1A

Clothes and accessories

3 Read the definitions and write the words for accessories.

- 0 A piece of jewellery which you wear on your finger. ring
- 1 These come in pairs like gloves and keep your hands warm. _____
- 2 A formal piece of clothing which is worn on a shirt and under a jacket. _____
- 3 These protect your eyes from the sun. _____
- 4 A casual/sports top which is made of very warm material. _____
- 5 A single, loose, flexible piece of jewellery which women wear around their wrists. _____
- 6 This is made of wool and just like a cap keeps your head warm. _____
- 7 Large rings which are not flexible and which women wear around their wrists. _____
- 8 You wear this around your neck to keep out the cold. _____

4 Read the report and choose the correct options.

Fashion in focus

Red Carpet Report

This week's Red Carpet Report comes from London, where the Prince and Princess attended the premiere of the new James Bond film on Saturday. The royal couple looked extremely smart in their ¹formal / casual clothes. Prince Nicholas wore a black ²suit / fleece with ³mittens / a waistcoat under the jacket and a dark purple ⁴bangle / tie around his neck. Princess Abigail wore a gorgeous blue silk ⁵designer dress / woollen hat from her favourite Paris boutique and a diamond ⁶ring / bracelet around her left wrist. She arrived at Leicester Square wearing a lovely old pair of ⁷vintage sunglasses / thick tights which protected her eyes from the hundreds of flashing paparazzi cameras.



REMEMBER BETTER

To help you learn words for clothes and accessories, make a list of some of the things that you own. Include some details about colours, materials, etc. Check any new words you need in a dictionary.

Which of the items in Exercises 1, 3 and 4 do you own? Make a list, then add extra details. Look at the example below for help.

I own a thick, grey winter coat, a pair of black leather boots, two silver rings ...

WORD STORE 1B

Verb phrases – clothes

- 5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

changed clothes dressed fit
gets matches suits undressed

- Sophie! Please get dressed and eat your breakfast or you'll be late for school.
- Jack, go and get _____. The guests will be here soon and you're still in your jeans.
- I've put on weight and this T-shirt doesn't _____ me anymore.
- I know it's an expensive bag, but it _____ my new shoes perfectly.
- Mike felt really embarrassed when the doctor asked him to get _____.
- You look beautiful in that dress, Emily. Blue really _____ you.

WORD STORE 1C

Synonyms – appearance and personality

- 6 Choose the odd one out in each group.

- | | | |
|---------------|------------|---------------|
| 1 mischievous | cheeky | popular |
| 2 adventurous | attractive | gorgeous |
| 3 creative | cute | imaginative |
| 4 charming | adorable | brave |
| 5 elegant | childish | sophisticated |
| 6 immature | cool | stylish |

- 7 Complete the descriptions with words from Exercise 6. The number of letters is given in brackets.

CHANNEL 1

Housemates contestants enter house for new series

Last night the contestants for the latest series of hit TV show *Housemates* entered their new home for the first time. Here's what we think of them:

Holly – the good-looking one. She's twenty-two and absolutely ⁰gorgeous. (8 letters)

Phillip was very childish when he was interviewed. We think he's the ¹_____ one. (8 letters)

Simon – he's so charming! We think viewers are going to find him ²_____. (8 letters)

Stephanie – a cool young lady. Well-dressed and very ³_____. (13 letters)

Zak was quite cheeky to his housemates. He's definitely the ⁴_____ one. (11 letters)

Tina – the brave one. Loves extreme sports; the most ⁵_____ contestant. (11 letters)

Natalie – very creative; a clothes designer. A very ⁶_____ person. (11 letters)

- 8 Complete the sentences with adjectives from Exercise 6. The first letter of each adjective is given.

- That type of dog is very cute and makes a good choice for a family pet.
- My sister is a doctor, but I'm studying to be an architect. She's very practical, but I'm more c_____.
- Sam traveled all over Africa last year alone. I think he's very b_____.
- I like British fashion, but I think Italian clothes are more e_____.
- Your little brother is really irritating. He's very silly and i_____.
- In Britain TV shows to find new pop singers are now really p_____.
- In general, children are more i_____ than adults and love to tell stories, sing and draw.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 9 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- These ___ sunglasses are over twenty years old. I love the old-fashioned look.
A winter B vintage C baseball
- Your hands will get very cold if you forget your _____.
A boots B scarf C mittens
- Brooke wears two silver ___ around her left wrist.
A bangles B mittens C rings
- You can borrow my shoes if you like. We are the same size, so they should ___ you.
A suit B fit C match
- Billy, you can't wear your football kit to school. Please get _____.
A changed B dressed C undressed
- Kelly got in trouble because she was rude to her Maths teacher. She needs to learn not to be _____.
A charming B cool C cheeky
- Luke is _____. He's seventeen, but he behaves like a twelve-year-old most of the time.
A immature B adorable C cute
- Helen wears all the latest clothes. She always looks so _____.
A popular B stylish C childish
- I admire anyone who is ___ enough to write a novel.
A gorgeous B sophisticated C imaginative
- India always wears the latest fashions and buys expensive designer clothes. She thinks she's really _____.
A cool B adorable C brave

/10

1.2 Grammar

Dynamic and state verbs

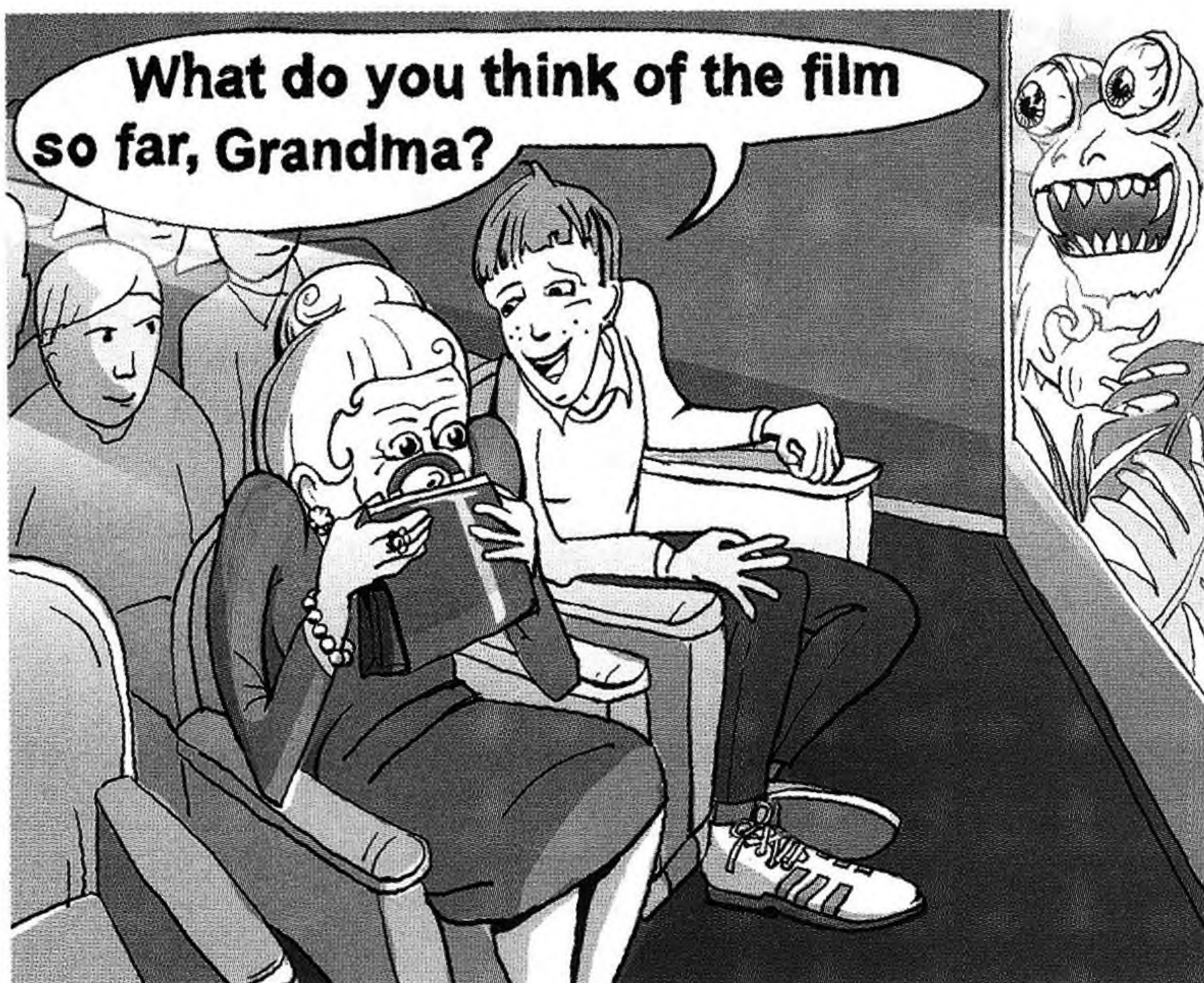
SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read the sentences and write **H** for habits/routines or **N** for things happening now.

- 0 Journalists are waiting outside the hospital for a first look at the new royal baby.
- 1 The doctor doesn't usually arrive until 9 a.m.
- 2 My cousin is a fashion journalist. She always looks stylish.
- 3 In today's programme, we're reporting from Paris, the fashion capital of the world.
- 4 Faraway Travel is currently selling weekend trips to Berlin at bargain prices.
- 5 We give free cinema tickets to all customers who spend more than £100 on clothes.

2 ★ Read the conversations and choose the correct options.

- 1 **Jill:** What do you think of these shoes?
Kate: To be honest, I *prefer* / *'m preferring* the ones you tried on first.
- 2 **Tim:** Are you going to wear that cap?
Danny: *Do you ask* / *Are you asking* if you can borrow it, Tim?
- 3 **Vicky:** Shall I cook some salmon for lunch?
Max: You know I *don't like* / *'m not liking* fish.
- 4 **Ellie:** *Do you wear* / *Are you wearing* thermal underwear today?
Jo: No, I only wear it when it's really cold.
- 5 **Fran:** I *like* / *'m liking* your new suit. Was it expensive?
Jon: Yes. Actually, it was very expensive.
- 6 **Lewis:** What do you think of the film so far, Grandma?
Grandma: Well, to be honest, I *don't enjoy* / *'m not enjoying* it at all!



3 ★★ Find and correct the mistakes in five of the sentences. Use short forms.

- 0 I am not believing Zoe lost my favourite jacket.
don't believe
- 1 Is she really needing another new handbag?

- 2 Are these flowers for me? Oh, Jack! I'm not knowing what to say! _____
- 3 What's happening over there? What are all those people looking at? _____
- 4 I'm not wanting to wear a suit. I hate formal clothes.

- 5 Laura isn't hating Maths, she just finds it difficult.

- 6 Are you seeing the bracelet with the three diamonds? That's the one I want. _____

4 ★★★ Complete the pairs of sentences with the correct Present Simple or Present Continuous form of the verbs in capitals.

- 0 **THINK**
 - a What *do you think* (you) of my new shirt? Cool, huh?
 - b You look sad. What *are you thinking* (you) about?
- 1 **HAVE**
 - a I'm sorry, but I can't come and meet you right now. I _____ lunch with Becky.
 - b Kristy _____ four different pairs of trainers.
- 2 **NOT SEE**
 - a Dave _____ his girlfriend a lot this month because he's revising for his exams.
 - b I _____ any difference between this woollen hat and the one you bought last week.
- 3 **TASTE**
 - a This coffee _____ really strange.
 - b Jeremy _____ the curry to see how spicy it is.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the blog post with the Present Simple or Present Continuous form of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms where possible.

Delphi Designs

Welcome to my fashion blog. I'm Sofia from Athens and I ⁰*love* (love) fashion. I ¹_____ (have) my own clothes shop called Delphi Designs on Patras Street. Today is Thursday and that means my business partner ²_____ (work) in our shop, so I ³_____ (not need) to go to work. Lucky me! The weather is beautiful, so I ⁴_____ (wear) my favourite vintage sunglasses and a simple white cotton top. Personally, I ⁵_____ (not like) clothes with big designer logos all over them - my business partner and I ⁶_____ (believe) that simple, stylish clothes are always the best choice. Come and visit us at Delphi Designs and see for yourself.

1.3 Listening language practice

Collocations • Adverbs • Relationships

- 1 Complete the extract from an interview with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs. Then listen and check.

[be continue find ~~get~~ happen
last lose stop take]

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•1.20 MP3•20

- A: It's so easy to make new online friends, isn't it? They ask to be your friend and you accept. It's not as easy to make real life friends, is it?
- B: That's right. Making friends online takes a few minutes. But a real friend is somebody you get to know over a long period of time. You meet, you spend time together and you ⁰**get to know one another** – ¹it _____ a long time to become close friends.
- A: That's right. But some friendships don't ² _____ forever. And when you don't want to ³ _____ a friendship, you can simply de-friend them, can't you?
- B: I'm not sure I agree with that, actually. I ⁴ _____ it really hard to de-friend online friends. It seems really mean. I suppose that's why I've got over 300 online friends. In real life, if you fall out with a friend, you ⁵ _____ seeing them. Or sometimes you decide that you no longer have much in common. You no longer like the same things or you've changed. Then you lose touch. You don't have to make the decision – ⁶it just _____ naturally. [...]

REMEMBER BETTER

Try to learn phrases rather than single words. This will help you in exam tasks where you have to fill in gaps. Often the missing word will form a fixed phrase with other words that appear before and after the gap.

Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in bold in Exercise 1.

- 0 Everybody gets spots sometimes, no matter how often they wash their face. **It just happens naturally.**
- 1 All good things must come to an end. Nothing _____.
- 2 A couple should _____ extremely well before they get engaged.
- 3 _____ to qualify as a lawyer or a doctor.
- 4 Colin _____ to talk to girls. He gets embarrassed very easily.
- 5 I'm afraid I can't _____ with anyone who turns out to be untrustworthy.
- 6 Zoe and I _____ each other after she met someone else during the holidays.

REMEMBER THIS

Adverbs of manner tell us how we do an action. We form adverbs by adding *-ly* to adjectives, or *-ily* to adjectives ending in *-y*. (*quick – quickly, cheeky – cheekily*). Some irregular adverbs (*early, fast, hard, high, late, long and low*) have the same form as the adjective. The adverb from good is well.

- 2 Read REMEMBER THIS. Complete each pair of sentences with the adverb and the adjective form of a word from the box. Then decide which form it is: *adv* or *adj*.

[good happy late long]

- 1 Ryan didn't do very well in the race, but at least he tried. (adv) / adj
Not everyone can be intelligent or attractive, but we can all be _____. adv / adj
- 2 Will we have to wait _____ for the results of the English test? adv / adj
If you want a lift, be nice to me. It is a _____ walk home from here. adv / adj
- 3 I can hardly keep my eyes open. Last night was a _____ night. adv / adj
Nina and Eliza arrived _____ and missed the start of the fashion show. adv / adj
- 4 We are _____ to announce that school will be closed this Friday. adv / adj
I will _____ wait for you if we can go for ice cream afterwards. adv / adj

WORD STORE 1D

Relationships – verb phrases

- 3 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.
- 1 Scott is a reliable friend. He's always there ___ me when I need someone to talk to.
A by B with C for
- 2 Have you fallen ___ with your sister again, James? Why can't you two just be friends?
A over B out C off
- 3 Matt and I used to be best friends, but since we left school, we've lost touch ___ each other.
A about B with C to
- 4 Dean thinks Tim is arrogant. They don't get ___ very well.
A on B over C out
- 5 Leah and Sophie met on a long bus journey. They discovered they had a lot ___ common.
A of B with C in
- 6 Dan and John started hanging ___ together after they met at an English club.
A out B with C in

1.4 Reading

Unusual appearances • Compound adjectives

Glossary

- transformed** (v) = changed completely
costume (n) = clothes that make you look like something, e.g. an animal or a famous person
reflection (n) = an image you can see in a mirror, glass or water
wrinkled (adj) = skin or cloth that is wrinkled has small lines or folds in it

1 Read texts 1–3 and match them with photos A–C.

- 1 2 3

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 1 According to Text 1, Herbert Chavez uses his new appearance
- A to earn money.
 B to educate and entertain.
 C to promote his business.
 D to remind him of his childhood.
- 2 Text 2 describes a change in Fiona's
- A behaviour.
 B daily routine.
 C appearance.
 D social life.
- 3 The author of Text 3 wants to
- A announce a competition.
 B offer advice.
 C advertise a company.
 D tell a story.
- 3 Read the texts again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?
- 1 Herbert Chavez has been a fan of Superman since childhood.
- 2 Herbert Chavez is unemployed.
- 3 Fiona works at a school.
- 4 Fiona slept through her alarm on the morning of the story.
- 5 Oddfaces is an advertising agency.
- 6 You don't have to be young to work for Oddfaces.

4 Match the underlined words in the texts with their synonyms.

- 0 extremely frightened = terrified
- 1 operations = _____
- 2 ten years = _____
- 3 strange = _____
- 4 poorly = _____
- 5 massive = _____

REMEMBER BETTER

When you learn a new word, look in a dictionary and see if you can also learn a synonym or a phrase with a similar meaning. In this way you will expand your vocabulary. To help you remember the words, write a sentence in which both items fit and add it to your vocabulary notes.

Complete each sentence with a pair of synonyms from Exercise 4.

- 0 Polly was extremely frightened/terrified of thunder and lightning.
- 1 The first time I saw a *Batman* film was over _____ ago.
- 2 Since her skiing accident, poor Marta has had three _____ on her leg.
- 3 Lewis has a(n) _____ tattoo that covers both arms, his chest and the whole of his back.
- 4 Lola's facial piercing looks very _____. At first, I thought it was a big spot!
- 5 Both Claire and Emily think they did very _____ in the Physics exam.

WORD STORE 1E

Compound adjectives – appearance

5 Write the words in the box in the correct groups to make compound adjectives. There are two extra words.

[-aged well- -eyed -looking
 -haired -tanned -skinned -handed]

- 0 middle-aged
- 1 short/long/fair/dark/red _____
- 2 right/left _____
- 3 brown/blue/green _____
- 4 light/pale/dark _____
- 5 _____ dressed/built

6 Choose the correct options.

- 1 My cousin prefers *dark / right / middle-haired* men, but she can't explain why.
- 2 Tom is *well / short / fair-sighted*, so he can see things that are close to him but not things that are far away.
- 3 In most Asian countries, it's not cool to be *sun / brown / skin-tanned*. Lighter skin is preferred.
- 4 You don't necessarily have to buy expensive clothes to be *well-built / looking / dressed*.
- 5 Many women say it's quite common for *long / well / middle-aged* men to stop caring about how they look.
- 6 In the past people in some countries used to think that *short / left / good-handed* people were evil.
- 7 At Oddfaces Modelling Agency, you don't need to be *good / red / light-looking* to be successful.

NEWS

Thirty-five-year-old Herbert Chavez from the Philippines has transformed himself from an ordinary dress maker into a real-life Superman. After nineteen surgeries that copy the comic book hero's look, Chavez has become a real-life Clark Kent.

Herbert first fell in love with the superhero when he was five years old. Since then he has spent around 300,000 pesos (£4,400) on his obsession – a huge amount of money compared to the average wage in the Philippines.

When he's not making dresses, Herbert can often be seen in the streets around his home, dressed as Superman. He aims to teach children good morals and have some fun at the same time.

Herbert says he feels like a superhero whenever he pulls on the costume, but his mission is not to save the world, but to help in his own small way and bring a smile to the faces of local children.

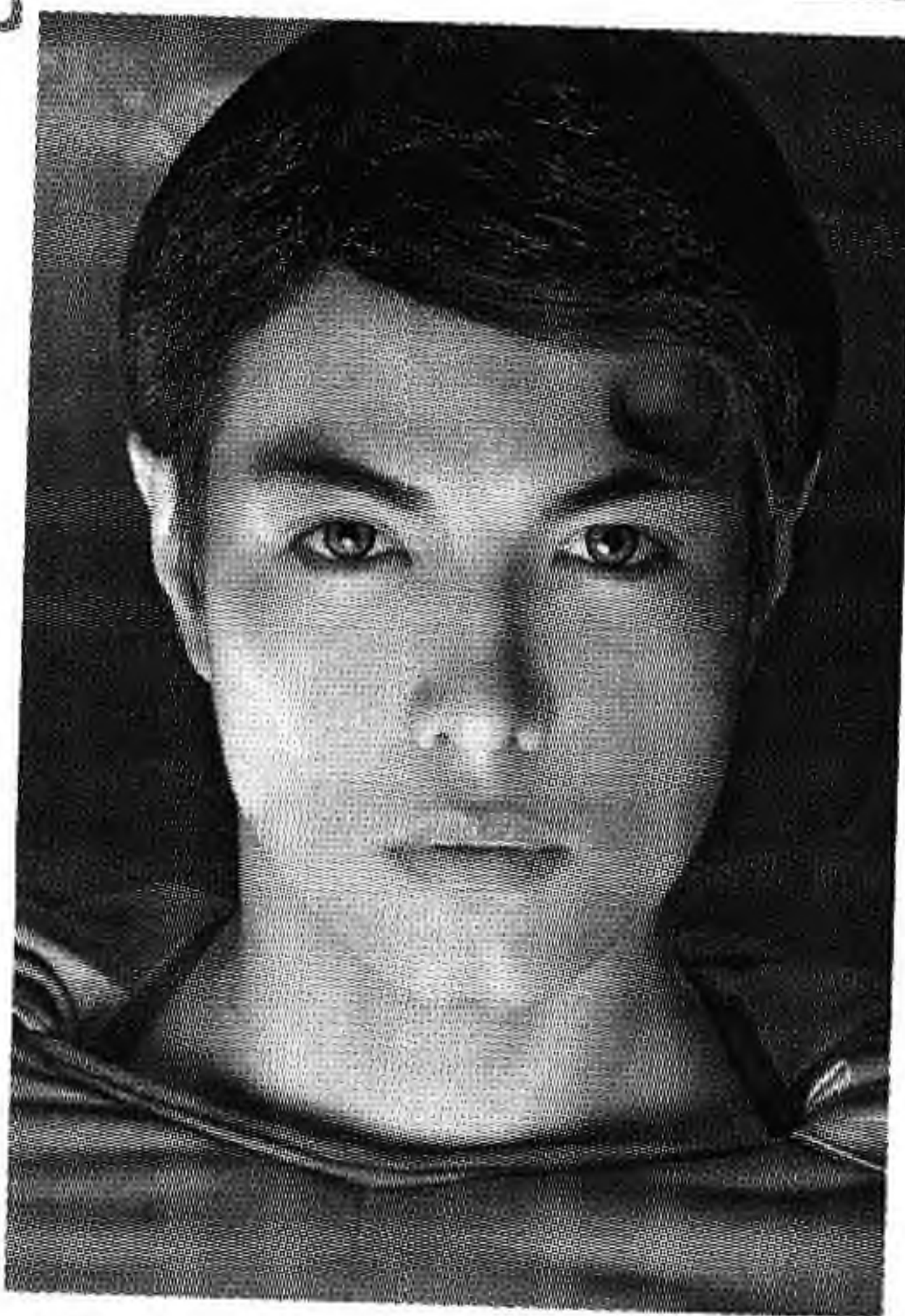
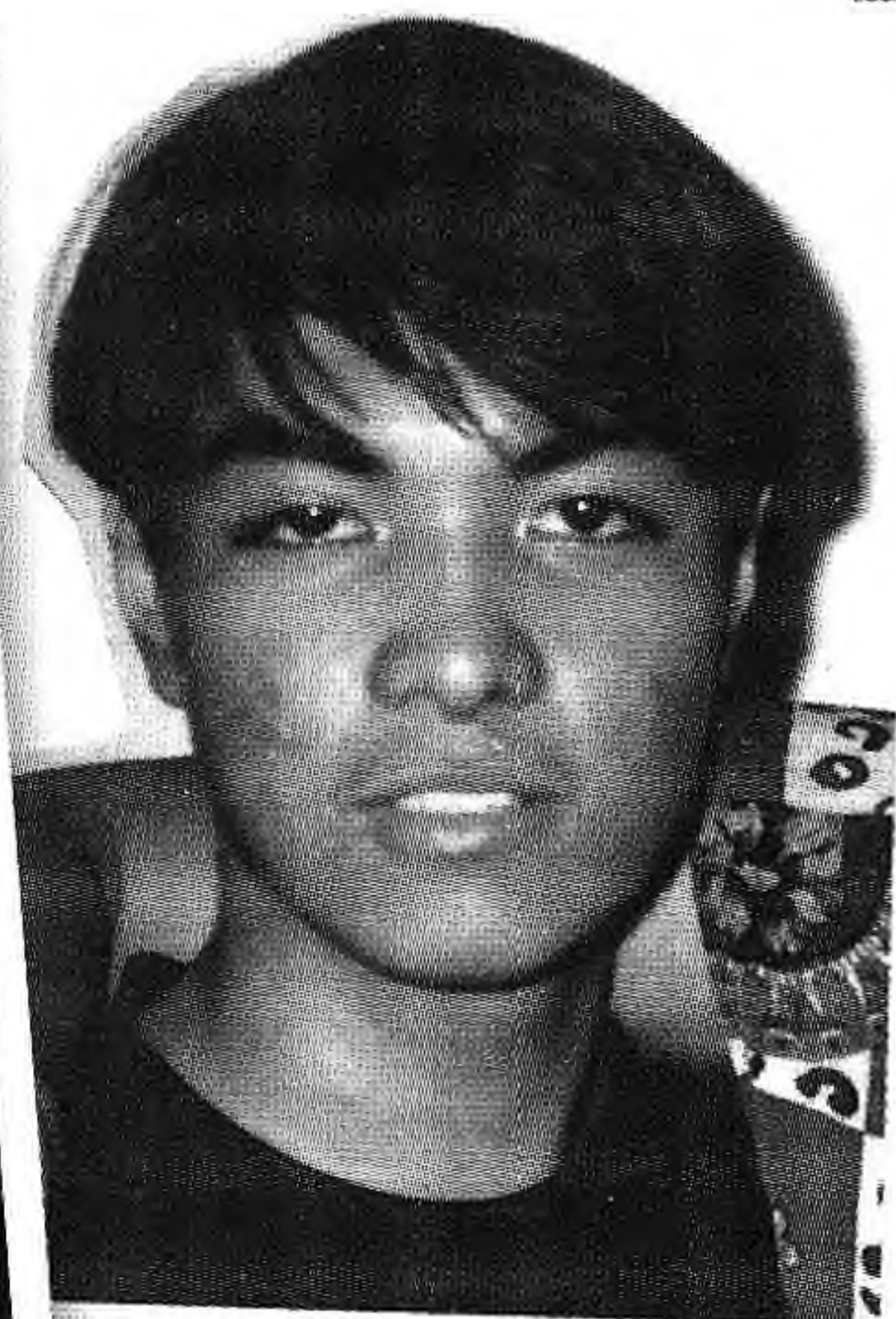
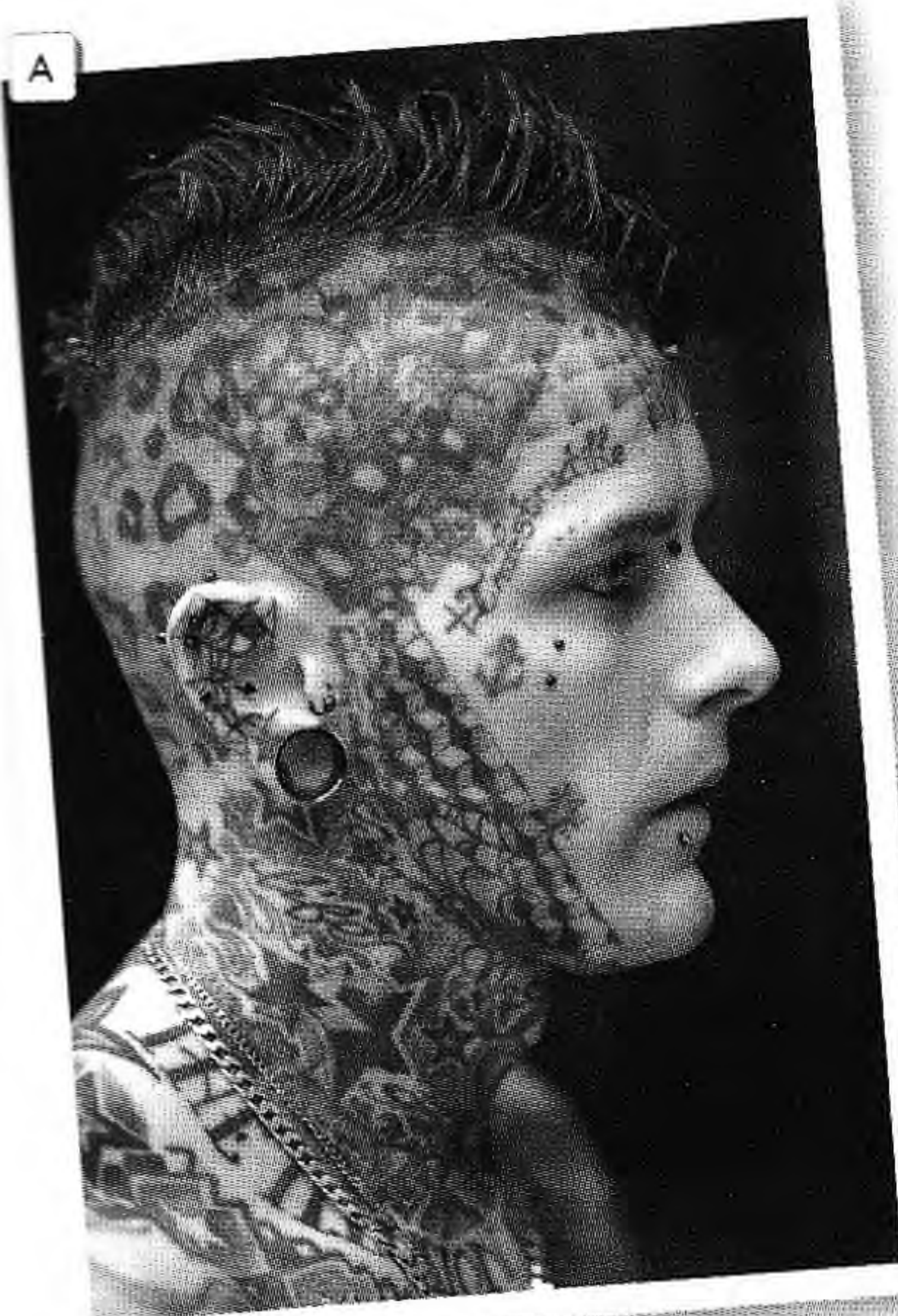
Sleepily, Fiona switched off the alarm clock and tried to wake up fully. It was Monday again and she had another busy week ahead. With only four weeks until her final exams, there was lots of hard work to do and no time for her social life. She really wanted to be older, already finished with school, already earning. Perhaps because winter was coming and it was still cold and dark outside, she found it especially difficult to get out of bed this morning. Her legs felt heavy and she seemed to have less energy than usual. Maybe she had slept badly. Finally, she made it to the bathroom, switched on the light and stood by the sink. When she saw her reflection in the mirror, she screamed. Looking back at her was the face of a terrified old woman – herself, but wrinkled, pale and grey-haired.

At Oddfaces we like our models to be fabulously fat or superbly skinny, ten-feet tall or shockingly short. We love odd models with tattoos, piercings and memorable faces.

We have over 1,000 unique character models between the ages of eighteen and ninety-eight and sizes 7 and 27. Our models can bring a truly eye-catching look to music videos, TV shows and films, and of course, print and film advertising. For over a decade, we have successfully provided the most unusual faces and bodies for top fashion designers, photographers and film directors.

If you need beautifully strange and strangely beautiful people, then look no further.

Pretty faces are everywhere these days. Choose something different. Choose Oddfaces.



1.5 Grammar


Present Perfect Continuous

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with the Present Perfect Simple form of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms.

- 0 Claire has disliked (dislike) Danny since they first met at Julia's party.
- 1 _____ (you/know) Megan for a long time?
- 2 I _____ (never/understand) why people pay so much for brand name clothing.
- 3 How long _____ (Chloe/want) to be a fashion designer?
- 4 _____ (they/see) all the paintings in the gallery yet?
- 5 Grandma _____ (not need) glasses since she had the eye operation.

2 ★ Complete the tour guide's speech with the Present Perfect Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.



'Welcome to our kilt factory. We hope you enjoy the tour. ⁰Have you been waiting (you/wait) long? I hope not. Our company ¹ _____ (produce) kilts for over 150 years. Today we are going to see how a traditional Scottish kilt is made. We ² _____ (make) our famous Highlander model since the 1920s. Originally, kilts were designed for everyday use, but later they were worn only on more formal occasions. We ³ _____ (sell) more and more of them as fashion items in recent years. We also make trousers here at the factory, but we ⁴ _____ (not do) that for as long. Now sir, I see that you are wearing one of our kilts. You look wonderful! ⁵ _____ (you/buy) our brand for a long time?'

3 ★★ Charlie and Mary are at an art gallery. Choose the correct options to complete their conversation.

M: Can we rest for a minute, Charlie? We ¹haven't stopped / haven't been stopping since we got here. I'm exhausted!

C: Sure. We ²ve walked / 've been walking around since nine. Let's get a coffee.

M: Great. I ³haven't had / haven't been having a drink since this morning.

In the café:

C: There are some lovely paintings here, don't you think?

M: Yeah, lovely. It ⁴s been / 's been being a great morning.

C: Listen, Mary, I ⁵ve waited / 've been waiting for the right moment to talk to you.

M: Really? What is it?

C: Well, we are good friends and we ⁶ve liked / 've been liking each other for a long time, right?

M: Yes, Charlie. ⁷We've spent / 've been spending more and more time together recently. What do you want to say?

C: Well, do you think you and I could maybe ... er ...

M: Yes?

C: ... study for our exams together?

M: Oh ... er ... yes, Charlie, I suppose we could.

4 ★★ Complete the sentences in each pair with the Present Perfect Simple and Present Perfect Continuous form of the verbs in capitals.

0 READ

- a Rebecca has been reading that novel all day.
- b Rebecca has read five books this year.

1 LOOK

- a James and Kirsty _____ at photos all morning.
- b James and Kirsty _____ at most of the photos from the school trip.

2 SAVE

- a How long _____ (you) money for a new phone?
- b How much money _____ (you) this year?

3 COLLECT

- a Dan _____ over 200 different *Spiderman* comics.
- b Dan _____ comics for seven years.

4 NOT PLAY

- a Karen _____ football since she broke her leg last year.
- b Karen _____ chess for very long, so she still forgets the rules sometimes.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the text with the Present Perfect Simple or Present Perfect Continuous form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

[buy change contact have help
not read watch wear work]

Emma Brady Stylists

⁰Have you bought (you) any new clothes this year? How long ¹ _____ (you) the same old shoes? How many times ² _____ (you) your hairstyle this year? If you ³ _____ fashion magazines recently because you've been too busy, but want to know what is stylish right now, then maybe I can help. My name is Emma Brady and I'm a personal stylist and shopping consultant. For the last four years, my colleagues and I ⁴ _____ men and women to choose clothes, shoes and hairstyles that really suit them. Since I started my business, I ⁵ _____ with over 200 customers. We ⁶ _____ some very famous people as extremely satisfied clients. Contact us now at em@ebstyle.net.

1.6 Speaking language practice

Talking about a photo

- 1 Put the adjectives in brackets in the correct order to complete the message.

Hi, Kat – just back from the sales. Got some real bargains! First thing I bought was a ⁰ cute ¹ _____ ² _____ (grey, woollen, cute) hat and a ³ _____ ⁴ _____ ⁵ _____ (silver-grey, long, lovely) scarf. They only had ⁶ _____ ⁷ _____ (leather, old-fashioned) gloves in the sale, so I'll have to keep looking for those. I also found a coat, finally! It's a ⁸ _____ ⁹ _____ ¹⁰ _____ (black, mid-length, smart) raincoat and it was reduced by fifty percent! See you at seven – fingers crossed it stays cold and wet – I want to wear my new stuff. ;) Tina x

- 2 Put the words in the correct order to form phrases.

0 photo, / I / this / see / in / can

In this photo, I can see ...

1 standing / he's / background / the / in

2 stylish / she / think / very / looks / I

3 they / be / at / seem / a / to / fashion show

4 looks / as / changing / they / if / are / a / in / it / room

5 hard / it's / what / to / man / make / the / is / out / wearing

- 3 Are these phrases used to show uncertainty (U), speculate (S) or give an opinion (O)?

0 probably

S

4 It's hard to say, but ...

1 I don't think ...

5 I imagine ...

2 I'm not sure, but ...

6 ... seems to be ...

3 ... looks as though ...

- 4 Complete the description with the phrases in Exercise 3. The first letter of each word is given.

This photo shows a woman and a little boy shopping together. They are ⁰ probably mother and son.

¹ I _____ h _____ t _____ s _____ exactly

how old the little boy is, but he ² s _____ t _____

b _____ about seven or eight. The woman is wearing

casual clothes and comfortable shoes and the boy is

dressed like a superhero! He looks very unhappy

though. In fact, it ³ I _____ a _____ t _____

he is crying. I think they are in a children's clothes shop

because the clothes on sale look very small and in the

background there are other adults with young children.

The woman is showing the boy a white shirt and a tie –

⁴ I _____ they are shopping for a school uniform, but

⁵ I _____ t _____ he likes it. ⁶ I _____

n _____ s _____, b _____ maybe the boy is

upset because he'd prefer to wear his superhero clothes

to school.

- 5 Find and correct the mistakes in four of the sentences.

0 I think he doesn't look very happy.

I don't think he looks very happy.

1 I think she hasn't bought anything.

I _____ bought anything.

2 I think they're very elegant.

I _____ elegant.

3 I think those trousers won't fit her.

I _____ fit her.

4 I think they don't agree on which one to buy.

I _____ agree on which one to buy.

5 I think green doesn't suit him.

I _____ him.

6 I don't think she's attractive.

I _____ attractive.

- 6 Read the description and choose the correct options.

In this photo I can ¹ show / see three young women. They are ² probably / as though in a hairdressing salon because the woman on the left ³ has cut / is cutting the blond girl's hair. The hairdresser looks quite young and a bit nervous or ⁴ perhaps / probably she is just concentrating on what she is doing. It's ⁵ hard / sure to say, but I think the woman ⁶ in / on the right is checking what the hairdresser is doing. She's dressed quite smartly and ⁷ seems / imagines to be an instructor or the boss, so maybe the hairdresser is still in training. Personally, I would never go to a trainee hairdresser, but I ⁸ think the blond girl isn't / don't think the blond girl is too worried. She's smiling and looks very relaxed. Maybe she's happy because she is getting a free haircut!



1.7 Writing

A description of a person

1 Match the sentence halves.

- | | | |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 0 He's in his | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a like a film star. |
| 1 She's the sort of person who | <input type="checkbox"/> | b hard-working. |
| 2 She's got long | <input type="checkbox"/> | c hangs out with us. |
| 3 He sometimes | <input type="checkbox"/> | d loves kids. |
| 4 She looks | <input type="checkbox"/> | e fashionable clothes. |
| 5 He usually wears | <input type="checkbox"/> | f blond hair. |
| 6 She's not always | <input type="checkbox"/> | g mid-twenties. |

2 Put the words in the correct order to complete the sentences.

- 0 in / early / thirties / her / is
Becky is in her early thirties.
- 1 who / kind / person / always / your / remembers / the birthday / of / is
Lucas _____.
- 2 a / make / would / doctor / great
Lucy _____.
- 3 beautiful / hair / long / blond / got
Marta's _____.
- 4 bit / is / too / a / slim
Liam _____.
- 5 kind / unusual / of / looks
Roxanne _____.
- 6 interested / is / not / fashion / in / really
Peter _____.

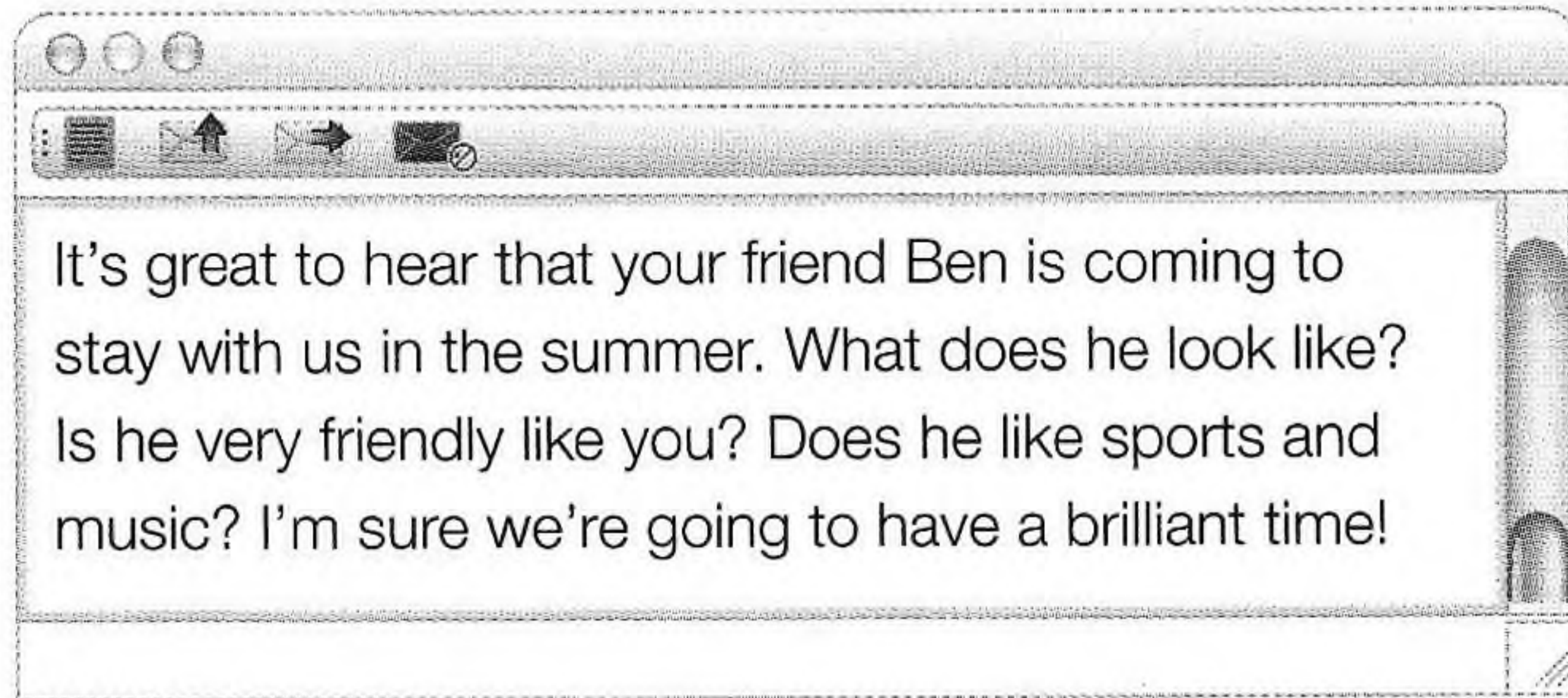
3 Complete the conversation with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

built casual dark dresses easy-going
friendly height into looks ~~our~~ type

- Hi, Jake.
- Hi, Adam.
- I'm meeting Josh later. U coming out?
- Josh?????
- U know Josh, don't you? Ed's cousin.
- Not sure. What does he look like?
- He's ⁰our age, with long ¹_____ hair.
- ?

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 Read part of an email you have received from your English friend Harry and write your reply.



Write your email in 140–190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my email:

- I have started with a friendly greeting (e.g. *Dear James* or *Hi Gemma*).
- I have said why I am writing.
- I have described my friend's appearance (hair, eyes, face, height, build, clothes).
- I have described my friend's personality and interests.
- I have thanked the family.
- I have used contractions (e.g. *I'm*, *aren't*, *that's*).
- I have used some emoticons (☺) and abbreviations (e.g. *info*, *cu*, *gr8*) – but not too many!
- I have finished with a friendly goodbye, (e.g. *Bye 4 now*, *All the best*, *Lots of love*).
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.

- He's got a(n) ²_____ face.
- What?
- Oh come on, Adam. He's medium ³_____ and fairly well- ⁴_____ .
You know him!
- Do I?
- He ⁵_____ a bit like Ed. He always ⁶_____ in black and he's ⁷_____ Goth music.
- Oh! U mean 'Goth Josh'. Yeah, he's a(n) ⁸_____ guy. What time are we meeting?

1.8 Use of English

Key word transformations

1 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example.

0 It's strange, but I don't share a lot of interests with my best friend.

COMMON

It's strange, but I don't have a lot in common with my best friend.

1 Josh started wearing suits when he left university.

SINCE

Josh _____ he left university.

2 Paul is always willing to help me when I need him.

THERE

Paul will _____ for me when I need him.

3 It's possible to inherit the gene for baldness from your mother.

CAN

The gene for baldness _____ from your mother.

4 When I met my girlfriend, I became interested in fashion.

BEEN

I _____ interested in fashion until I met my girlfriend.

5 A long time ago, young people wore uncomfortable clothes.

USED

Young people _____ comfortable clothes a long time ago.

6 The photos are different because one was taken outside and the other inside.

IS

The main _____ that one was taken outside and the other inside.

TIPS:

Question 1: Josh started wearing suits in the past and still wears them now!

Question 2: Which expression describes someone who is always willing to help?

Question 3: Think of a way to change the position of the subject in the sentence.

Open cloze

2 For questions 1–10, read the article below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Can we be friends with our parents?

It'd be great if everyone ⁰got on better with their parents, wouldn't it? We asked some of our site users to suggest ways of building better relationships with mum and dad.

Carla from Brazil: The most important thing, I think, is to try and share the daily tasks and responsibilities ¹ _____ of letting your parents do everything for you. Teenagers sometimes ² _____ their parents as bankers, cooks or cleaners, which is going to cause problems in any relationship.

Fred from the USA: You need to think about their feelings as ³ _____ as your own. How are my parents going to feel if

I seem ashamed of them ⁴ _____ my friends are there? Or if I get mad at them ⁵ _____ time they call me to see how I'm doing?

Ewa from Poland: The most important thing is to be honest. Telling the ⁶ _____ is essential if you want your parents' trust. Everyone wants to lie about their mistakes in ⁷ _____ to avoid getting into trouble. But it only makes things ⁸ _____ if they DO find out. And parents almost ⁹ _____ get to know about what you've done wrong. Everyone makes mistakes, of course, but ¹⁰ _____ mature means handling your mistakes responsibly and honestly.

TIPS:

Question 1: This word joins two things together: one that we do or want and one that we don't.

Question 2: Which word could you use here to mean the same as 'think of'?

Question 3: Which word completes the phrase meaning 'and also'?

1.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.

😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
1.1	Vocabulary	I can describe people's appearance and talk about their personality.					Students' book pages 12–13 Word Store page 3 Workbook pages 8–9
1.2	Grammar	I can understand the difference between dynamic and state verbs and use them correctly.					Students' book page 14 Workbook page 10
1.3	Listening	I can understand the main points of a radio programme about friendship.					Students' book page 15 Workbook page 11
1.4	Reading	I can understand the main points of an article about genes.					Students' book pages 16–17 Workbook pages 12–13
1.5	Grammar	I can use the Present Perfect Simple and Continuous.					Students' book page 18 Workbook page 14
1.6	Speaking	I can describe clothes and speculate about people in photos.					Students' book page 19 Workbook page 15
1.7	Writing	I can describe a person in an email.					Students' book pages 20–21 Workbook page 16

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

1.10 Self-check

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

bangles bracelet fleece
mittens ring scarf suit tie

- 0 Most heat is lost through the head, so wear a hat and a scarf round your neck to stay really warm.
- 1 Stella bought a really cheap _____ and after a few days the finger she wore it on turned green.
- 2 Wear a thermal top with a _____ over the top and then a jacket. You can put the jacket in your backpack if you get too hot up the mountain.
- 3 Gavin doesn't know how to tie a _____. He had to ask his dad to do it for him.
- 4 I don't like _____ because it's impossible to do anything with your fingers when you are wearing them. I have gloves instead.
- 5 David, we are going to a funeral! Of course you have to wear a _____!

/5

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 0 Everyone seems to like Ollie. Personally, I think he's arrogant and I can't understand why he's so _____.
A adventurous B lazy C popular
- 1 These kittens are all so cute. How am I supposed to choose just one when they are all so ____?
A cheeky B adorable C sophisticated
- 2 I know it's not very ____, but I think I'd like money for my birthday if that's OK.
A imaginative B immature C modest
- 3 I think Sam was very ____ to go backpacking on his own. I would be too scared to go alone.
A gorgeous B brave C childish
- 4 Yeah, I really like Polly, but I wouldn't want to ____ with her all the time. She talks too much.
A hang out B get on well C lose touch
- 5 Charlie is _____. He has always done a lot of sport and recently he started working out at the gym.
A blue-eyed B good-looking C well-built

/5

3 Complete the words in the sentences. The first letter in each word is given.

- 0 I don't get on very well with my brother. We aren't close and we often argue.
- 1 Are you going to wear your pyjamas all day? Don't you think you should get **d**_____?
- 2 Whenever I've had problems or been upset, my mum has always been **t**_____ for me.
- 3 Fair-**h**_____ people tend to get sunburnt very quickly.
- 4 I'm almost ready, Dad. I just need to finish drying my hair and get **c**_____ into my dress.
- 5 Delilah's parents aren't old. They are in their forties, so I would describe them as middle-**a**_____.

/5

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

- 0 Every time I see you, you look (look) completely different. I love your new hairstyle!
- 1 I _____ (not believe) you, Hannah. You've lied about this so many times.
- 2 Ian _____ (dance) with Kelly at the moment.
- 3 Ben _____ (need) to see a doctor about his cough.
- 4 _____ (you/put) raisins in Dad's birthday cake again this year? Please don't. I hate them!
- 5 Kim _____ (not know) how to use her new camera – probably because she hasn't read the instructions.

/5

5 Choose the correct options.

- 0 Jessica has eaten / *has been eating* the same kind of frozen meal five times this week.
- 1 Amanda *has known* / *has been knowing* Natalia for about three years now.
- 2 Lucy *has worried* / *has been worrying* about her hair constantly since we arrived at the party.
- 3 Actually, I can speak German, so I've *understood* / *'ve been understanding* everything you said about me.
- 4 Nathan *has sung* / *has been singing* the same song all morning. It's driving me crazy!
- 5 Tom and Ola *have met* / *have been meeting* in secret since their parents told them to stop seeing each other.

/5

6 Read the article and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

New uniform for city hospital nurses

The nurses of Hallamshire Hospital ⁰ _____ wearing the same old uniform for the last ten years. Recently the hospital decided it was time for a change and today pictures of the nurses' new look are finally up on the hospital website. The ¹ _____ white and grey uniforms have gone and been replaced by a much more casual outfit. Sophie Baxter, the head nurse on the children's ward said, 'I ² _____ the new look is great. We ³ _____ a very long time for a change. The new dark blue trousers ⁴ _____ the dark green tops – they look great together, in fact – and we ⁵ _____ that the colours are much more practical.' Of course, nobody wants to go to hospital, but if you are there, you will now be looked after by some very well-dressed nurses.

- 0 A had B have been C are
- 1 A relaxed B creative C formal
- 2 A 'm thinking B have thought C think
- 3 A 've been waiting B 're waiting C wait
- 4 A match B suit C fit
- 5 A are all agreeing B 've all agreeing C all agree

/5

Total /30

2

JUST DO IT!

2.1 Vocabulary

Sport • Compound nouns • Collocations

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Label the sports as **W** for water, **S** for winter or **F** for fighting sports. There is one extra sport.

- 0 cross-country skiing
- 1 diving
- 2 kayaking
- 3 motor racing
- 4 ski jumping
- 5 snowboarding
- 6 scuba diving
- 7 surfing
- 8 taekwondo
- 9 wrestling

S

2 Complete the advert with *go*, *play* or *do*.



SPORTS FOR ALL!



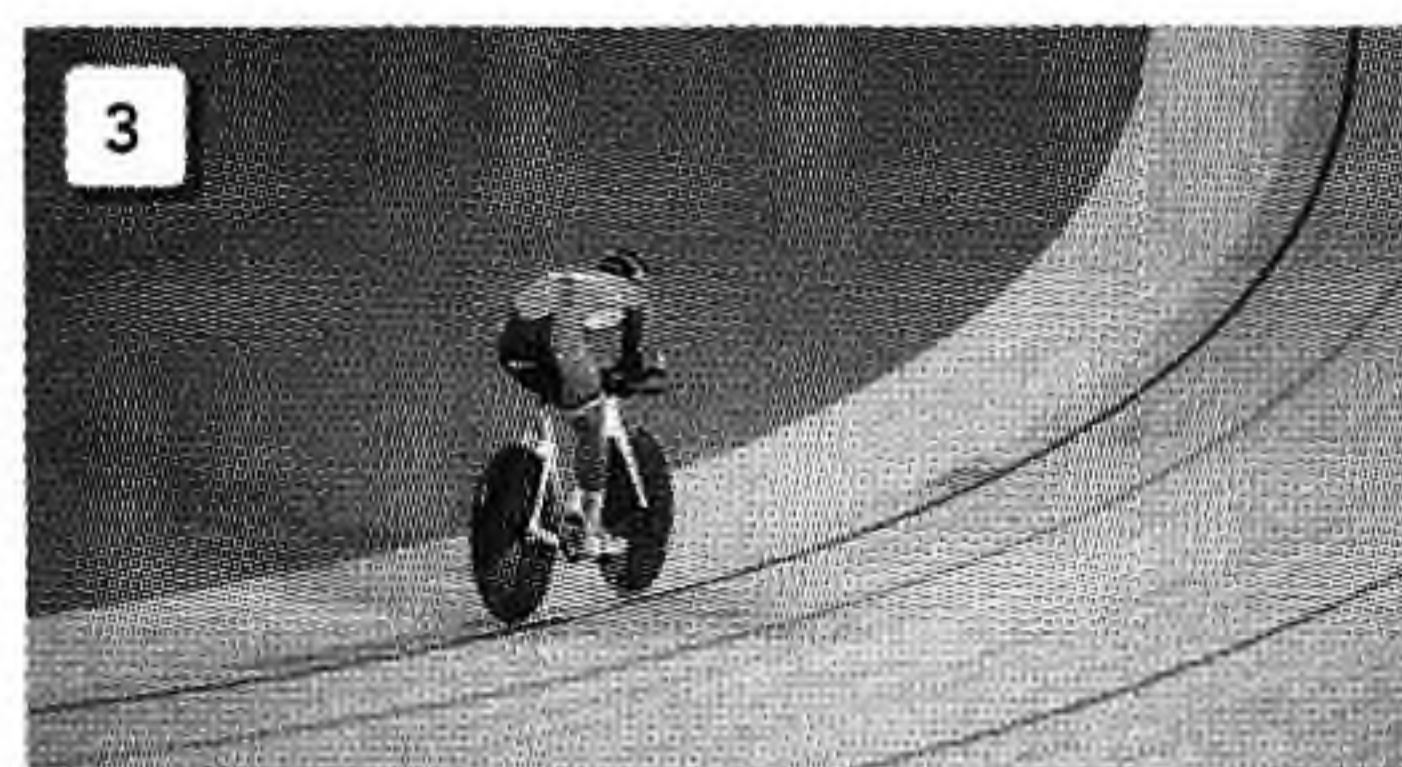
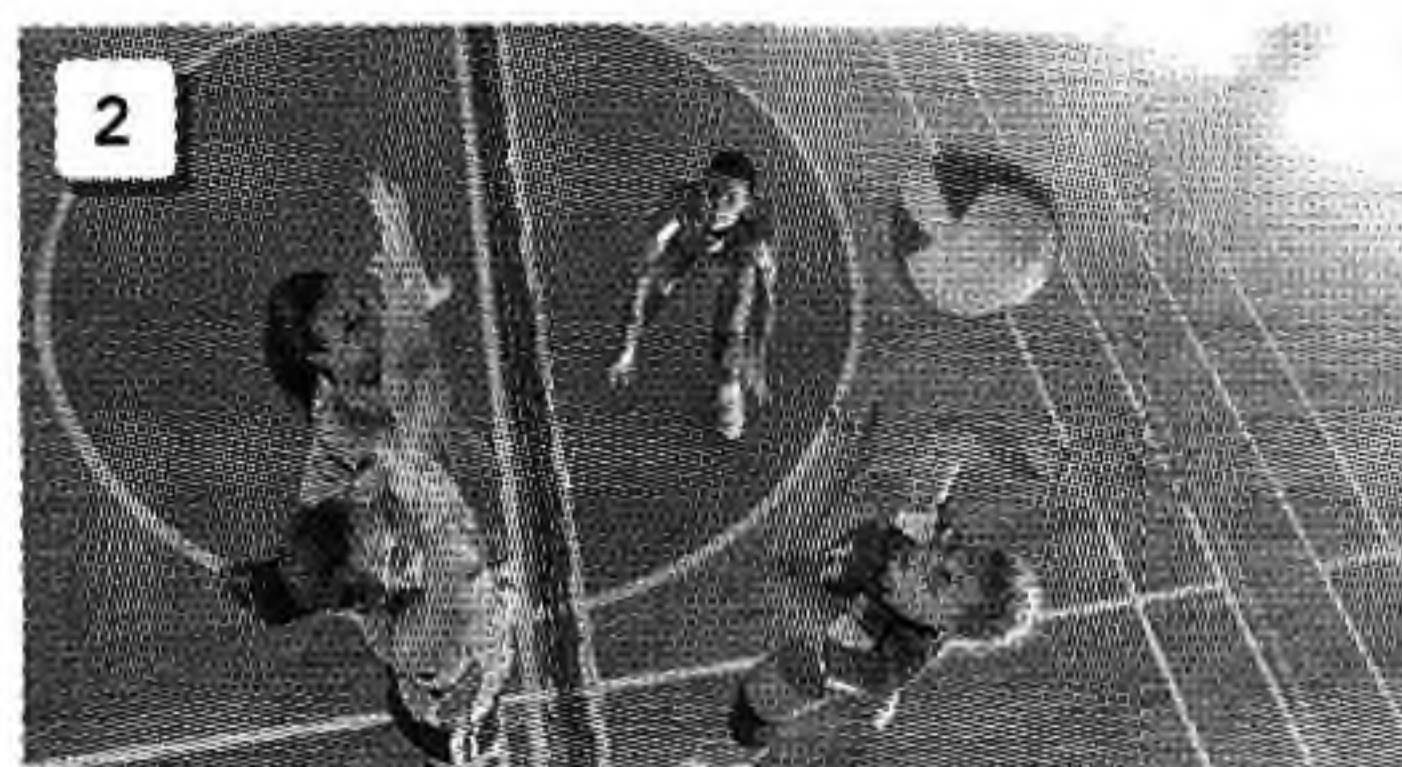
At Abbeydale sports club we offer a wide range of sports and activities. In the main sports hall, club members can ⁰*play* basketball, volleyball and five-a-side football. Outdoors, you can ¹_____ hockey, cricket, football and rugby. In our fantastic new building we offer the chance to ²_____ judo, karate and kung-fu as well as ³_____ tennis, badminton and table tennis. In the summer, you can ⁴_____ athletics on the main field and also ⁵_____ canoeing and sailing on our beautiful lake. We are currently building a pool, so very soon members will be able to ⁶_____ swimming at the club too.

Contact us at abbeydale_sc@hitmail.com.

WORD STORE 2A

Sport – compound nouns

3 Write the place for each sport in the photos in the last column of the table below. Then complete the other columns.



Verb	Sport	Place
1 _____	_____	<i>athletics track</i>
2 _____	_____	_____
3 _____	_____	_____
4 _____	_____	_____
5 _____	_____	_____
6 _____	_____	_____

4 Choose the word that does not collocate with the word in bold in each group.

- 1 **squash** court / bat / racket
- 2 **hockey** track / pitch / stick
- 3 **golf** course / pool / club
- 4 **rugby** ball / resort / pitch
- 5 **boxing** rink / ring / gloves
- 6 **cricket** bat / court / pitch
- 7 *motor racing* / *baseball* / **athletics track**
- 8 *volleyball* / *baseball* / **table tennis bat**

WORD STORE 2B

People in sport

5 Complete the interview with the names of people in sport. The first letter of each word is given.

A: Here we are live from the National Stadium and I'm talking to Zoe Striker of Team UK, the new women's 100m sprint champion. Zoe, you are an amazing ⁰**a**thlete and now, finally, champion of the world. How does it feel?

B: Well, I can't quite believe it, actually. I've been training hard with the help of my wonderful ¹**c**_____ and the other athletes in the UK team – my fantastic ²**t**_____. I couldn't have done it without the support of all my ³**f**_____ and all the ⁴**s**_____ watching and cheering here in the stadium today. I also want to thank the other runners in the race today, my ⁵**o**_____, for pushing me to do my absolute best.

A: Thank you, Zoe. The UK is proud of you.

WORD STORE 2C

Sport collocations

- 6 Read the extract from a radio programme and choose the correct options.



Welcome to *Sports Thoughts* on Radio Sport. This week we'll be asking marathon runner Jeremy Bradshaw what it was like to ¹*come / win / score* first in the London Marathon. We'll talk to Pat Goodhill, who ²*kept / beat / lost* the national speed-climbing champion and ³*scored / won / broke* a world-record in last week's UK climbing championships. Skier Daisy Leader will tell us how she ⁴*loses / scores / keeps* in shape during the summer and give us some expert advice on ⁵*beating / keeping / coming* fit during the winter season. We'll also be asking footballer Alistair Madson what he feels is more important for his career: ⁶*scoring / breaking / winning* goals or ⁷*beating / winning / breaking* matches. Finally, you'll have the chance to ⁸*win / score / keep* a prize in our weekly phone-in competition.

Now, this news just in: U.S. basketball player Dick Boyd amazed fans earlier this evening when he ⁹*scored / kept / won* more than 100 points in a single game ...

Now, this news just in: U.S. basketball player Dick Boyd amazed fans earlier this evening when he ⁹*scored / kept / won* more than 100 points in a single game ...

- 7 Look at the sports results and complete the sentences with the correct names.

FOOTBALL: United 2 - City 1

- 0 United won the game.
1 _____ beat _____.
2 _____ lost the game.

TENNIS: WILLIAMS 3 - RADWANSKA 6

- 3 _____ won the set.
4 _____ beat _____.
5 _____ lost the set.

ENGLAND 142, SRI LANKA 78

- 6 _____ won the match.
7 _____ beat _____.
142 runs to 78.
8 _____ won the prize.

WILSON (UK) 3 ROUNDS, TOBIN (USA) 5 ROUNDS

- 9 _____ won the championship for the USA.
10 _____ lost five rounds.
11 _____ was in better shape than Wilson.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 8 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C, to complete both sentences in each pair.

- 1 Now on Channel 6, the ___ episode of crime drama *Silent Victim*.
My grandfather played football for Italy in the World Cup ___ in 1938; and Italy won!
A last B next C final
- 2 A top footballer appeared in ___ today after attacking a man in a bar last month.
The house has a private tennis ___ and an indoor swimming pool.
A trouble B court C racket
- 3 Swimmer Simon Davies said his main aim this year is to ___ his own world record.
You look exhausted, Mike. Let's have a ___ at this café.
A break B rest C keep
- 4 The best way to lose weight is to keep ___ and watch what you eat.
The jacket really suited Rachel, but unfortunately, it was the wrong size and didn't ___ her.
A shape B fit C healthy
- 5 Yorkshire won the cricket ___ but fans said they played poorly and were very lucky.
You can't wear an orange shirt and red trousers. The colours really don't _____.
A game B pitch C match
- 6 When Manchester United won the championship last year, their ___ went crazy!
It's hot in here. Can you switch on the ___, please?
A spectators B opponents C fans
- 7 Our hockey team trained three times a week last term and our ___ gave us a training programme to do in the gym.
We didn't fly when we went on holiday to Budapest last year. We went by _____.
A train B coach C pitch
- 9 Choose the correct options.
- 1 We bought Dad a new golf *course / club / game* for his birthday. He chose it himself at the sports shop.
- 2 With two minutes of the match left, the fans were screaming at the *player / coach / opponent* to send on another player.
- 3 The *team-mates / spectators / athletes* had paid £275 each for tickets to watch the game from the VIP area.
- 4 Mai Lee *won / scored / beat* the favourite Jinjing Ho to become this year's women's table tennis world champion.
- 5 With five golds in the swimming pool today, China now has more swimmers *champions / players / coaches* than any other country in the competition.

/12

2.2 Grammar

Narrative tenses

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Put the events in the correct order to make a story.

- Ray didn't finish the race.
- She tried to help him get up.
- When the ambulance arrived, Lisa and Ray were chatting and laughing.
- 1 He had only run three miles when he hurt his leg.
- When Ray's leg was better, he asked Lisa on a date.
- But he couldn't stand because he had hurt his ankle.
- Lisa was watching the race when Ray fell over.
- Six months later they got married.

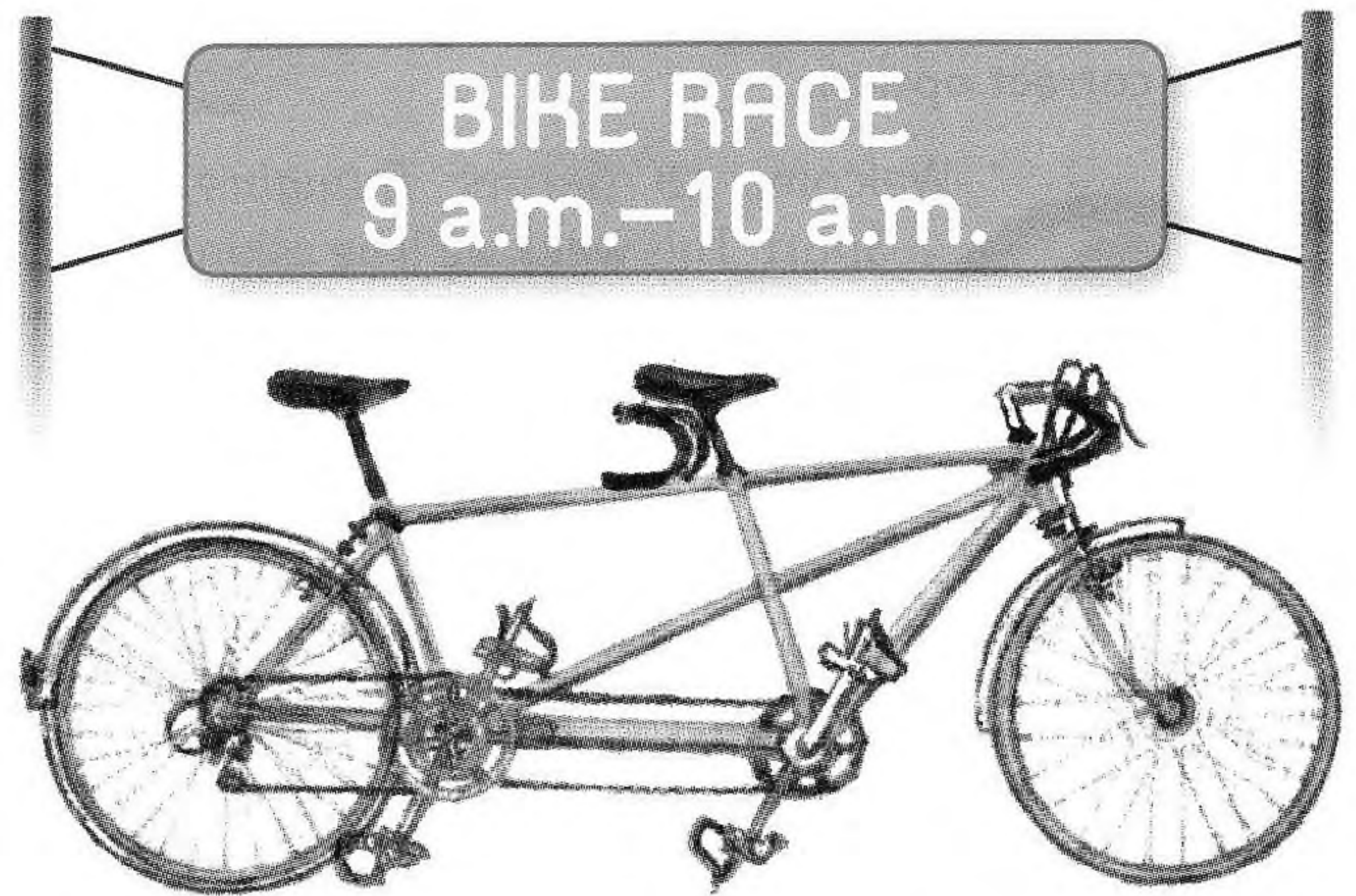
2 ★ Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 0 The official fired the gun and the race began (begin).
- 1 It was raining when Ferguson _____ (crash) his Ferrari.
- 2 When I reached the 10km sign, the fastest runners _____ (already/cross) the finishing line.
- 3 The race began at 4.00 and the last cyclist _____ (finish) at exactly 5.08.
- 4 Diane was already at the gym when she realised she _____ (forget) her towel.
- 5 Fyfe and Scott _____ (climb) Everest when the accident happened.

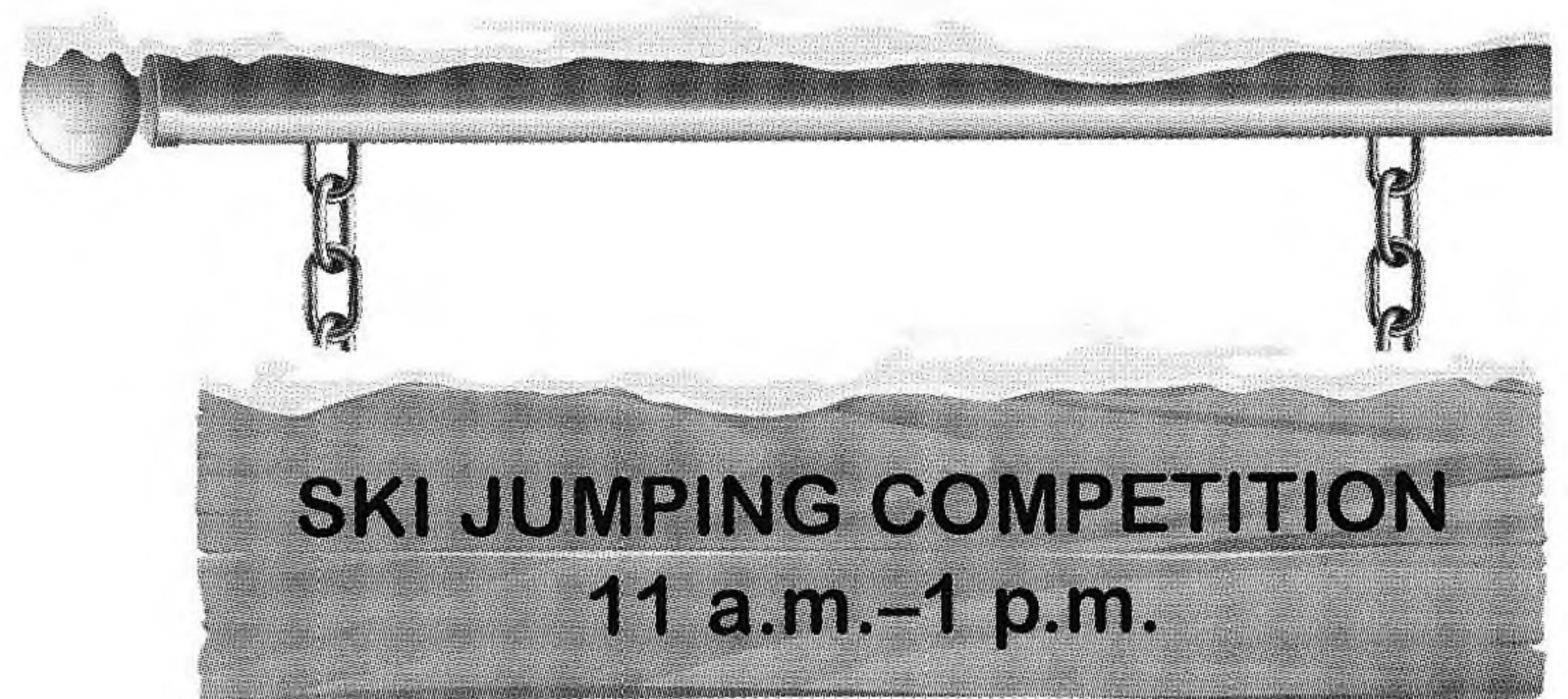
3 ★★ Read the conversations and choose the correct options.

- 1 **A:** Right, Jones! It's a yellow card for you.
B: Oh Ref! What ¹did I do / had I done / was I doing?
A: I ²already blew / had already blown / was already blowing the whistle three times, Jones, but you carried on playing!
- 2 **A:** Did you see the ice hockey last night, Ben? Great goal by Grabic, huh?
B: Well, I ³watched / had watched / was watching the game when the doorbell rang. I went to answer it. It was some sales person, and when I got back, I ⁴missed / had missed / was missing the goal!
- A:** No way!
- 3 **A:** Arthur, at seventy-six years of age you're the oldest competitor to finish the marathon today. Why ⁵did you decide / had you decided / were you deciding to run?
B: Oh, well, last year my grandson and I were watching the race on TV when he ⁶asked / had asked / was asking, 'Granddad, have you ever done that?' I told him that I hadn't run a marathon and he said, 'Maybe you should try.' So, I ⁷did / have done / have been doing it for my grandson, Timmy. Can I say hello to him? Hello, Timmy!

4 ★★★ Look at the signs and complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.



- 0 At 8 a.m. the race hadn't started (start).
- 1 It _____ (begin) at 9 a.m.
- 2 At 9.30 a.m. the competitors _____ (cycle).
- 3 **A:** _____ the (race/finish) at 10.30 a.m.?
B: Yes, it had.



- 4 When I arrived at 11.30 a.m., the competition _____ (begin).
- 5 **A:** _____ (it/snow) when you got there?
B: Yes, it was.
- 6 At exactly 12.45 the last competitor _____ (jump).
- 7 By 2 p.m. the crowd _____ (leave).

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.**
- 0 I played rugby when I broke my arm. was playing
- 1 We went to the Alps in April, but we couldn't ski because the snow already melted. _____
- 2 I watched the race when Hope won the gold medal and broke the world record. _____
- 3 Were City beating Arsenal in last night's game? _____
- 4 The referee didn't concentrate when Burton touched the ball with his hand. _____
- 5 In yesterday's Brazilian Grand Prix, Lewis was finishing in second place. _____
- 6 Boxer Joe Foster was fighting over 100 opponents when he retired in 1994. _____

2.3 Listening language practice

Collocations • Word families

1 Read the text and complete gaps A–E with sentences 1–5.

- 1 It's something I'm really proud of.
- 2 Windsurfing became my number one sport thanks to Rachel.
- 3 I did a lot of different water sports because I grew up near the sea and it was natural.
- 4 My mum and Rachel are still important role models for me.
- 5 I first went windsurfing with my mum.

Students' Book recording CD•1.34 MP3•34

Hi! My name's Jackie Smith. I'm here today to tell you about how I ⁰became the international under-eighteen windsurfing champion at the age of sixteen! ^A1 I think I've been successful because of two people really. My mum and my cousin Rachel have been my role models.

^B2 We lived near the sea, and we spent every summer on the beach. My mum had ¹ _____ windsurfing competitions when she was a teenager. She ² _____ anything but she really enjoyed it. She started to ³ _____ me windsurfing as soon as I could swim. I was only about seven years old. My cousin Rachel was there too. She and her family lived near us. My mum gave us lessons together. Rachel's two years older than me and I've always looked up to her. I still do. Rachel was good at everything. She was a really good example for me – I wanted to be sporty like her.

^C3 At first, windsurfing wasn't my favourite thing. I liked other water sports, like swimming and sailing. I used to ⁴ _____ sailing with Rachel and then we ⁵ _____ a children's sailing club. We ⁶ _____ all our weekends there, even in winter. We did lots of sailing and then we got into rowing. I wasn't sure about rowing at first but my mum thought it was a good idea. Now I'm glad I did it because it made my arms strong, and that helped my windsurfing.

^D4 She entered a windsurfing competition when she was fifteen – I always wanted to do the same as her so I entered the competition too. She came second and I came fifth! But I really enjoyed myself and that was the moment when I decided that windsurfing was my sport.

^E5 I think I take after my mum – I hope I have some of the same qualities anyway. And Rachel is like a big sister to me.



2 Complete gaps 1–6 in the text with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

[become do go join not win play
spend teach enter]

3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

4 Choose the word that does not collocate with the word in bold in each group.

- 1 **spend** sports / hours / the weekend
- 2 **win** a competition / a goal / a race
- 3 **teach** a subject / someone the rules / first place
- 4 **go** surfing / aerobics / running
- 5 **join** the gym / a club / athletics

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of verbs from Exercise 3.

- 0 If you want a body like a male model, you'll have to spend hours in the gym every week.
- 1 After Greg finishes studying Sports Science at university, he wants to _____ Physical Education at a secondary school.
- 2 Sarah didn't buy that snowboard. She _____ a competition and that was the first prize.
- 3 Hey, can I play too? Will you _____ me the rules?
- 4 Now that you've spent so much money on trainers, don't you think you should actually _____ running?
- 5 Most students _____ several clubs during their first weeks at university. It's a good way to meet people.
- 6 Finally, it has snowed and we are going to _____ the weekend in the mountains. I can't wait!

REMEMBER BETTER

When you learn a new verb or review one you already know, use a dictionary and find nouns that often go with it. Write sentences about yourself or people you know to help you remember these collocations.

Write sentences with the verbs and nouns from Exercise 3.
SPEND

hours My sister spends hours playing online games.

WORD STORE 2D

Word families – personal qualities

6 Choose the correct options.

- 1 Free-climbing, in other words climbing without ropes, is only for the very *courage* / *courageous*.
- 2 Training for a marathon takes months and needs great *determination* / *determined*.
- 3 David is a very *generous* / *generosity* guy. He lent me his mountain bike last weekend.
- 4 I take *inspiration* / *inspiring* from blind skiers. If they can make it down the mountain, then just about anything is possible.
- 5 Ryan, you are very *modesty* / *modest*, but many people say you are the greatest cyclist alive today.
- 6 Girls, today's performance was fantastic! You showed real *passion* / *passionate* out there on the pitch.

2.4 Reading

A high school hero • Collocations • Phrasal verbs

Glossary

substitute (n) = in team sports, a player who is sent onto the pitch/court to replace another player who is tired, injured or playing poorly

aim (v) = in sports, to look carefully and choose the place you want to throw or kick a ball, or shoot a weapon

basket (n) = in basketball, the rings at either end of the court; also, the point which is scored when you throw the ball successfully into one of those rings

clip (n) = a short part of a film or television programme that is shown on its own, especially to advertise this film/programme

1 Read the article and choose from the sentences (A–F) the one which fits each gap (1–5). There is one extra sentence.

- A Jason's father, David McElwain, fifty-one, said, 'He was really happy on the way home.'
- B But he doesn't have time for sports anymore.
- C He is also involved in public speaking and is a talented runner.
- D However, apart from a couple of minutes in a junior game in 2004, Jason's autism had always stopped him from actually playing in a game.
- E Eventually, the clip reached the TV sports channel ESPN and Jason quickly became a national hero.
- F When his team-mates passed him the ball, Jason calmly aimed and scored seven baskets from thirteen shots.

2 Read the questions. Find and underline the answers in the article.

- 1 What is autism?
- 2 Who gave Jason the opportunity to play in the 'Senior Night' game?
- 3 At what point did Jason join the game?
- 4 Which team won the game?
- 5 Who describes Jason's feelings after the game?
- 6 What did certain celebrities, film companies and publishers want to do?
- 7 Which of Jason's other sporting achievements is mentioned in the article?
- 8 Where does Jason do his charity work?

3 Complete the collocations with the verbs in the box. Use the article to help you. There are two extra verbs.

[beat bring complete go pass
play present raise score]

- 0 play for a team
- 1 _____ someone on as a substitute
- 2 _____ the ball
- 3 _____ a basket
- 4 _____ someone with an award
- 5 _____ money for charity
- 6 _____ a marathon (or any other race)

REMEMBER BETTER

When you learn a new verb-noun collocation, you can extend your vocabulary knowledge by looking up alternative verbs that go with that noun in a dictionary. Write them as a word web in your notebook with the noun in the centre.

Complete the verbs in the collocations with *ball*. Some letters are given. First, try to do the exercise without using a dictionary or checking online.

- 0 The best golfers can **hit** the ball incredible distances and with great accuracy.
- 1 In football, you can't use your hands. You use your feet to **k_____k** the ball or you can **h_____d** the ball.
- 2 If the batter **m_____s** the ball three times in baseball, then he or she is 'out'.
- 3 Barnes is a very selfish player. He rarely **p_____s** the ball to another player.
- 4 When I **t_____w** the ball to you, try and **c_____h** it using both hands.
- 5 In basketball, you can't just run with the ball. You have to **b_____e** it on the floor as you run.
- 6 Our dog will happily **f_____h** a ball or a stick all day long, but it's very hard to get him to **d_____p** it once he's got it in his mouth.

WORD STORE 2E

Phrasal verbs

4 Read the interview and choose the correct options.

- A:** Travis, you ¹*grew up / took up* in the mountains and ²*took up / set out* skiing at a very young age.
- B:** That's right. I always ³*kept up with / looked up to* my dad, who was a great skier and a big inspiration, and it was actually him who taught me and my brother to ski when we were just five years old.
- A:** That's your twin brother, Nicholas, right?
- B:** Yeah. Dad used to ski really fast and Nick tried to ⁴*keep up with / make our minds up* him. We all skied together for years but unfortunately, in 2008, Dad had a serious accident and had to ⁵*set out / give up*. Nick and I were pretty good skiers at this point and we ⁶*made up / made our minds up* that we wanted to do it professionally. We ⁷*set out / took up* to be the best and we used to ⁸*make up / keep up with* new tricks together and encourage each other to try more and more difficult things.
- A:** And now both of you are in the US national freeskiing team, and were the only twins to compete in last year's winter Olympics.
- B:** Yeah, and we're both very proud of that.

Autistic boy becomes sporting hero

It sounds like fantasy: an autistic schoolboy is brought onto the basketball court as a last-minute substitute, scores twenty points in four minutes and becomes a national hero. However, in February 2006 that is exactly what happened to seventeen-year-old Jason McElwain from Rochester, New York.

A gift and a promise

Jason has autism, a condition that makes communicating, socialising and reading other people's feelings difficult. However, that did not prevent Coach Jim Johnson from making him 'manager' of Greece Athena High School's basketball team. ¹ _____ But on the evening of the annual 'Senior Night' game, which was held in the students' final year of high school, the team's coach gave J Mac, as he is called, a shirt with the number 52 on the back and told him he would let him play in the all-important game at some point.

J Mac's magic moment

In the final few minutes, Jason was sent onto the court. ² _____ He scored five points a minute and broke school records. Athena beat their opponents Spencerport 79-43. At the end of the game, spectators carried Jason off the court on their shoulders. His teammate Rickey Wallace said, 'I knew he could shoot, but I didn't know he could score twenty points.' ³ _____ He didn't sleep a lot that night.'

America's new sporting hero

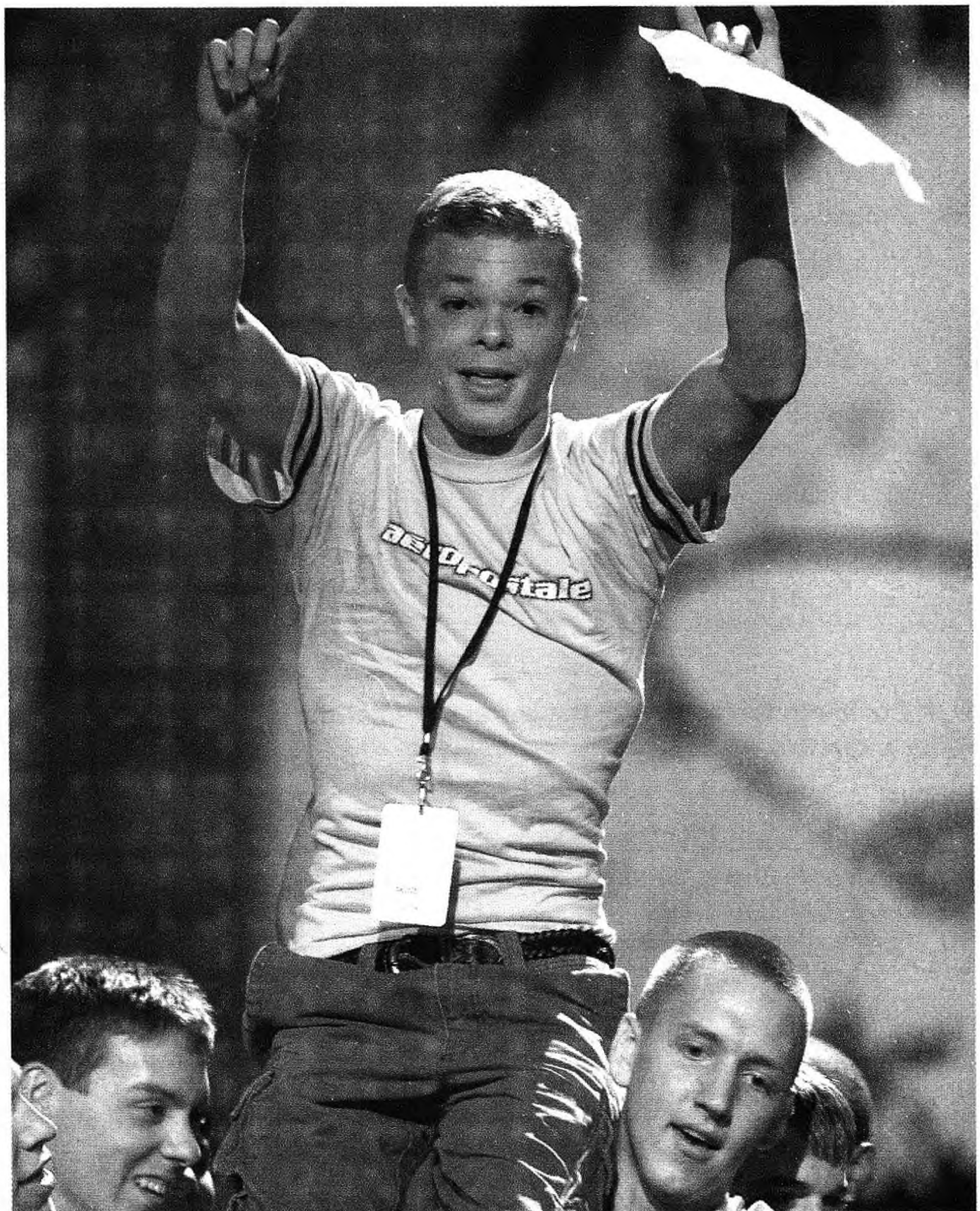
Jason's sporting achievement was filmed and by the evening, a clip of him in action was spreading around the Internet. ⁴ _____ He received offers from celebrities such as basketball hero Earvin 'Magic' Johnson and TV star Oprah Winfrey, as well as film companies

and publishers keen to tell his story. Jason even met the American President at the time, George W Bush, who presented him with a special award.

Jason's success continues

Since 2006, Jason has graduated from high school and found part-time work with a well-known food store. He wrote a book, *The Game of My Life*, which was published in 2008 and he now travels across

the United States raising money for autism charities. ⁵ _____ In September 2012, he completed his first marathon in fifteenth place, in only three hours, one minute and forty-one seconds. With all the activity that is going on in his life, Jason admits that he hasn't been playing as much basketball, but says, 'Occasionally, I'll go and shoot baskets.'



2.5 Grammar

Verb patterns

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match verb patterns a–e with sentences 1–5.

- a verb + to-infinitive
- b verb + object + to-infinitive
- c verb + -ing
- d modal verb + infinitive without to
- e verb + object + infinitive without to

- 0 I want to drive a Formula 1 car one day.
- 1 We might go for a swim later.
- 2 The coach makes us run 3km before the training starts.
- 3 Please remind me to put a clean towel in my gym bag.
- 4 Karen fancies watching basketball on TV at home.
- 5 We arranged to meet at the top of the ski-lift at 4 o'clock.

a

2 ★ Cross out to where it is not necessary.

Welcome to the Singapore F1 Grand Prix, where today's race should to be very exciting.

- 1 We'd like to remind to our viewers that this is a very important race for Sebastian Vettel.
- 2 Vettel is attempting to win his third race in a row here in Singapore.
- 3 If the other drivers let him to win again, he'll almost certainly become this year's champion.
- 4 The weather is wet, so the teams have all decided to start the race with wet-weather tyres.
- 5 Remember, Vettel only just avoided to crashing during this year's wet Monaco Grand Prix.
- 6 Vettel's manager has warned him not to drive too fast in these difficult conditions.
- 7 Keep to watching after the race for more exciting motor racing action here on Turbo Channel.



3 ★★ Complete the texts with the correct form of the verbs in capitals.

- 1 **RUN**
Shelly tries to run every day. She doesn't mind _____ when the weather is good but, she refuses _____ when it's cold and wet.
- 2 **EAT**
Nick's mum makes him _____ cabbage even though he hates it. She forces him _____ bananas, which he doesn't like, and even though he can't stand _____ seafood, she cooks fish every Friday.
- 3 **BUY**
Irene could _____ the trainers if she had more money, but she can't afford _____ them at the moment. The sales assistant in the shop advised her _____ them next month because they will probably be cheaper then.

4 ★★★ Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- 0 Would you like to play one more game?
FANCY
Do you fancy playing one more game?
- 1 Our PE teacher forces us to run round the hockey field three times before the game.
MAKES
Our PE teacher _____ round the hockey field three times before the game.
- 2 Gavin said he would pick us up after the game.
OFFERED
Gavin _____ after the game.
- 3 We don't go to judo classes anymore.
STOPPED
We've _____ to judo classes.
- 4 Alan really doesn't like losing at badminton.
STAND
Alan can't _____ at badminton.
- 5 Come on, team! We must score one more goal.
NEED
Come on, team! We _____ one more goal.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the advertisement with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

Sunny Gym Personal Trainers

Are you trying ⁰to get (get) fit but not having much success? Are you wasting time ¹_____ (do) exercises that don't work? You could ²_____ (benefit) from the help of a personal trainer. Our trainers will teach you ³_____ (exercise) efficiently and effectively, and help you to avoid ⁴_____ (injure) yourself when you work out. Training should ⁵_____ (be) fun, not frustrating. Let our trainers ⁶_____ (show) you the fastest route to success. Contact Becky at Reception for details and bookings.

2.6 Speaking language practice

Asking for and giving an opinion • Agreeing and disagreeing

1 Complete the phrases with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

absolutely agree kidding
sure thing think true way

- 0 No way !
1 The _____ is ...
2 That's not _____ .
3 I'm not so _____ about that.
4 I'm sorry, I don't _____ with you.
5 I just don't _____ ...

2 Put the conversations in the correct order.

Conversation 1

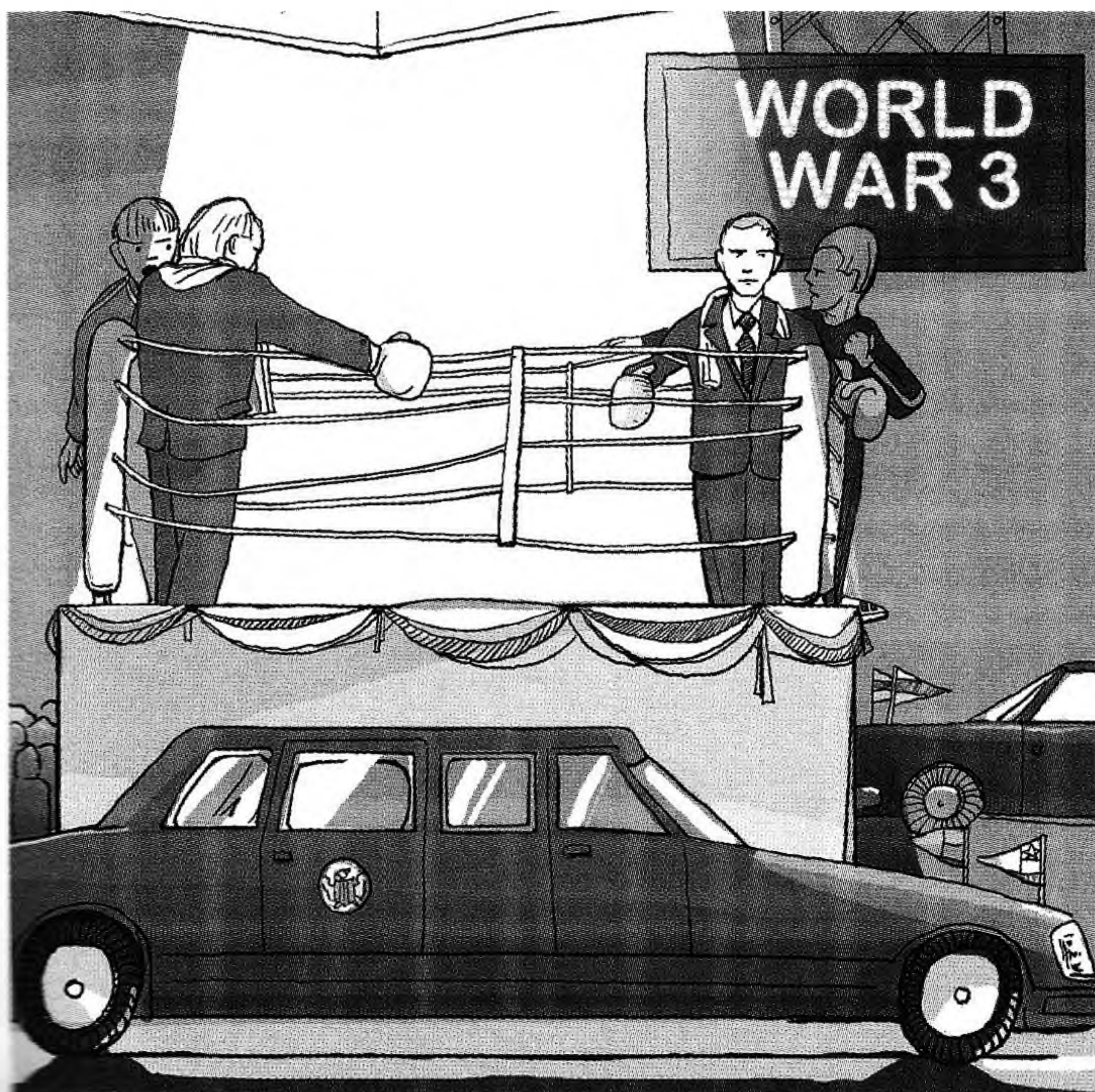
- The thing is it gets a bit boring when the same player wins every year.
 1 Did you hear that Wilson won the tennis again? What do you think?
 I agree, but nobody is good enough to beat her.
 That's true. At least not this year.

Conversation 2

- To be honest, I'd prefer to wait here until we can see again.
 I can't see anything! Everything is white. It's impossible to ski!
 Are you kidding? We can't stay here – we'll freeze to death! Come on, follow me.
 Shall we stop at the restaurant over there?

Conversation 3

- No way! It's far too cold for running.
 To be honest, I'd prefer to stay here and watch TV.
 I'm not so sure about that, but OK. Let's go to the gym instead then.
 I think we should go for a run.



3 Read the conversations and choose the correct options.

- 1 A: What do you think about the fact that professional footballers are paid so much money?
B: *To be honest, / No way!* I think it's ridiculous.
2 A: Do you think we will win the next World Cup?
B: *Are you kidding? / That's true.* With our current team we don't have a chance.
3 A: Aerobics is only for women.
B: *That's not true. / I agree.* There are several men in my class.
4 A: Oh come on, referee! That was clearly a foul. Don't you think, Sam?
B: *I'm not convinced. / Absolutely.* It looked OK to me.
5 A: I just don't think we do enough sport at school.
B: *The thing is / I agree* I don't really enjoy sport, so I don't mind.
6 A: Helen thinks motor racing is too dangerous and should be banned.
B: *Well, I agree / if you ask me,* the drivers have a choice, don't they? I mean, they don't have to take part.
7 A: I'm glad they have decided to let girls play in the school football team, aren't you?
B: *Personally, I don't feel strongly one way or another. / Absolutely.* I suppose it's good for the girls who are into football. I'd prefer to go to the gym.

4 Complete the words in the conversation. The first letter of each word is given.

- A: Did you see that there's going to be a big boxing match at the new stadium next month? Do you fancy going?
B: Boxing? No, thanks. In my opinion, boxing isn't even a sport. I ^o*think* it's horrible.
A: Really? Well, ¹*I* _____ s _____ , ¹*d* _____ a _____ w _____ y _____ . I think it's really exciting to watch. Boxers are skilled athletes.
B: ²*A* _____ y _____ k _____ ? Watching grown men try to kill each other is not what I call exciting! Personally, I don't find violence entertaining.
A: ³*I* _____ n _____ c _____ . People have been playing and watching violent sports for thousands of years.
B: ⁴*T* _____ t _____ , but that doesn't make it right. People have been fighting wars for thousands of years. Do you think war is exciting too?
A: Of course not, but ⁵*I* ^d _____ t _____ you can compare boxing to war. For a start, the boxers have a choice. They don't have to fight.
B: Well, ⁶*i* _____ y _____ a _____ m _____ , there's always a choice, whether it's boxing or war.
A: Well, perhaps. Hey, how about this – maybe instead of fighting wars, we could put world leaders in the boxing ring. I bet you'd watch that!

2.7 Writing

An article

1 Complete the tips for writing an article with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

end final general how linkers reader
sequence what ~~when~~ who why

- In the first paragraph say where and when the events took place and _____ was involved.
- In the main body, use narrative tenses to describe _____ happened and _____ you felt.
- Use linkers to describe the events in _____.
- In the _____ paragraph say what happened in the _____ and how the people involved felt.
- Finish with a _____ point, something for the _____ to think about or something about the present or future.

2 Match these examples with the tips in Exercise 1. Each example may go with more than one tip.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 0 We were feeling quite tired after an hour or two in the kayak. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| a By the end of the holiday, we had had enough of boats and water. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b In the end, we reached the campsite late at night. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c Last summer, my family and I went kayaking in Mazury. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d Unless you are really into kayaking, two days is long enough. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e We hadn't done any training, so our arms really hurt. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f My kayak was full of water and I was freezing cold. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| g On the first morning, we set off at 7 a.m. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| h My sister was complaining all the time. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

3 Complete the linkers in the text. The first letter of each word is given.

Smiles and Miles – an online community for happy runners

discussion board – your injuries

I started running in our local park about eighteen months ago.

⁰Before I began, I bought some running shoes and a GPS watch so

I could see how far I had run. ¹A _____ f _____ it was pretty

difficult and I couldn't do more than about 3km. ²A _____ two

or three weeks of running regularly, it started to get easier and

³b _____ t _____ e _____ o _____ the summer, I was running

10km three times a week.

⁴O _____ t _____ f _____ d _____ of the year, I went out for a

'New Year' run in the snow and ice. I was jogging along the road

when I slipped and fell and broke my leg! It took more than six

months to heal properly. It was really frustrating because I couldn't

do any exercise. But ⁵e _____, I was strong enough to start running

again. I love running, but after my accident, I've decided not to go

when there is snow and ice outside.



SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 You have seen this announcement in a magazine.

Have you been to an interesting event recently? Perhaps it was a charity event, a cultural event, a sporting event, an exhibition or something else! We want to hear about it.

Write an article about the event for the magazine and we shall give a prize for the best one!

Write your article in 140–190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my article:

- I have started by describing where and when the event took place and who was involved.
- I have used narrative tenses to describe events and feelings.
- I have used appropriate linkers to describe events that take place at the beginning, in the middle and at the end of my narrative.
- I have said what happened in the end and how the people involved felt.
- I have finished with a general point, something for the reader to think about or something about the present or future.
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.

2.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 For questions 1–9, read the article below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Football hard man Mario Balotelli is ⁰ _____ for two things: his great skills on the football pitch, of ¹ _____, but also for his childish and sometimes mischievous behaviour off the pitch. He has often ² _____ in trouble! But this week, he's in the news because of his softer side ³ _____ helping a young boy overcome problems with a school bully.

The teenager asked Balotelli for his autograph outside the striker's training ground. But Balotelli was more interested ⁴ _____ why the young student was missing school. After

the child had ⁵ _____ him he was being bullied, Balotelli immediately drove the boy and his mother to the school.

The football star ⁶ _____ to see the headmaster to tell him about the problem. Balotelli then ⁷ _____ with the two boys to help sort out their differences. A source for Balotelli said, 'Mario feels ⁸ _____ about bullying and thinks it's immature. He had no difficulty ⁹ _____ the issue. He felt the boy should not be missing out on school because of bullying.'

- | | | | | |
|---|-----------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 0 | A hard-working | B easy-going | C well-known | D good-looking |
| 1 | A which | B interest | C course | D use |
| 2 | A found | B had | C known | D been |
| 3 | A after | B during | C until | D over |
| 4 | A for | B on | C of | D in |
| 5 | A told | B said | C reminded | D replied |
| 6 | A was demanding | B demanded | C had demanded | D is demanded |
| 7 | A made up | B lost out | C called off | D sat down |
| 8 | A strongly | B importantly | C powerfully | D terribly |
| 9 | A making up | B sorting out | C living in | D going off |

TIPS:

Question 1: How would you complete this phrase showing that something is clear or obvious?

Question 2: Which verb collocates with *trouble*?

Question 3: Think carefully about when Balotelli was in the news.

Word formation

2 For questions 1–10, read the article below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.

University student Matt Hebden returned from a once-in-a-⁰ lifetime trip to Egypt last year having learned how to windsurf. In Matt's case, this ¹ _____ was truly remarkable because he suffers from aquaphobia – a fear of water.

LIFE
ACHIEVE

Matt takes up the story: 'I've had a fear of water, ² _____ deep water, since I was seven. It got so bad that I couldn't even swim in the deep end of the local pool. But I've always been ³ _____ by the sea which gave me the ⁴ _____ to do something about the fear.'

SPECIAL
FASCINATE
DETERMINE

Matt saw a TV programme about different types of phobias and ⁵ _____ for him, it included several ⁶ _____ with people who also suffer from phobias. They all said that it was of maximum ⁷ _____ not to let fear control your life. So that was when Matt decided to learn how to windsurf.

FORTUNE
DISCUSS
IMPORTANT

The course went well and Matt became close to his trainer, Luke. 'I very much admired how ⁸ _____ Matt was to try windsurfing,' says Luke. 'Because of his phobia it was often quite ⁹ _____ for him mentally as sometimes the fear was very strong. It was incredible to watch how he coped with the situation – he was a real ¹⁰ _____ to me and to the other students on the course.'

COURAGE
PAIN

INSPIRE

TIPS:

Question 1: You need to add a suffix to form a noun.

Question 2: Add a suffix to form an adverb and make one more spelling change.

Question 3: You only need to add one letter to form an adjective.

2.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
2.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about sports.					Students' Book pages 24–25 Word Store page 5 Workbook pages 20–21
2.2	Grammar	I can use narrative tenses.					Students' Book page 26 Workbook page 22
2.3	Listening	I can understand specific detail in a short talk about role models.					Students' Book page 27 Workbook page 23
2.4	Reading	I can understand the main points of an article about a Paralympic athlete.					Students' Book pages 28–29 Workbook pages 24–25
2.5	Grammar	I can recognise and use different verb patterns.					Students' Book page 30 Workbook page 26
2.6	Speaking	I can ask for, give, agree and disagree with an opinion.					Students' Book page 31 Workbook page 27
2.7	Writing	I can write an article about a past event.					Students' Book pages 32–33 Workbook page 28

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

2.10 Self-check

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

athlete ~~court~~ fan goal
pitch resort rink track

- 0 Supporters ran onto the basketball court to celebrate with the players at the end of the game.
- 1 A new ski _____ has opened near here but we can't afford to visit it.
- 2 Indoor cycle _____ allow races to take place at any time of the year.
- 3 Artificial or synthetic grass is sometimes used on football _____ in stadiums with roofs because there is not enough light for real grass to grow.
- 4 Zola Budd, a South African _____ famous in the 1980s, was known for running and training with bare feet.
- 5 Ryan scored the fastest _____ ever by a player in our team – twelve seconds after the match started!

/5

2 Complete the words in the sentences. Some letters are given.

- 0 My brother's team is the worst in the group and is currently bottom of the league.
- 1 Our basketball team c _____ h says I am one of the best players in the team.
- 2 Grandad k _____ s in shape by going walking.
- 3 Celia is d _____ d to learn to snowboard even if it is a painful process. She refuses to give up.
- 4 Sebastian is p _____ e about judo. He has loved it since he was a child and practises almost every day.
- 5 Cave diving is only for the very brave. The divers have to be highly skilled and extremely c _____ s.

/5

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrases in the box.

beat my opponent break the world record
~~grow up~~ lose the match make up my mind
score thirty points

- 0 I know your little brother seems childish now, but don't worry. Everyone grows up eventually.
- 1 Unfortunately, our team _____.
- 2 We are all hoping that the Polish ski jumper _____ today.
- 3 LeBron James _____ for Miami in last night's big game against Los Angeles.
- 4 Of course, the most important thing is taking part, but I really like to _____ as well.
- 5 When I was twelve, I _____ that I wanted to be the best swimmer in the world.

/5

4 Choose the correct options.

- 0 Unfortunately, we weren't watching when Bolt won / had won / was winning the 200m race.
- 1 Chloe finally beat her personal best time because she trained / had trained / was training so hard.
- 2 Dan tried snowboarding when he went / had gone / was going to the French Alps.
- 3 The marathon finally ended / had ended / was ending when the last runner crossed the finishing line after almost six hours.
- 4 Andrew was prepared for the freezing temperatures because he surfed / had surfed / was surfing before.
- 5 Naomi wasn't actually skating when she hurt / had hurt / was hurting her foot. She was trying to take her skate off!

/5

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 0 If Spain manage to win (win) the European Championships, I will buy everyone dinner.
- 1 I remind my players _____ (not get) angry with the umpire. Shouting and complaining doesn't help.
- 2 Do you really enjoy _____ (jog) when the temperatures are so high?
- 3 I think I might _____ (join) the gym again. I've put on so much weight recently.
- 4 Our PE teacher made the boys _____ (do) aerobics after they said it was easy and only for girls. They were exhausted afterwards.
- 5 Jenny misses _____ (play) badminton with her sister now that she's gone to university.

/5

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

Adzo Kpossi from Togo, in Africa, ⁰ _____ the youngest athlete at the Olympic Games in 2012. When she ¹ _____ into the water in London to compete in the women's 50m freestyle event, she was just thirteen. In the qualifying race, she ² _____ to Nafissatou Moussa Adamou, a fourteen-year-old from Niger, but beat her own personal best time. Before she arrived in London to represent her country, she ³ _____ lots of training at a hotel in Sarawaka, which was the only place in her part of the country with a swimming ⁴ _____. Kpossi hopes to compete in the next Olympic Games and, after her experience in London, she could ⁵ _____ very well.

- | | | | |
|---|------------|--------------|-------------|
| 0 | A had been | <u>B was</u> | C was being |
| 1 | A dived | B was diving | C had dived |
| 2 | A won | B beat | C lost |
| 3 | A has done | B had done | C was doing |
| 4 | A track | B rink | C pool |
| 5 | A do | B to do | C doing |

/5

Total /30

3

GOING PLACES

3.1 Vocabulary

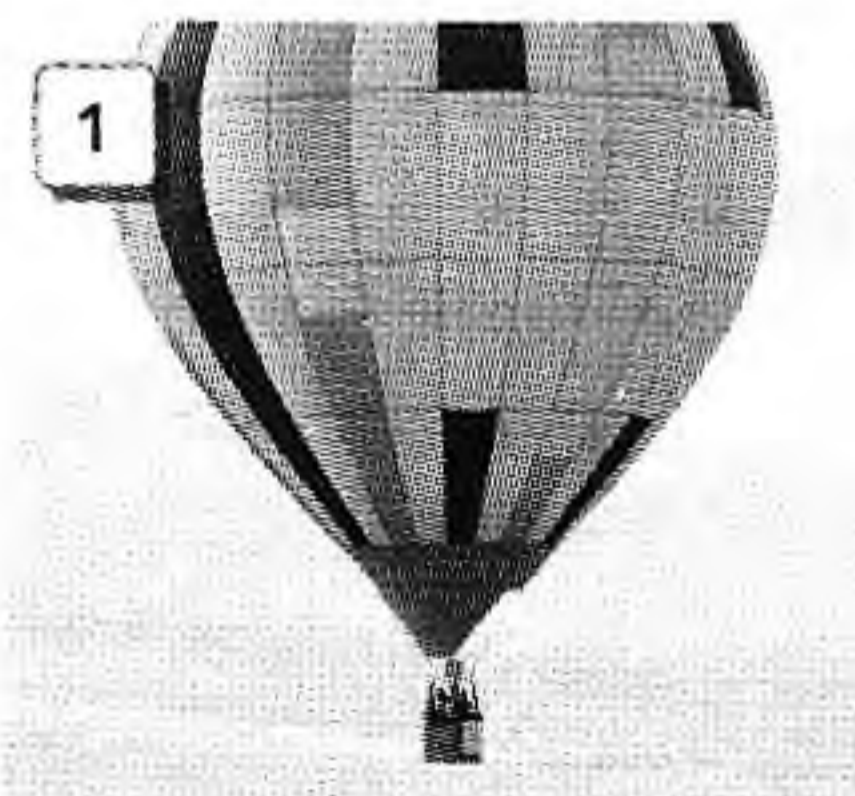
Travel collocations • Compound nouns • Phrasal verbs

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Label the forms of transport. The first letter of each word is given.



0 tram



1 h _____ -a _____
b _____



2 f _____



3 h _____



4 d _____ -d _____
b _____



5 h _____

WORD STORE 3A

Collocations – travel

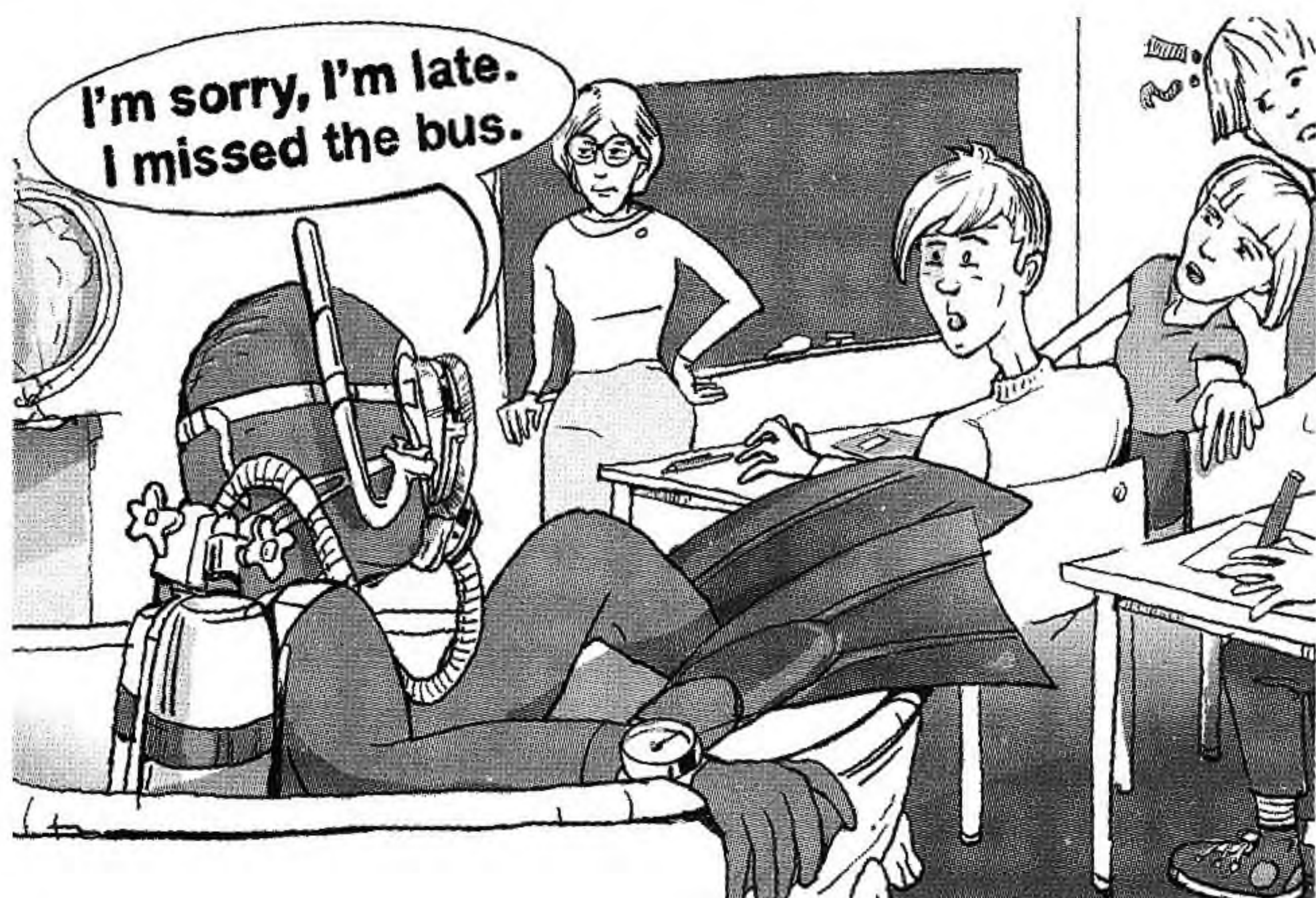
2 Choose the odd one out in each group.

- 1 **board** a ticket / a ship / a ferry / a plane
- 2 **book** a plane / a flight / a hotel room / a ticket
- 3 **catch** a bus / a river / a train / a plane
- 4 **cross** the sights / Europe / the sea / a river
- 5 **miss** a flight / a train / a bus / a hotel room
- 6 **reach** Sydney / your destination / a plane

3 Read the story and choose the correct options.

Last night I had a very strange dream. I decided to walk to school and at the end of our road I discovered a wide river which I needed to ¹reach / cross. A ferry arrived, but when I tried to ²board / see it, the captain told me I hadn't ³caught / booked a ticket, so the only choice was to swim!

I swam for a long time, but I didn't ⁴reach / catch the other side. I could see a light under the water, so I swam down towards it and the next thing I knew, I was climbing out of a bath in the corner of my classroom! The teacher asked me why I was late, so I told her I'd ⁵missed / boarded the bus. Very, very strange.



WORD STORE 3B

Air travel – compound nouns and verb phrases

4 Complete the advice with the words in the box.

boarding ~~check-in~~ departure gate
locker seat belt security

TRAVELFOCUS

Step-by-step guide for first-time flyers

Are you flying for the first time?
Follow our step-by-step guide for a stress-free experience.

Step 1 When you arrive at the airport, go to the ⁰check-in desk.

Step 2 Check your luggage in and get your ¹_____ pass.

Step 3 Go through ²_____. Don't be surprised if the guards search your bag.

Step 4 Wait in the ³_____ lounge. Eat, drink and shop.

Step 5 Go to the ⁴_____ and board the plane. Don't be late.

Step 6 Put your bag in the overhead ⁵_____ or under the seat in front of you.

Step 7 Fasten your ⁶_____. It's time to fly!

5 Put the next stages of a journey in the correct order.

- a go through passport control
- b the plane lands
- c go home or to your hotel
- d get off the plane
- e the plane takes off
- f collect your luggage in the baggage reclaim

WORD STORE 3C

Phrasal verbs – travel

6 Match the phrasal verbs with their meanings.

- 1 stay over
- 2 move on
- 3 go away
- 4 return up
- 5 set off
- 6 deal with
- 7 stop over

- a take action to solve a problem
- b spend the night
- c leave one place to go to another on a journey
- d arrive unexpectedly
- e leave home for a holiday
- f begin a journey
- g visit someone/somewhere on your way to another place

7 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use phrasal verbs with the prepositions given in bold.

- 0 At Ubis Hotel we promise to take action to solve your problem in fifteen minutes or less. **WITH**
At Ubis Hotel we promise to deal with your problem in fifteen minutes or less.
- 1 Dad wants to begin the journey early to avoid the traffic. **OFF**
Dad wants to _____ early to avoid the traffic.
- 2 Grandma is spending the night at our house, so I'll have to sleep on the sofa again. **OVER**
Grandma is _____ at our house, so I'll have to sleep on the sofa again.
- 3 After two days in Naples we're ready to leave and go to Capri. **ON**
After two days in Naples, we're ready to _____ to Capri.
- 4 Ollie's lost luggage finally arrived two days before the end of his holiday. **UP**
Ollie's lost luggage finally _____ two days before the end of his holiday.
- 5 We are leaving our home for a holiday for two weeks, so the neighbour is coming to water the plants. **AWAY**
We are _____ for two weeks so the neighbour is coming to water the plants.
- 6 The Walton family are visiting Berlin on their way to Amsterdam. **OVER**
The Walton family are _____ in Berlin on their way to Amsterdam.

REMEMBER THIS

Baggage and luggage are synonyms. They are both uncountable nouns.

Please do not leave ~~baggages~~ baggage unattended.

Lost ~~Luggages~~ Luggage Office

If we want to express quantity with these nouns, we use the word *piece*.

Economy class passengers may only travel with two *pieces of luggage*.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Read the story and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

Our 'relaxing' holiday

The trouble started at the airport. We checked in, then ¹ _____ through security, where they searched my dad's bag and found a pocket knife he'd forgotten about. He explained that it was just a mistake, but the guard was very suspicious. He asked Dad lots of questions and searched our bags again and we almost ² _____ the flight. Mum was not happy.

When we arrived in Vienna, we went to ³ _____ our luggage in the baggage reclaim. We waited and waited but our bags didn't arrive. The guy in the office eventually found out that, although we were in Austria, our baggage was in Australia! Mum was really not happy.

We finally ⁴ _____ at the hotel, but we were so late that they had cancelled our ⁵ _____ and are fully booked until tomorrow. Tonight we are ⁶ _____ in a caravan at a campsite next to the hotel. Mum is extremely unhappy.

- | | | |
|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1 A got | B crossed | C went |
| 2 A missed | B caught | C boarded |
| 3 A put | B collect | C wait |
| 4 A turned up | B stopped over | C dealt with |
| 5 A terminal | B baggage | C reservation |
| 6 A staying over | B setting off | C going away |

9 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 0 I'm sorry, sir. I don't seem to have a ~~reserve~~ for you.
reservation
- 1 Please fasten your seat for take-off. _____
- 2 Our plane is delayed and we've been waiting in this security lounge for hours! _____
- 3 The GPS said, 'Turn left here. You have caught your destination.' _____
- 4 Can we go out on holiday for a week in the summer?

/10

3.2 Grammar

Present and past speculation

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the speakers' words 1-3 with the thoughts about the club a-c.

- | | | |
|---|--------------------------|--|
| 1 It was OK. We danced for a while, then chatted. Not bad, but not great. | <input type="checkbox"/> | a I'm sure this person liked the club. |
| 2 Awful club. Don't go. Terrible music, expensive drinks and no atmosphere. | <input type="checkbox"/> | b It's possible this person liked the club. |
| 3 The music was great. How come I didn't know about this place earlier? | <input type="checkbox"/> | c I'm sure this person didn't like the club. |

2 ★ Complete the second sentence with *must*, *might* or *can't* so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- 0 It's possible that's our taxi. That might be our taxi.
 1 I'm sure that's our plane. That _____ be our plane.
 2 I'm sure that isn't our baggage. That _____ be our baggage.
 3 It's possible this is the hotel. This _____ be the hotel.
 4 I'm sure this is our room. This _____ be our room.
 5 We're sure that isn't our bill. That _____ be our bill.

3 ★ Match the evidence with the sentences in Exercise 2.

- | | |
|---|--------------------------|
| a I ordered it for 10 o'clock and it's five to ten now. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| b It was definitely number 321. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| c I think I recognise it from the picture on the website. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| d We are flying with Lufthansa, aren't we? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| e We certainly didn't order room service five times. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| f Our suitcases are blue, not black. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

4 ★★ Nick and Anne are at the aquarium. Read their conversation and choose the correct options.

Nick: Look! An octopus.

Anne: Where? I can't see anything.

Nick: Er ... well, the sign says there's an octopus, so it ¹*must / couldn't* be here somewhere.

Anne: I suppose it ²*can't / might* be hiding under that rock.

Nick: Yeah, or it ³*could / couldn't* be away on holiday.

Anne: On holiday? You ⁴*might / can't* be serious! Honestly, I worry about you, Nick.

Nick: It says here that octopuses can change the colour of their skin and totally disappear. Cool! I'd love to be able to do that.

Anne: Nick, sometimes I think that would be a good idea.



5 ★★★ Violet and Daisy are out for a walk. Complete their conversation with the verbs in the box. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

can't have could have couldn't have
may have must have

Violet: Look, a turtle on a fence post! How did that happen?

Daisy: Woah! That's weird. It ⁰*can't have* got there on its own. Its legs are so short it ¹_____ climbed up so high.

Violet: There's only one possibility. Someone ²_____ put it there. What a cruel thing to do!

Daisy: Well, it ³_____ been a person or I suppose a bird, like an eagle, or something ⁴_____ left it there ... as a snack for later.

Violet: Urgh, Daisy! That's horrible!

Daisy: Violet, my dear, we all have to eat.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Choose the correct phrase, A, B or C, which has a similar meaning to the underlined words in each sentence.

- 1 It is possible we are too late to catch the bus.
 A We can't be B We might be
 C We must be
- 2 They only set off half an hour ago. I'm sure it's not true that they have arrived already.
 A They can't have B They may have
 C They mustn't have
- 3 It is possible that Alice brought some sun cream. She's so pale-skinned.
 A Alice must have B Alice can't have
 C Alice could have
- 4 I'm sure you are tired. We've been walking and sightseeing all day.
 A You can't be B You must be
 C You might be
- 5 She can't find her passport! I'm sure it's true that she left it in the hotel room.
 A She might have B She must have
 C She can't have
- 6 It is possible that the plane was delayed because of bad weather.
 A The plane may have been
 B The plane must have been
 C The plane can't have been

3.3 Listening language practice

Functional language • Prepositions • Compound nouns

1 Put the words in the correct order. Then write **R** for something a hotel receptionist would say or **G** for something a hotel guest would say.

0 help / I / you / can?

Can I help you?

R

1 book / you / online / did?

2 was / thought / I / included / it

3 room / two / booked / a / I've / for / nights / single

4 have / at / special online offer / we / moment / the / a

5 this / fill / can / in / form, / please / you?

6 you / would / breakfast / like?

2 Complete the conversation between a receptionist and a guest with phrases from Exercise 1. Then listen and check.

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•2.7 MP3•50

3

A: Yes, ⁰*can I help you?*

B: Er, yes ¹_____. My name's Baker. James Baker.

A: Baker. Yes, here you are. Two nights. ²_____?

B: Oh yes, please.

A: That will be an extra £16.

B: Oh ³_____.

A: ⁴_____?

G: Yes, I did.

B: Oh right. ⁵_____. Your first breakfast is free, so you just need to pay for the second day. ⁶_____?

3 Read the conversation and choose the correct options. Then listen and check.

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•2.7 MP3•50

1

A: So, how was your family cruise?

B: Oh, it was OK. Pretty good, really. We all got on well most ¹*in / of / with* the time. We didn't have any arguments. Well, not ²*after / by / until* the last day, and then I had a really big argument ³*with / to / against* my sister. It was stupid, really. I wanted to get ⁴*on / from / off* the ship and visit Naples, but my sister was tired and wanted to stay ⁵*until / on / in* the ship ⁶*by / against / to* the pool. She always does what she wants and she doesn't think ⁷*on / to / of* other people. I had to go ⁸*to / at / in* Naples ⁹*by / on / with* my own with our parents. It was really boring.

4 Complete the expressions in bold in the text with the words in the box. There are two extra words. Then listen and check.

[all part real rest spend sure time trip]

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•2.7 MP3•50

5

It's ⁰*time* to leave ordinary beach holidays behind and take a(n) ¹_____ that you will remember for the ²_____ of your life. With Overland Tours you will see the ³_____ world. Overland Tours believe that travelling is not only about the destination. The journey is an important ⁴_____ of the experience. Come with us on one of our Overland buses and travel to places other travel companies don't reach. [...] Our tour leaders will take care of you and make ⁵_____ you have everything you need.

REMEMBER THIS

To help you remember the phrases and expressions you learn, record them in sentences about your own important personal experiences, e.g. your exams.

WORD STORE 3D

Compound nouns – travel

5 Choose the correct options.

- If it's four hours one way, that's an eight-hour *car / return* journey. Do we have to go so far?
- The students have suggested that this year's *school / business* trip should be to the mountains.
- Many travel *agents / leaders* have closed their shops because people prefer booking online these days.
- TeenTour is looking for teenage tour *guides / companies* to show young visitors around the city this summer. Full training given.
- Ellen always chooses *beach / skiing* holidays. She likes relaxing and doing nothing.
- Because of its height, snow is guaranteed all year in the *ski / seaside* resort of Kaprun, Austria.



3.4 Reading

Travelling on my own • Colloquial expressions • Wild animals

1 Read blogs 1–3 and match them with photos A–C.

- 1 2 3

2 Match statements a–d with blogs 1–3. One blog has two matching statements.

In this blog:

- a the blogger suggests that he/she won't be updating the blog again.
- b it is clear that the blogger is not an experienced traveller.
- c the blogger describes two potentially big problems which are solved quickly.
- d the blogger mentions that this is not his/her first visit to the country he/she is currently in.

3 Read the blogs again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Jo was very tired when he arrived at his destination.
- 2 Jo arrived to find that the ATMs in the airport were broken.
- 3 Alex is enjoying staying with her uncle and aunt.
- 4 Lucia and Alex will find it hard to understand each other.
- 5 Adèl feels she has benefited from writing her blog.
- 6 Adèl is going to visit a friend she made while she was in England.

4 Match the underlined words in the blogs with their definitions.

- 0 think reckon
- 1 two weeks _____
- 2 begin well _____
- 3 completely relaxed _____
- 4 luxurious or expensive _____
- 5 find it difficult to believe _____

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in Exercise 4.

- 0 Katrina reckons we'll be in Prague by midday, but in this weather, I think it'll take a bit longer.
- 1 Jenna's uncle and aunt are really rich, so they always stay in _____ hotels when they go on holiday.
- 2 Simon and his friends have gone camping for a _____, so he won't be back until the end of the month.
- 3 Amy's birthday party _____ when her favourite cousins from Poland turned up unexpectedly.
- 4 We _____ how much you've grown! How tall are you now?
- 5 Mum had a massage in the hotel spa. She loved it and was _____ afterwards.

REMEMBER BETTER

Go to the travel blogs section of a site like *TravelPod*. Read some of the blogs and make a note of any useful vocabulary. Don't worry if you don't understand everything. Check new words in a dictionary.

Put the words in the box under an appropriate heading. Use a dictionary if necessary.

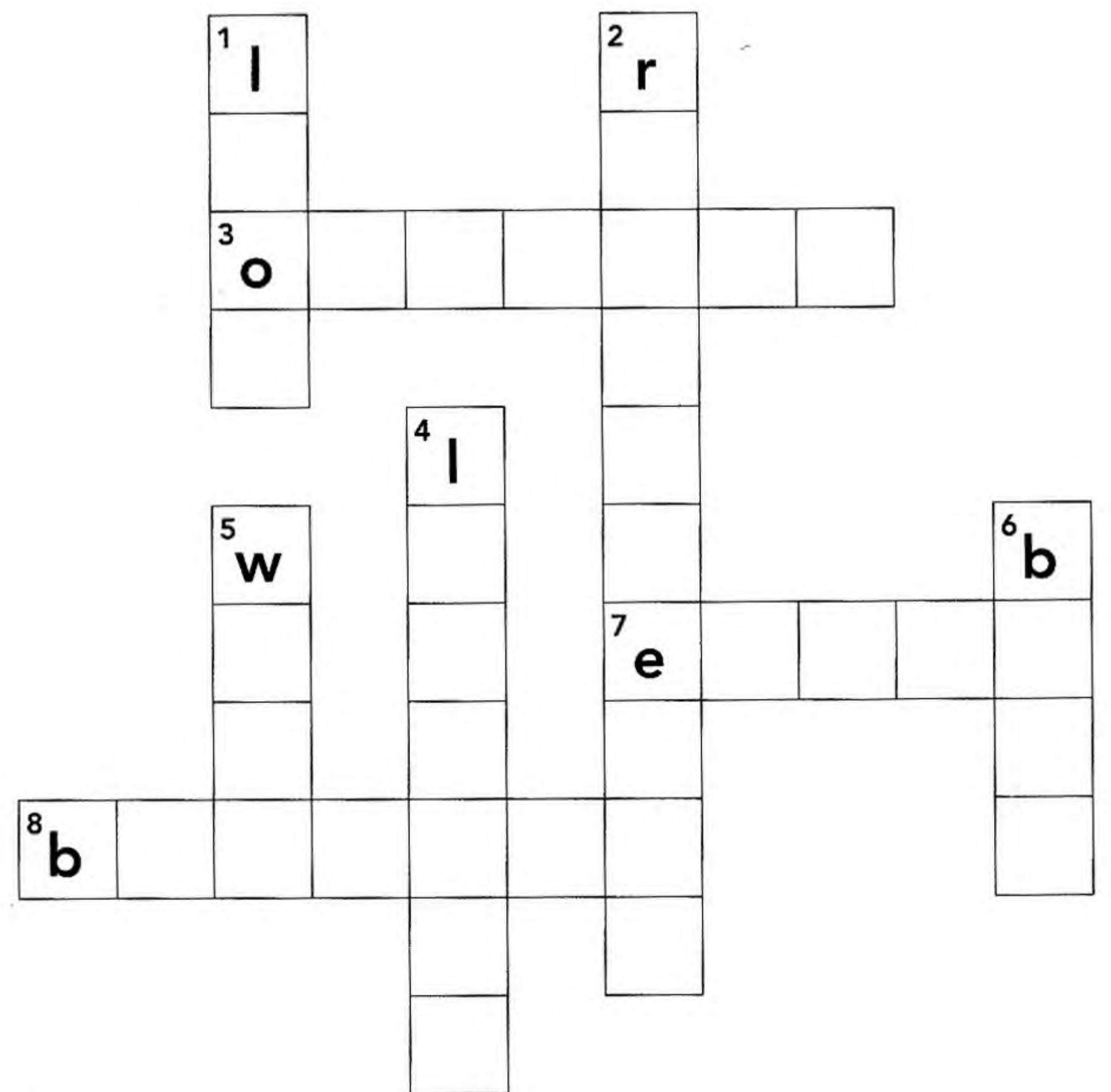
- [après-ski buffet car carriage lift pass
piste powder reef return ticket
sleeper tank underwater wetsuit]

Scuba diving in SE Asia	Europe by train	Snowboarding in the Alps
wetsuit		

WORD STORE 3E

Wild animals

6 Complete the crossword. Use a dictionary if necessary.



Across

- 3 a large African bird that can't fly, but can run very fast
- 7 a large, strong bird which is often the symbol of power
- 8 a black African animal with long curved horns, similar to a large cow

Down

- 1 a big golden-brown cat; males have long hair around their neck called a mane
- 2 a very strong grey animal with thick skin and a long horn on its nose
- 4 a big cat with yellow fur and black spots
- 5 a dog-like animal that lives and hunts in big groups; often appears in fairy tales and horror stories
- 6 grizzly _____, polar _____, brown _____, teddy _____





1

Around the world in six months

Blogger: Jo



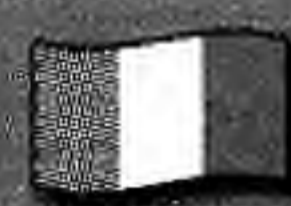
Well, my journey didn't get off to a very good start as I lost my passport in Manchester Airport. I panicked, then found it where I was sitting earlier. How stupid! I hope this is not a bad sign for the rest of the trip. The plane was one of those new two-level ones and was really posh inside. It wasn't even half full, so I lay across several seats and managed to get plenty of sleep.

Arrived in Bangkok at 7.00, feeling fresh, but immediately had problems. My card didn't work in any of the ATMs, so I panicked again until I realised that I was using the wrong pin number. Again, pretty stupid. Got a taxi to the hostel, which is great and full of young people like me. I'm writing this in the lounge area. Feeling excited, but also a bit nervous – not really sure how anything works here in Thailand. Please keep reading – hopefully, my travelling (and blogging) skills will improve soon!

2

Summer in Italy

Blogger: Alex



Yesterday I said bye to Mum and Dad and took the plane from Liverpool to Florence, Italy. My cousin Lucia lives here (my English uncle is married to Sabrina, my Italian aunt) and I was very glad to see them waiting for me at the airport. I've been to lots of places, including Italy, before with my parents, but this is my first trip alone and I don't speak any Italian except, *ciao* and *grazie*! Lucia is really cool and she speaks brilliant English (thank goodness!). It's school holidays here too, so we've got lots of time to enjoy ourselves. My uncle and aunt are totally chilled, I've got my own room at their house and the tram stop is just outside. Freedom! Tonight we're going to a party at Lucia's friend's house. I'll blog again tomorrow and tell you all about it – if I don't sleep all day. ;)

3

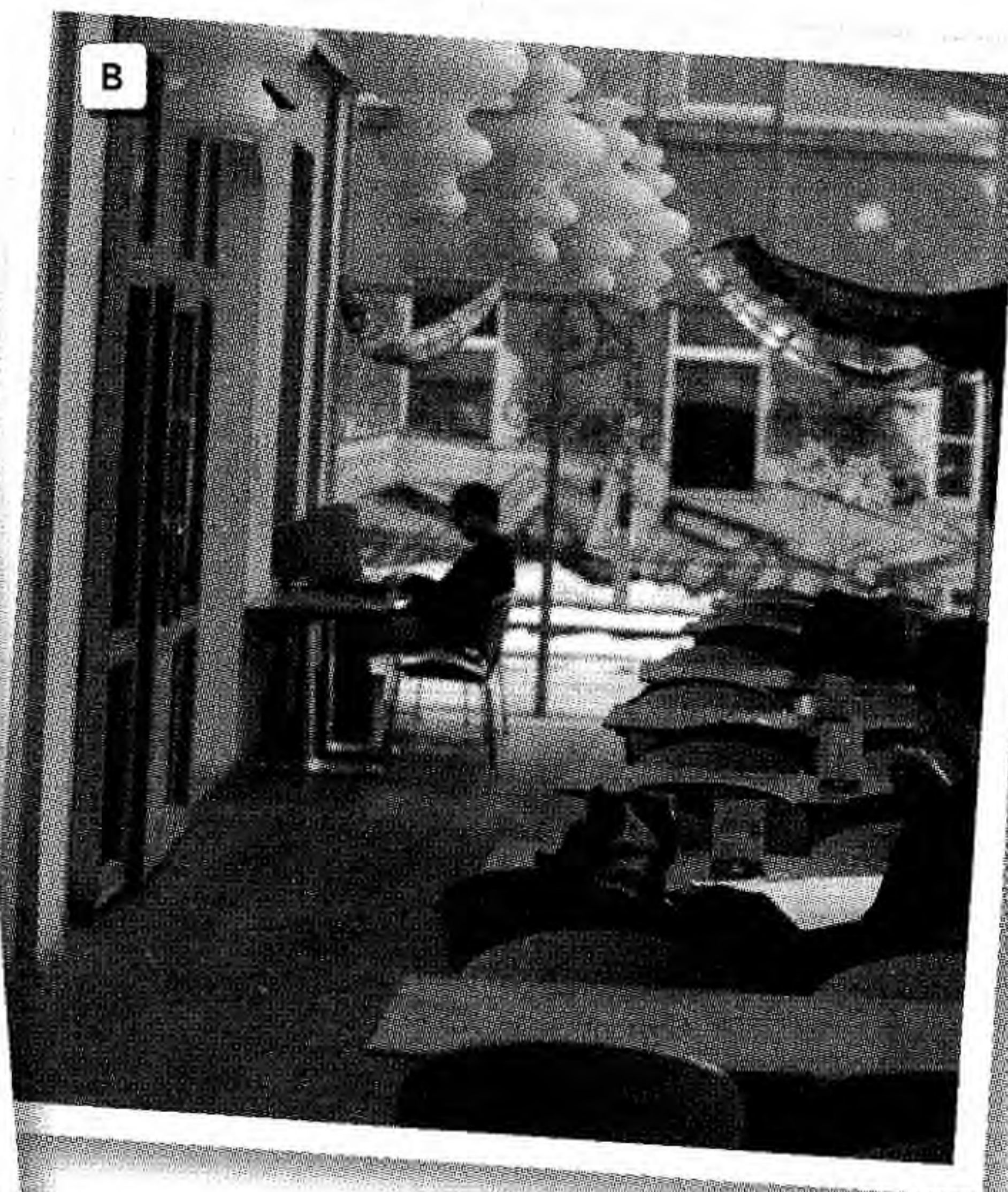
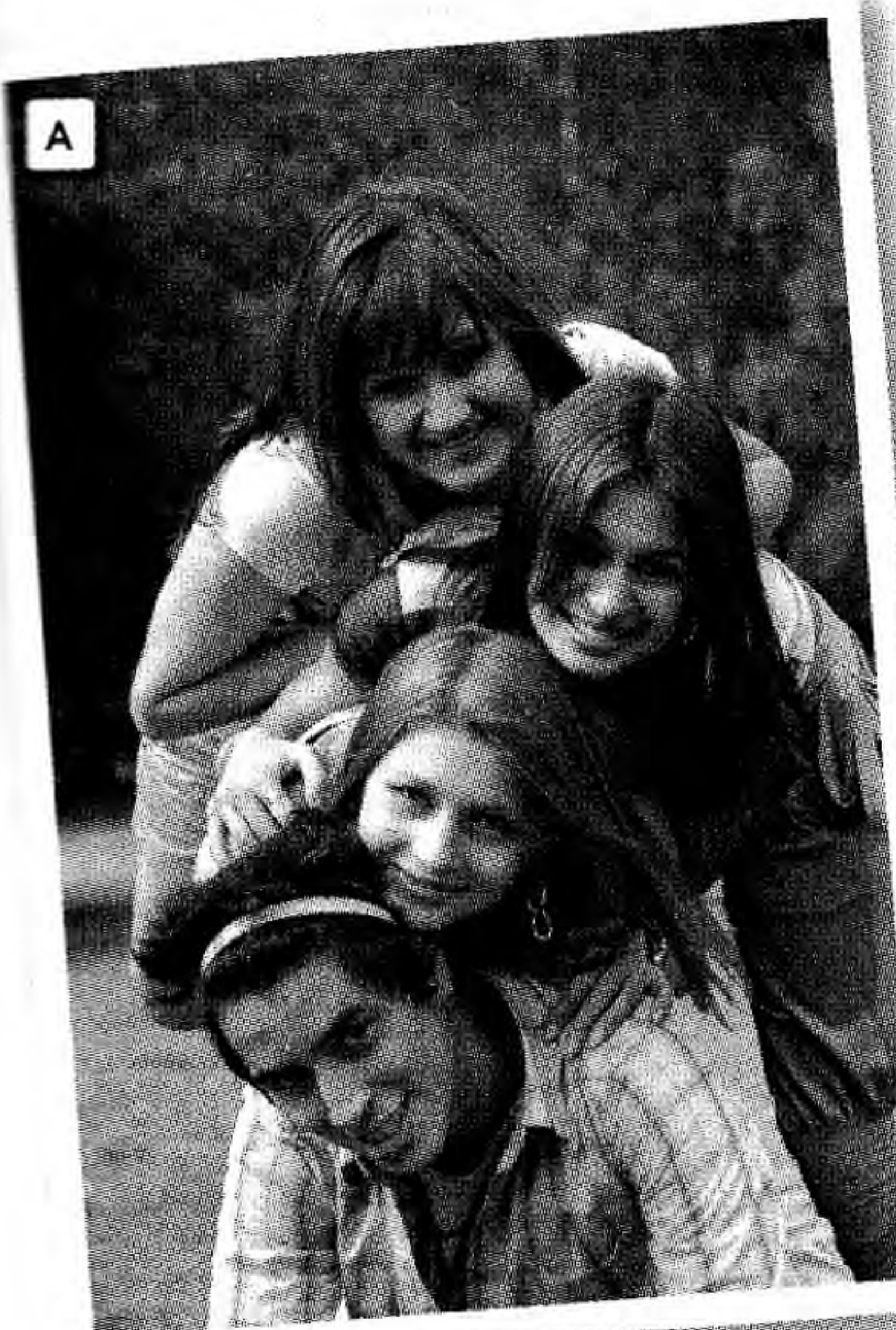
Old York

Blogger: Adèl



After a fantastic fortnight studying English in beautiful York, it's almost time to head back home to Budapest. Although it was sometimes difficult to find time each day, I reckon that writing this blog has really helped me improve my English.

Tonight is the farewell party organised by the school and all the students in my group will be there. I can't get over how many people I've met from all over the world. Especially cool are Sonata from Lithuania, Marta from Poland and Nico from Italy. We're definitely going to stay in touch and Marta even said she will come and visit me in Budapest. Despite a few problems with accommodation, which we eventually solved, it has been a great experience. I'll miss everyone and I'll even miss writing to you, my patient readers.



3.5 Grammar

used to and would

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read the sentences and write **A** for describing an action or **S** for describing a state.

- | | | | | | |
|---|---|--------------------------|---|--|--------------------------|
| 0 | When my dad was young, he <u>went</u> to the Polish seaside every summer. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 3 | They <u>drove</u> all the way from Wrocław to Sopot. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 | My granddad <u>had</u> a Fiat 126, or 'Maluch'. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 4 | It <u>took</u> them all night and most of the next day. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 | Grandma, Granddad, my dad and my uncle all <u>squeezed</u> into the tiny car. | <input type="checkbox"/> | 5 | Despite the long drive, Dad <u>loved</u> going on holiday in his 'Maluch'. | <input type="checkbox"/> |

2 ★ Rewrite the sentences using **used to**.

- 0 In the 1990s, people chose very bright colours.
In the 1990s, people used to choose very bright colours.
- 1 Many women wore tight jeans and cowboy boots.
Many women _____ tight jeans and cowboy boots.
- 2 It was stylish for men to wear white socks.
It _____ stylish for men to wear white socks.
- 3 Tattoos and body piercings weren't as popular as they are now.
Tattoos and body piercings _____ as popular as they are now.
- 4 Supermodels such as Cindy Crawford and Claudia Schiffer became famous.
Supermodels such as Cindy Crawford and Claudia Schiffer _____ famous.
- 5 Was short hair fashionable?
_____ fashionable?

3 ★★ Read the text and replace the underlined verbs with phrases using **used to** or **would**. Use **would** where possible and **used to** if **would** is not possible.

4 ★★★ Tick the correct sentence in each pair. Sometimes both sentences are correct.

- When we went on family summer holidays:
- 1 a We used to set off very early in the car.
- b We would set off very early in the car.
- 2 a One summer we drove all the way to Spain.
- b One summer we would drive all the way to Spain.
- 3 a I used to think it was amazing that Mum and Dad could find the way.
- b I would think it was amazing that Mum and Dad could find the way.
- 4 a We wouldn't have GPS in those days.
- b We didn't use to have GPS in those days.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Use the word in capitals.

- 0 When she was young, Helen didn't get on very well with her cousin Madeline. **USE**
When she was young, Helen didn't use to get on very well with her cousin Madeline.
- 1 I wasn't fair-haired as a baby. **DIDN'T**
I _____ fair-haired as a baby.
- 2 Though they shared a bedroom for many years, Tina and her brother Oliver never fell out. **WOULDN'T**
Though they shared a bedroom for many years, Tina and her brother Oliver _____.
- 3 Kim looked up to her team-mate Ellie until she discovered that Ellie was a cheat. **USED**
Kim _____ her team-mate Ellie, until she discovered that Ellie was a cheat.
- 4 We hated playing football on cold afternoons. **HATE**
We _____ playing football on cold afternoons.
- 5 At every match, the fans started singing at the beginning of the match. **WOULD**
At every match, the fans _____ singing at the beginning of the match.
- 6 You thought you'd always be skinny, but now you're sixteen, you're very well-built. **THINK**
You _____ you'd always be skinny, but now you're sixteen, you're very well-built.

DOWNTHELINE

Advice for teens from twenty-somethings

- Tired of advice from mums, dads and teachers three times your age?
- Check out our advice from young people just a few years ahead of you on life's long journey.

Reality check, by Simon Foster, 23

Five years ago, I thought ⁰used to think I was going to make lots of money when I left school. I told ¹ _____ my parents I'd be the president of a company with a fancy car and a big house by the time I was twenty-one. I believed ² _____ that companies were going to fight to offer me a job because I was going to be a great innovator like Bill Gates or Steve Jobs. I didn't feel ³ _____ that further study was necessary and I wanted to get a job and start my 'amazing' career as soon as possible. I said ⁴ _____ that I'd be able to 'do whatever' and 'go wherever' because I'd be so rich and successful. I didn't know ⁵ _____ much about real life back then.

What would I say to my teenage self now? WAKE UP, MATE! The real world is tough and competitive, and success requires hard work. Take a reality check, work hard and if you are very lucky, success might follow.

3.6 Speaking language practice

Asking for and giving advice

1 Match the sentence halves. Then write **A** for asking for advice, **G** for giving advice or **Ac** for accepting advice.

- | | | |
|-------------------|------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Can you do | a really helpful. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 The first thing | b I would/wouldn't ... | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Good | c me some advice? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 That's | d idea! | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 If I were you, | e you should do is ... | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 Can you give | f me a big favour? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |

2 Match the questions with the advice.

- | | |
|--|-------------------------------------|
| 1 Do you think I need to get them a gift? | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 What do you think I should wear for the journey? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 Do you think we need to reserve a table? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 What sights do you think we should see in Paris? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 Do you think we should leave a tip? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 Which train should she catch? | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- a No, I don't think you should. The service wasn't very good, was it?
- b I think you should. The restaurant is usually very busy on Saturday afternoons.
- c Why doesn't she drive? It's much faster than the train.
- d I don't know. I've never been. The best thing would be to look online or buy a guidebook.
- e It's a good idea to wear something comfortable. We're going to be on the bus for eighteen hours.
- f Yes, you ought to buy them something. You're staying at their house for free.

3 Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversations.

Conversation 1

Kim: Mum, ⁰can you do me a big favour (do / favour / big / can / me / you / a) and help me to decide what to pack for the school trip?

Mum: Of course. Well, I'm pretty sure ¹_____ (don't / you / to / need) take those high heels, Kim. You are going hiking and camping, right?

Kim: Well, er ... yes, ²_____ (didn't / I / of / think / that)

Conversation 2

Ben: ³_____ (need / think / you / I / do / to) buy medical insurance for the ski trip, Dad? It's expensive.

Dad: Well, can you afford to pay for helicopter rescue and hospital fees?

Ben: Er ... not really, no.

Dad: Then ⁴_____ (were / you, / I / if / I'd) get some insurance.

Ben: OK, ⁵_____ (thinking / good). Can I borrow £50, Dad?

4 Rob is at the travel agent's with his mum and his friend Tom. Complete the words in their conversation. The first letter of each word is given.

Mum: Excuse me. ⁰Could you give us some advice? My son Rob and his friend Tom want to go on holiday on their own this summer.

Agent: I see. Well, boys, ¹t_____ f_____ t_____ y_____ s_____ d_____ i_____ decide what kind of holiday you would like. ²W_____ d_____ y_____ have a quick look at our special offers?

Rob: ³G_____ i_____ ! We don't have much money, but maybe a beach holiday.

Tom: Uh huh.

Agent: We have a week in San Antonio, Ibiza for just £249 per person.

Rob: Sounds great!

Mum: Ibiza? I don't think so. Too many parties.

Rob: Mum!

Agent: Er, OK, maybe ⁴t_____ b_____ t_____ w_____ b_____ t_____ go on an adventure holiday. We have rafting, hiking and climbing in Austria.

Tom: Uh huh.

Mum: Climbing? I don't think so. Too dangerous.

Rob: Mum!

Agent: Sightseeing in Rome?

Mum: Italy? No way! Crazy drivers.

Rob: Mum! Look, thanks for your advice, it was ⁵r_____ h_____, but I think we need to talk about this at home.

Tom: Uh huh.



3.7 Writing

A story

1 Complete the tips for writing a story with the words in the box.

[adverbs direct finish narrative short start]

- 1 Make sure you _____ with a sentence that makes the reader want to read more.
- 2 Use _____ sentences to make the story exciting.
- 3 Use some _____ to make adjectives stronger.
- 4 Include some _____ speech so that the story feels real.
- 5 Use a range of _____ tenses.
- 6 _____ with an interesting, funny or surprising sentence.

2 Match these examples with the tips in Exercise 1.

- a After I had finished reading my magazine, I turned to my dad, who was sitting beside me.
- b Well, I certainly hadn't expected that to happen!
- c It was five o'clock in the morning and I was fast asleep when something hard fell on my stomach and woke me up.
- d 'So, where have you been?' asked my mother.
- e Mark was definitely surprised to see me on the train.
- f I was wrong!

3 Complete the story with the words in the box.

[depressed lengthy loudly overnight
really unbelievably unhappily unfortunately]

I didn't want to go home. I ¹ _____ didn't want to go home! My holiday in Barbados had been my best holiday ever and I was sitting at the airport, waiting for my flight home, feeling very ² _____. Why couldn't I stay just one more day?

'Passengers for Flight 207 to London, please board now,' a voice came from the loudspeaker. ³ _____, I picked up my case and got on the plane behind my parents. ⁴ _____, they were looking forward to getting back. Can you imagine that?

We sat in the plane, waiting to take off for about an hour. People were starting to whisper about the ⁵ _____ delay. Then we all heard the pilot's voice: ⁶ _____, we have some engine trouble and we can't take off this afternoon,' he said. 'We are arranging ⁷ _____ accommodation at the Tree Tops Hotel for all passengers.'

I couldn't believe it. 'Yes!' I shouted ⁸ _____. My wish had come true. I had one more day and I was going to stay in the best hotel in the area!



SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 You have seen this announcement on an international students' website.

Stories about holidays

We want stories about unusual holiday events. Write a story that begins with this sentence:
I shall remember that day for the rest of my life.

Your story must include:

- some unusual weather
- a meeting.

Write your story in 140–190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my story:

- I have started with the sentence given.
- I have included the two items given in the task.
- I have included an introductory paragraph to interest the reader.
- I have used strong adjectives to make it exciting.
- I have used a range of narrative tenses.
- I have organised the paragraphs appropriately.
- I have included an interesting ending.
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.

3.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 For questions 1–10, read the article below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Animal criminal

For our honeymoon, we went on an ⁰ _____ tour of the Western United States. One day we decided to go ¹ _____ in one of the national parks. It was recommended in the ² _____ book as a great place for walking. The landscape around there is totally ³ _____ and there's lots of wildlife to spot if you're lucky. We parked in an area of ⁴ _____ forest, overlooking a beautiful valley.

We ⁵ _____ on the walk quite early in the morning and it was starting to get dark by the time we got back to the car. To our horror, we realised that somebody, or something, had

broken into the ⁶ _____ car. Our bags had been pulled out and ripped open, and our ⁷ _____ were all over the car park. It was then that we saw the paw prints all over the car and realised who the thief must have been – a hungry bear!

The park ⁸ _____ was very sympathetic and explained that it wasn't the first time that something like this ⁹ _____ happened. Unfortunately, our travel ¹⁰ _____ company weren't as understanding and said that, because the break-in wasn't committed by a human, they wouldn't pay. It ended up being a very expensive day!

- | | | | | |
|----|--------------|-------------------|-------------|--------------|
| 0 | A overboard | B overland | C overall | D overseas |
| 1 | A marching | B adventuring | C touring | D trekking |
| 2 | A guide | B holiday | C map | D planning |
| 3 | A clean | B calm | C unspoilt | D empty |
| 4 | A dense | B deep | C solid | D huge |
| 5 | A made out | B set off | C picked up | D went along |
| 6 | A loan | B borrow | C rent | D hire |
| 7 | A belongings | B properties | C contents | D goods |
| 8 | A policeman | B attendant | C ranger | D officer |
| 9 | A did | B had | C was | D have |
| 10 | A money | B operator | C insurance | D agent |

TIPS:

Question 1: You're looking for a word that can mean 'going on a long walk'.

Question 2: Think of a word which collocates with *book*.

Question 3: Which of the adjectives best describes the landscape in the story?

Open cloze

2 For questions 1–10, read the article below and think of the word which best fits each gap. Use only one word in each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

The world's most fashionable resort

Where do you think the world's ⁰ *most* fashionable place would be? Dubai? Thailand, maybe? Well, think again! In a recent survey ¹ _____ over 1,000 young people, it wasn't the exotic and tropical that finished at the ² _____ of the list, but the cool and mysterious. Reykjavik, Iceland, is now the place where young people would most like to go.

The city, which is one of Europe's ³ _____ capitals, with a population of just 120,000, offers an amazing variety of entertainment, from superb restaurants and cafés to cinemas ⁴ _____ you can watch the latest Icelandic and international films. And if you prefer ⁵ _____ activities in the fresh air, take

a bus out of the city and within an hour's ride you'll find horse ⁶ _____, fishing and mountain-biking. You can even board one of the many tourist boats and ⁷ _____ a day whale-watching.

The city has a reputation for friendliness that is well-deserved. When you go through passport ⁸ _____ at the airport, the officials are much more likely to share a joke with you ⁹ _____ give you serious looks or ask you difficult questions. So what are you waiting for? ¹⁰ _____ your seat belt and take off for Reykjavik!

TIPS:

Question 1: You need a preposition here.

Question 2: Where in the list do you think Reykjavik came?

Question 3: You need a superlative adjective here.

3.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.
 😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
3.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about travelling and different means of transport.					Students' Book pages 36–37 Word Store page 7 Workbook pages 32–33
3.2	Grammar	I can speculate about the present and the past.					Students' Book page 38 Workbook page 34
3.3	Listening	I can understand the main points of a conversation.					Students' Book page 39 Workbook page 35
3.4	Reading	I can find specific details in short texts.					Students' Book pages 40–41 Workbook pages 36–37
3.5	Grammar	I can talk about past states and repeated actions.					Students' Book page 42 Workbook page 38
3.6	Speaking	I can ask for and give advice.					Students' Book page 43 Workbook page 39
3.7	Writing	I can write a story.					Students' Book pages 44–45 Workbook page 40

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

3.10 Self-check

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

arrive book fasten go (x2)
miss reach wait

- 0 The flight leaves at 1 o'clock, so we should reach Prague by half past two.
- 1 On the telephone: Press 1 to _____ a flight. Press 2 to speak to a customer services representative.
- 2 While you _____ through passport control, please do not use your mobile phone.
- 3 Dave, I've _____ my train, so I'm afraid I'm going to be late. The next one is in two hours.
- 4 Let's _____ to the check-in desk and drop off our luggage before we have a coffee.
- 5 Ladies and gentlemen, we will be landing soon, so please _____ your seat belts.

/5

2 Complete the words in the sentences. Some letters are given.

- 0 Before we boarded the ferry, we parked our car in a car park at the port.
- 1 The captain has asked you to please **f**_____ your seat belts for landing.
- 2 We're **s**_____ **o**_____ from home at 5 o'clock tomorrow morning on our journey to Marseilles.
- 3 Students who want to go on this year's school **t**_____ **p**_____ must have a letter of permission from a parent or guardian.
- 4 At Faraway Travel our travel **a**_____ **s**_____ specialise in trips to Southeast Asia. Contact us for details.
- 5 Today a man was killed by a **r**_____ **s**_____ that he was trying to hunt illegally for its valuable horn.

/5

3 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 0 Lewis hadn't been invited, but he stayed ___ at our place anyway.
A up B on **C over**
- 1 In this office they ___ with 100 pieces of lost luggage each week.
A cope B deal C plan
- 2 We have been in this resort for a week now. We like it, but tomorrow it's time to ___ on to somewhere new.
A go B look C move
- 3 Do we need to book a table or can we just ___ up at the restaurant at about 8 o'clock?
A turn B walk C go
- 4 Nicole and Ewan are going ___ on holiday on Friday for the first time in five years.
A out B away C to
- 5 Amelia is studying Tourism and when she graduates, she wants to be a tour _____.
A holiday B agent C guide

/5

4 Choose the correct option in the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first.

- 0 It's possible that we are lost. Do you have a map? We might be / must be / can't be lost.
- 1 I'm sure these are my mum's keys. They look the same. These *might be* / *may be* / *must be* my mum's keys.
- 2 Leo is sure this is not his luggage. His bags are bigger. This *might not be* / *can't be* / *must not be* Leo's luggage.
- 3 Jess is sure the light in the sky was not a UFO. According to Jess, the light in the sky *must have been* / *might have been* / *can't have been* a UFO.
- 4 It was possible Harry sprayed the graffiti in the toilet. Harry *must have sprayed* / *could have sprayed* / *can't have sprayed* the graffiti in the toilet.
- 5 Cindy is sure that Edward forgot to pay for his lunch. Cindy thinks Edward *might have forgotten* / *can't have forgotten* / *must have forgotten* to pay for his lunch.

/5

5 Find and correct the mistakes in four of the sentences.

- 0 Before the terrorist attacks on 11 September 2001, airports wouldn't be as secure as they are nowadays.
didn't use to be
- 1 On 23 May, my brother used to be born. _____
- 2 Would you use to go abroad on holiday when you were little? _____
- 3 We didn't use to go camping in the summer. We always stayed in hostels or hotels. _____
- 4 I wouldn't love travelling on planes when I was younger, but now I really enjoy it. _____
- 5 My friend's father used to was a pilot before he retired. _____

/5

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

The Airbus A380 is the largest plane in the world. The Boeing 747 ¹___ the biggest airliner in the world, but the A380 has around forty percent more space. The A380 carries enough fuel for it to take ²___ in Dubai and land in Los Angeles without stopping. The journey takes sixteen hours and twenty minutes. In the past, passengers ³___ have to cope with a lot of noise during journeys, but the A380 is much quieter than other similar planes. A380s are now owned by nine airlines in Europe, Australia, Asia and the Middle East, so if you have set ⁴___ on a long flight from any of these regions, it ⁵___ have been on an A380.

- | | | |
|--------------|--------------|-----------|
| 1 A would be | B used to be | C used to |
| 2 A up | B over | C off |
| 3 A should | B would | C could |
| 4 A off | B up | C back |
| 5 A must | B can't | C might |

/5

Total /30

4

EAT UP

4.1 Vocabulary

Food • Flavours and textures

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Choose the odd one out in each group. Then complete the sentences to explain why you chose each word.


- | | | | |
|-------------|----------|--------|-----------|
| 0 jam | honey | rice | olives |
| 1 carrot | onion | potato | lemon |
| 2 pineapple | cucumber | mango | raspberry |
| 3 milk | biscuits | crisps | spaghetti |
| 4 pumpkin | pear | leek | potato |
| 5 chicken | beef | pork | pasta |

- 0 Rice is the odd one out because all the others usually come in jars.
- 1 _____ is the odd one out because all the others are types of _____.
- 2 _____ is the odd one out because all the others are types of _____.
- 3 _____ is the odd one out because all the others usually come in _____.
- 4 _____ is the odd one out because all the others are types of _____.
- 5 _____ is the odd one out because all the others are types of _____.

WORD STORE 4A

Food – fish and vegetables

2 Complete the menu with words for food. Some letters are given.



Dockside Restaurant

All our fish and ⁰seafood is caught fresh each day and cooked to order.

Menu

- 🐟 Pink Atlantic ¹pr _____ s with lemon, chilli and red ²pe _____ s
- 🐟 Wild Pacific ³sa _____ n salad with spring onions and rich purple ⁴be _____ t
- 🐟 Pan-fried ⁵t _____ a steaks with ⁶B _____ ls sp _____ s from our garden
- 🐟 A selection of ⁷sh _____ sh (including crab, langoustines and oysters) served warm with freshly-baked bread
- 🐟 Grilled Mediterranean ⁸sar _____ s with steamed ⁹g _____ n b _____ s and green garden ¹⁰ca _____ ge

WORD STORE 4B

Antonyms – food adjectives

3 Write the opposites.

- 0 bitter ≠ sweet (e.g. sugar)
- 1 cooked ≠ _____ (e.g. salad)
- 2 mild ≠ _____ (e.g. chillies)
- 3 ripe ≠ _____ (e.g. green bananas)
- 4 fresh ≠ _____ (e.g. bread and cakes)
- 5 fresh ≠ _____ (e.g. vegetables and meat)
- 6 fresh ≠ _____ (e.g. milk)

REMEMBER THIS

The words *sweet* and *sour* both have more than one opposite in English.

- 1 **sweet** ≠ **bitter** – Examples of bitter foods include *black coffee* and *dark chocolate*.
- 2 **sweet** ≠ **sour** – Examples of sour foods include *lemons* and *vinegar*.
- 3 **fresh** ≠ **sour** – *Sour* also means 'old' of dairy foods, e.g. *old milk/yoghurt*.

4 Complete the conversations with adjectives from Exercise 3. Use one of the adjectives twice.

- 1 A: Are you ready to order, madam?
B: Yes, er, could I ask you about the Thai Red Curry? Is it _____? Chilli gives me stomachache.
A: That's no problem, madam. I can ask the chef to make a _____ version for you without the chilli.
- 2 A: Waiter! I'm not satisfied with this meal at all. First of all, the rice is cold; and worse than that, the fish is completely uncooked – it's _____! Are you trying to poison your customers?
B: Sir, are you aware that this is a sushi restaurant?
- 3 A: I love travelling, but it's always great to get home. I'm hungry. What have we got?
B: Er, well, it looks like the electricity went off while we were away. The food in the fridge is not exactly fresh anymore. We've got some _____ potatoes, some _____ milk and there are a few slices of _____ bread.
A: Doesn't sound very tasty. Shall we phone for pizza?
- 4 A: So, what fruit do you eat in Indonesia, Aulia?
B: Well, we eat a lot of mangoes. At this time of year, most of them are yellow and _____ or, in other words, ready to eat. Green ones can be quite _____ tasting, but the yellow ones are exactly the opposite – really _____ and delicious.

WORD STORE 4C

Word families – describing food

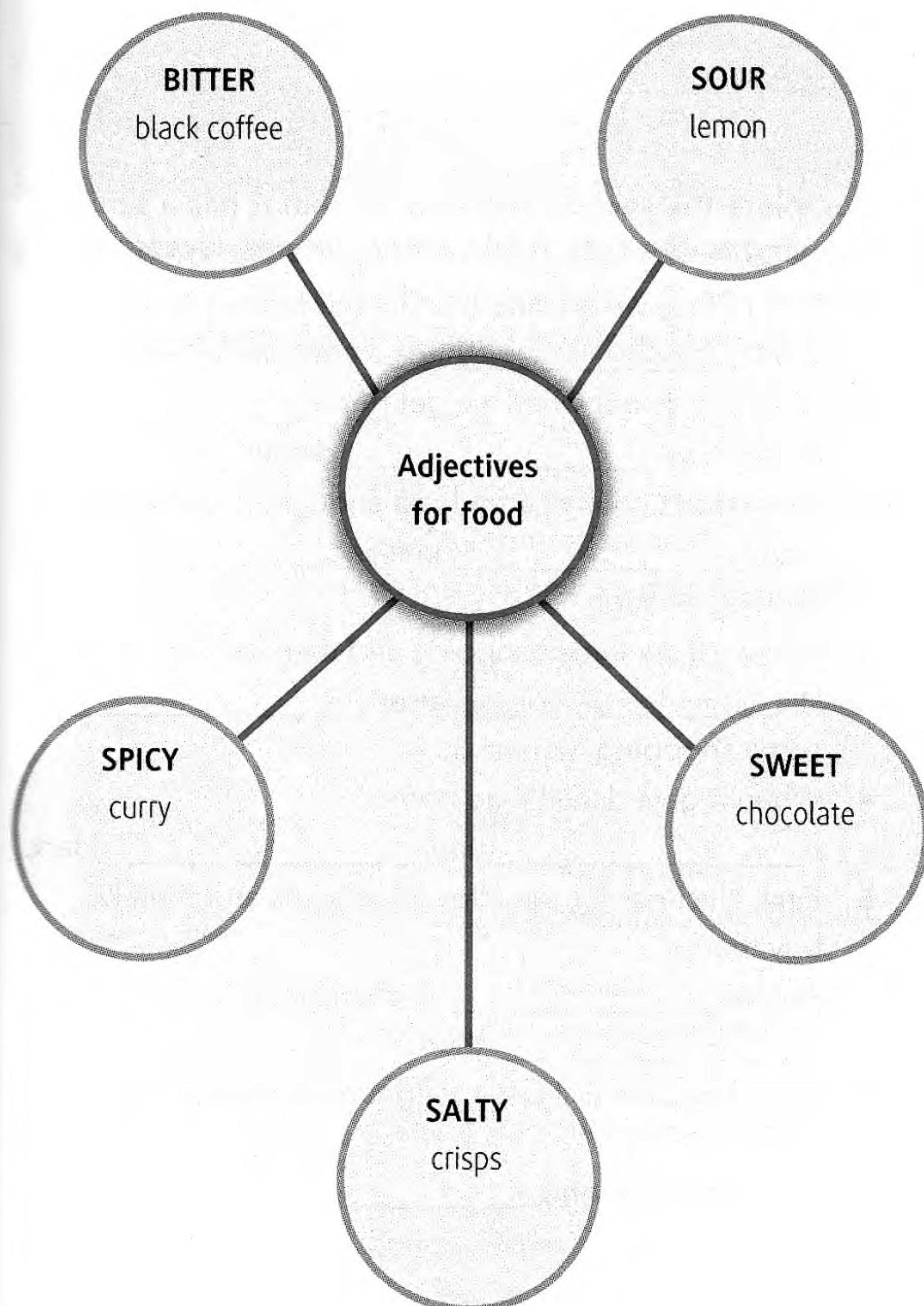
5 Complete the table with the noun forms.

Noun	Adjective
0 <i>crisp</i>	crispy (e.g. bacon)
1	greasy (e.g. chips)
2	juicy (e.g. oranges)
3	salty (e.g. crisps)
4	smelly (e.g. cheese)
5	tasty (e.g. dish)

6 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 5. The first letter of each word is given.

- I don't have time to make freshly-squeezed juice. It takes so long to clean the machine afterwards.
- If you cook the salmon at a high temperature, the skin will be brown and c_____.
- Urgh! You've got g_____ from the burger running all down your chin. Gross!
- The trouble with s_____ snacks like crisps and peanuts is that they make you very thirsty.
- Emma, there is definitely a burning s_____. Did you forget something in the oven?
- This pizza has a very unusual t_____, Ben. Are you sure you added salt and not sugar by mistake?

7 Complete the word web with examples of food for each adjective.



REMEMBER BETTER

Make a list of all the different food you've eaten today. Use a dictionary if necessary. Look at the list before you go to bed tonight and see how many words you can still remember tomorrow morning!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Choose the correct options.

- Jackie doesn't like seafood, so she definitely won't be ordering the *prawns / peppers / Brussels sprouts*.
- Mum, how do I know if this chicken is *stale / ripe / cooked*? It's been in the oven for twenty minutes.
- I don't mind mild cheese, but I can't stand *raw / bitter / smelly* cheese like the ones with the blue bits.
- Yellow, red or green and full of vitamin C, *beetroot / potatoes / peppers* come from South America and not the Mediterranean area, as many people assume.
- Mmm, delicious! How does your dad make simple fish so *tasty / salty / rotten*?
- Wow! This coffee is extremely *sour / bitter / crispy*. Could you pass the sugar, please?
- If you eat *juicy / unripe / fresh* fruit, you may get stomachache. Choose softer pieces as they are usually ready to eat.
- My young brother doesn't eat meat, but he will have fish and he really likes *chicken / tuna / pork*.
- We aren't eating burgers again, are we? I'm sick of *raw / greasy / ripe* food. Can't we have something healthy for a change?
- Jess spilled *beetroot / peppers / green beans* all down her white blouse. Her mum washed it three times, but the red stains just turned pink.

/10



4.2 Grammar

Future time clauses

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match the sentence halves. Then underline the main clause in each sentence.

- 0 If he puts any more chillies in that curry,
- 1 You'll burn that omelette
- 2 If there is too much food tonight,
- 3 There won't be any cake left for tomorrow
- 4 If you cook dinner,
- 5 If we don't take the fish out of the freezer now,

- a if we have another slice now.
- b I'll wash up.
- c it won't be defrosted in time for dinner.
- d if you don't turn the heat down.
- e we'll eat what's left tomorrow.
- f it'll be too spicy for me.

2 ★ Put the words in the correct order to complete the sentences. Change the form of the verb and add a comma where necessary.

- 0 dinner / before / clean / Charlotte / I / make / 'll
Before Charlotte makes dinner, I'll clean the kitchen.
- 1 cake / if / add / sweet / he / too / be / will / any / more
The _____ sugar.
- 2 we / for / eat / a walk / after / we / go / 'll
_____ dinner.
- 3 sandwiches / 'll / Jason / he / unless / take / be / some
_____ hungry.

3 ★★ Read the text and choose the correct options.

Teenchef

Easy, tasty and filling dishes for young chefs

Click dish for ingredients and method.

<p>Sticky Fingers Pork</p> <p>¹Until / Before / When you want to impress your friends, this super-sticky Chinese dish will do the job.</p>	<p>Aztec Chilli</p> <p>Spice up your life! ⁵Before / After / Until you eat this Mexican Chilli Con Carne, you'll be as strong as an Aztec warrior.</p>
<p>My-Thai Chicken Curry</p> <p>²As soon as / As long as / When you like spicy food, you'll love this mind-blowing recipe. It's hot, hot, hot!</p>	<p>Rasta Pasta</p> <p>You'll be licking your lips ⁶as long as / unless / as soon as this delicious Jamaican pasta comes out of the kitchen.</p>
<p>Caveman's Stew</p> <p>This one-pot stew will keep you full all day long, ³until / unless / as long as you have a dinosaur's appetite!</p>	<p>Big Bad Bolognese</p> <p>⁷Before / After / Unless you sit down to eat this Italian delight, you'll need to be as hungry as Nero's horse!</p>
<p>Oh So Sweet and Sour Veggies</p> <p>You won't believe how delicious veggie food can be ⁴until / if / when you try this awesome Asian special.</p>	<p>Smiling Cow Burgers</p> <p>Both cows and your friends will be happy ⁸if / unless / before you choose to make these delicious vegetarian burgers.</p>

4 ★★★ Complete the conversations with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 A: I'll help (help) you cook dinner when I _____ (finish) my homework, Dad.
B: It's OK. Until you _____ (take) your exams, I _____ (do) all the cooking.
- 2 A: As soon as I _____ (arrive) safely in London, I _____ (text) you.
B: If you _____ (use) Skype, Mum, you _____ (not have to) pay.
- 3 A: Unless the weather _____ (be) really bad, we _____ (be) there by 9 o'clock.
B: Well, as long as it _____ (not be) foggy or snowy, you _____ (make) it by then.
- 4 A: Before you _____ (go), I _____ (give) you a piece of cake to take home.
B: Oh, thanks. I _____ (eat) it after I _____ (have) dinner tonight.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 5 Complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Add commas where necessary.
- 0 First I'll lose weight and then I'll buy a new pair of jeans.
Until I lose weight, I won't buy a new pair of jeans.
 - 1 We'll eat dinner when we get home.
As soon as _____ dinner.
 - 2 If you don't cook rice for long enough, it won't be soft.
Rice _____ unless _____ for long enough.
 - 3 First we'll do some shopping and then we'll get a coffee.
We _____ after _____ some shopping.
 - 4 When it gets dark, I'll go home.
I _____ until _____ dark.
 - 5 First, I'll check if I can afford the boots and then I'll buy them.
Before _____ the boots, I _____ them.
 - 6 This chocolate will last a long time if you eat one block a day.
As long as you only _____ a long time.

4.3 Listening language practice

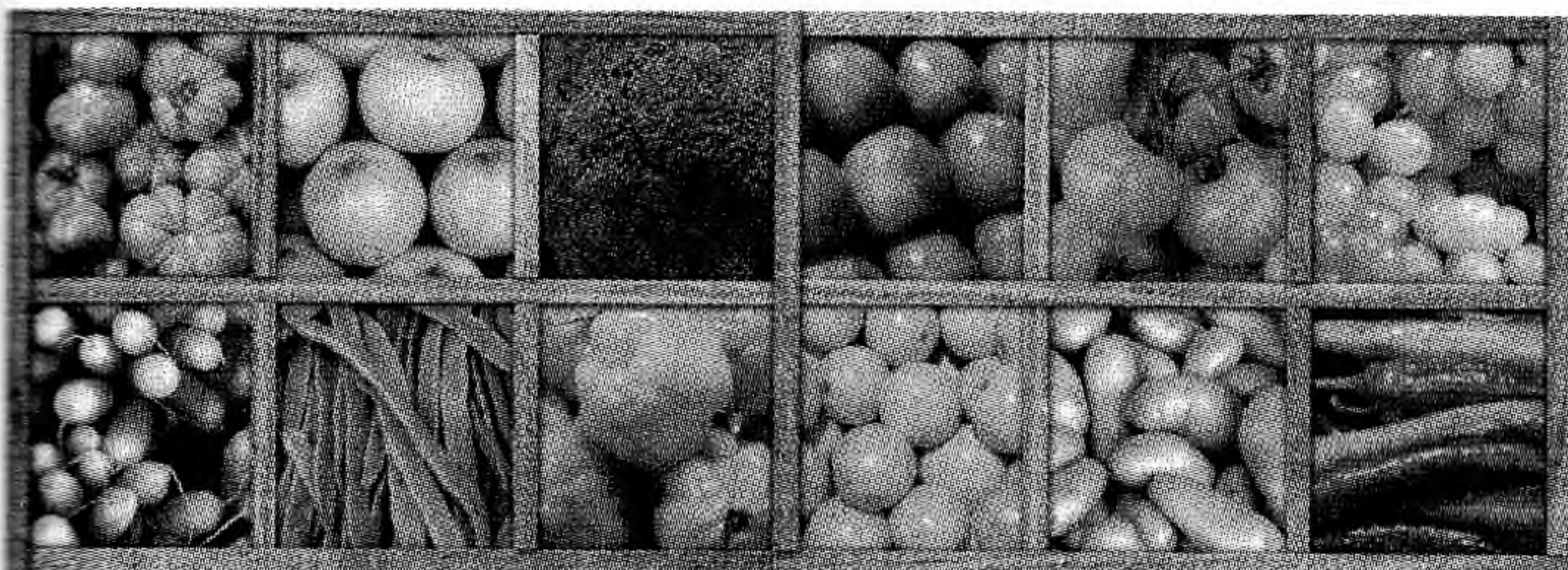
Collocations

1 Read what two speakers say about their diet and choose the correct options. Then listen and check.

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•2.22 MP3•65

1 I'm interested in having a natural diet and so for the last two years, I've only ¹eaten / cooked / used raw food. I believe that when you ²cook / eat / buy fresh food, you lose the goodness and vitamins in the food. I eat raw vegetables, but of course, I need protein. So I eat raw eggs. [...] I feel healthy and I ³feel / have / need lots of energy, but it's difficult to ⁴stay / live / eat with the rest of my family and that's a problem.

4 I'm a vegan. That means that I don't eat or ⁵like / use / make any animal products for any purpose. I don't eat meat, fish, dairy or anything that comes from animals. I don't ⁶wear / make / sell clothes made from animals either. When I was a child, I ate meat and drank milk like most people. But then, when I was thirteen, I started thinking about where my food came from. I learnt about how animals suffer and I was shocked. I decided to ⁷eat / become / cook a vegan. [...] I ⁸eat / respect / kill animals and I don't want them to suffer.



2 Complete gaps 1–4 in the word maps with the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs. Then complete gaps a–e with the underlined words in Exercise 1.

[cook drink eat feel lose respect use]

- 0 lose ^athe goodness and vitamins in the food
 weight/control/blood
 your appetite/your memory/your job
- 1 _____ ^b_____/nature/the environment
 somebody's wishes/views/privacy
 the law/a rule
- 2 _____ spicy/Italian ^c_____
 a meal (for two/three/four)
 (somebody) breakfast/lunch/dinner _____
- 3 _____ ^d_____ products
 chopsticks/a knife and fork/
 your hands to eat
 a computer/phone/machine
- 4 _____ ^e_____/happy/fit
 hungry/thirsty
 fear/excitement/relief

REMEMBER BETTER

You can record collocations effectively by using word maps. Use different colours for different word forms. Display them somewhere where you will see them every day (e.g. on your mirror, next to your desk) using post-it notes or similar to help you memorise them.

Add three more items to each word map.

1 eat meat/vegetables
 out/in a restaurant

2 have
 pour (somebody)
 spill a drink

WORD STORE 4D

Collocations – food

3 Complete the adjectives in the article. Some letters are given.

Ace your exams

Eat well, perform well. Today Emma Peel tells us about the relationship between diet and study.

Are your exams coming up soon? Are you studying hard and feeling stressed? In order to do your best, you need to think carefully about what you eat. A ⁰healthy diet means a ¹b____d diet. To stay energised, eat plenty of ²f____h food and not too much processed or ³f____t food. Why not eat a ⁴v____n meal now and again to help reduce the amount of meat in your diet? Avoid ⁵h____y food such as cheese or chocolate cake in the evenings, especially if you are going to sit at your desk and study until late. If you get hungry while revising, choose a ⁶i____t snack such as fruit, a protein bar or low-fat yoghurt rather than crisps or sweets. Eat ⁷f____g food such as chocolate, chips, pizzas and burgers only occasionally, perhaps as a reward for a hard-working week rather than as part of your daily diet.

4.4 Reading

Feed your mind • Collocations • Phrasal verbs

Glossary

storage space (n) = space in a house or flat where things can be kept until they are needed
sell-by date (n) = the date stamped on a food product after which it should not be sold
quid (n) = informal pound (£) (plural: *quid*, not *quids*)

1 Read the article and choose the best title.

- a The Uni years
- b Ten top tips for student cooks
- c Learn to cook

2 Read the article again and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 1 The tips are intended for young people who
 - A plan to study cooking at college.
 - B need to cook when they're away.
 - C want to cook for their families.
 - D plan to become vegetarians.
- 2 Before they leave home, students should
 - A borrow a lot of equipment from their parents.
 - B buy some new basic recipe books.
 - C think carefully about what they need to take.
 - D practise some adventurous meals to cook.
- 3 Sam Stern advises students to
 - A spend less money on socialising and more on food.
 - B shop in supermarkets because it's cheaper.
 - C avoid vegetarian food because it's expensive.
 - D try to relax as they cook, even if something goes wrong.
- 4 When talking about shopping, Sam Stern advises students to
 - A take turns to buy food with their housemates.
 - B go to supermarkets early in the day, before the cheaper products are sold.
 - C look out for cheaper named brands.
 - D always do their shopping together with a friend.
- 5 In Sam's opinion, cooking for a lot of people can
 - A be expensive.
 - B be a lot of fun.
 - C make a profit.
 - D cause a lot of stress.

REMEMBER THIS

To help you decide whether statements are facts or opinions (e.g. question 5 above), note down expressions that are commonly used to introduce opinions:
Many people believe ..., According to X ..., Some people think ..., We felt that ..., In his opinion ...

3 Read the article again and choose from the sentences (1-6) the one which fits each gap (A-E). There is one extra sentence.

- 1 These can be expensive, but not if you share.
- 2 For example, a whole chicken is more expensive than pieces, but can make three or four other meals.
- 3 For the same reason, avoid shopping when you are hungry.
- 4 If you can't find anyone, follow the recipe carefully.
- 5 One way is to shop online.
- 6 I still make mistakes all the time.

4 Match the underlined phrases in the article with their definitions.

- 0 divide the bill split the cost
- 1 give you more for your money _____
- 2 a good use of your money _____
- 3 really change the situation _____
- 4 take only what you really need _____
- 5 learn the most important or simplest things about a topic _____

5 Complete the sentences with the phrases in Exercise 4.

- 0 Shall we share a pizza and salad and split the cost ?
- 1 We have to carry everything that we pack for this hiking trip, so please _____.
- 2 Before you try skiing on your own, take some lessons and _____.
- 3 Check the price online before you buy. Websites often _____ than shops.
- 4 If you turn down the heaters in your house, it will _____ to your electricity bills.
- 5 The juice maker was quite expensive, but _____ . We drink healthy juice almost every morning.

WORD STORE 4E

Phrasal verbs – preparing food

6 Complete the extracts from cookbooks with the correct form of the verbs in the box.

[chop cut eat go (x2) throw]

Don't ⁰throw the egg whites away. Save them for making an omelette for breakfast tomorrow.

Wash the fish, then ¹_____ each fillet up into three large pieces and rub with the pepper and spices.

Because there are so few tuna left in our seas, the price has really ²_____ up in the last few years.

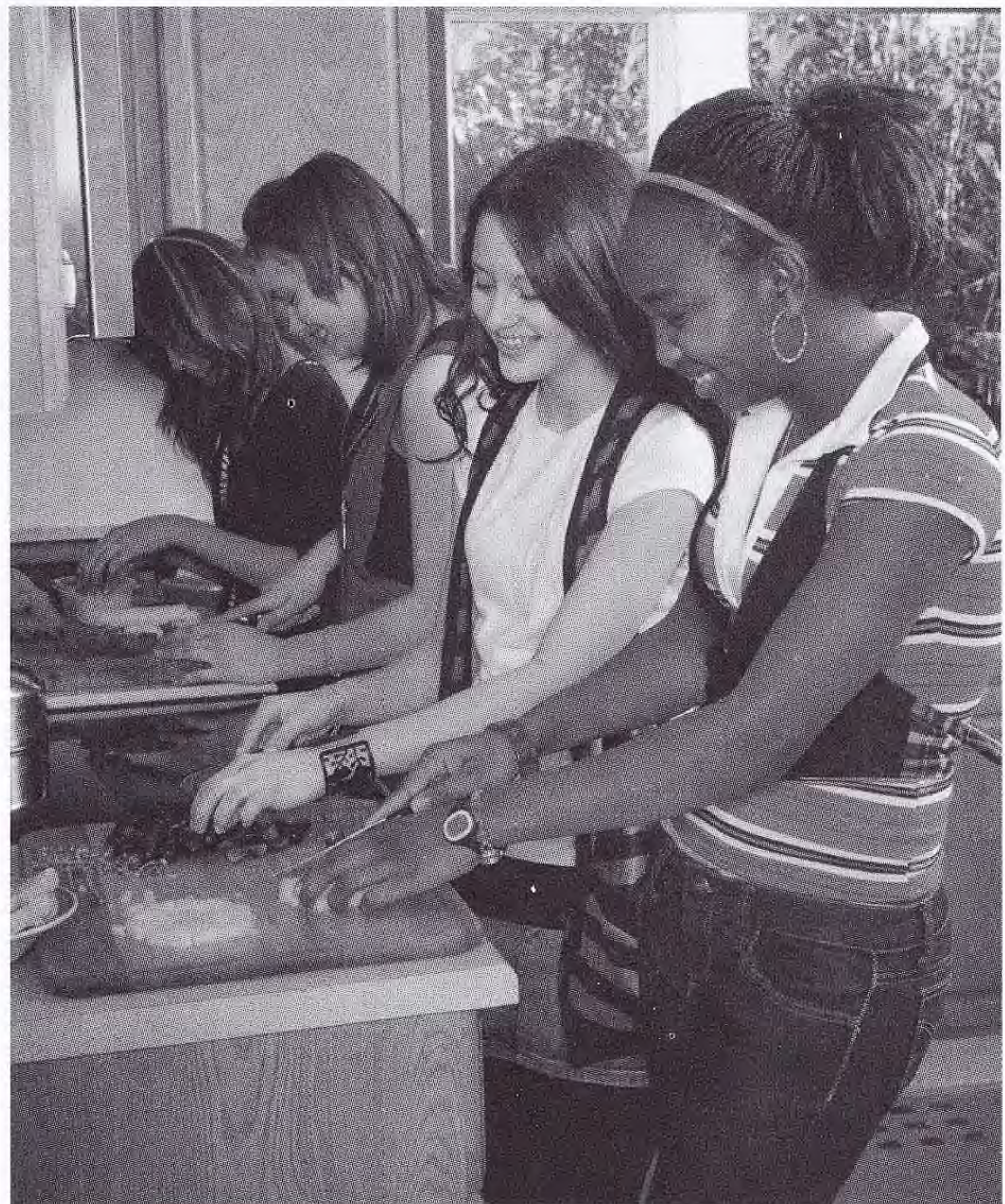
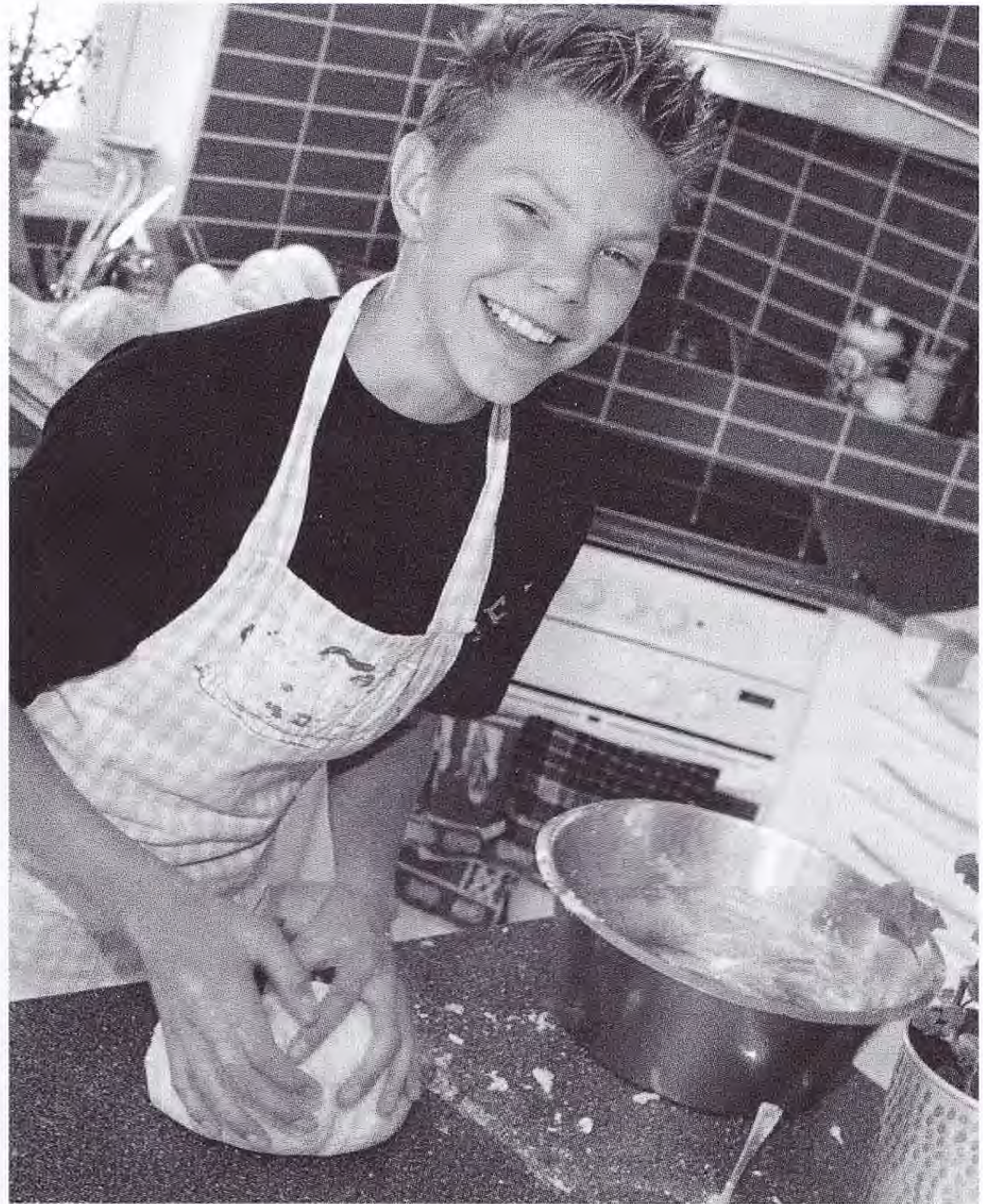
³_____ the chilli up into very small pieces. You don't want a big piece of chilli in your mouth.

You can ⁴_____ any leftover meat up the next day in a sandwich or as part of a salad.

Just because you are on a diet doesn't mean you have to ⁵_____ without your favourite food.

Chef Sam Stern, who has been writing about cooking since he was just fourteen, shares his cooking tips for students who are leaving their families soon and heading off to university.

- 1 Try and learn the basics before you leave home: you will know what recipes work for you and what equipment to take. There probably won't be much storage space in your student kitchen, so only take the essentials.
- 2 Get someone to cook with you if you haven't cooked before. ^A___
- 3 Don't get stressed out if things go wrong; you will learn from it. ^B___ The skill of a good cook is learning how to correct these mistakes.
- 4 Give yourself enough time and always read the recipe through before you start. Cooking in a relaxed environment is much easier. I find that listening to music always helps.
- 5 Look out for good places to shop – butchers' and greengrocers' can often offer better value and taste than supermarkets. They can also give you some great advice for what to do with the cheaper cuts of meat or more unusual vegetables.
- 6 Remember: vegetarian food is cheap and can be just as tasty. Many of the world's finest cuisines use only a little meat and yet are some of most creative and healthiest.
- 7 Put your money together with your housemates to create your kitchen store cupboard – herbs, spices, etc. ^C___ They make a world of difference to the flavour of your meals, so are well worth the investment.
- 8 Great eating starts with wise shopping. If you make a plan before you head to the supermarket, you'll avoid making impulse buys. ^D___ Shop at the end of the day as you will find the reduced section full, which means great bargains. Supermarket own brands can be better and cheaper than named brands. Remember to look for the products with the longest sell-by dates too. You can often find them by checking at the back of the shelves.
- 9 Plan food that will last for more than one meal if you can. ^E___ A curry or a stew can last for days and is often cheap to make. The freezer is your friend!
- 10 Cooking with your friends and housemates is not only a great social event but also lets you split the cost. I'm a student, and every Tuesday night we have a dinner party for ten to fifteen people, with each person paying a few quid. As a result, we have wonderful huge roast dinners and lots and lots of laughs.



4.5 Grammar

Future Continuous and Future Perfect

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read the sentences and write **P** for *in progress* or **C** for *completed*.

- 0 This week he's made breakfast for you three times and dinner twice.
- 1 I'm phoning from my car. I've run out of petrol!
- 2 They've been to the same ski resort seven times.
- 3 Excuse me, we are waiting for our desserts. Are they coming?
- 4 I'd only eaten Indian food once before.

2 ★ Read the sentences and write **P** for *in progress at a certain time in the future* or **C** for *completed before a certain time in the future*.

- 0 The dishwasher will have finished in ten minutes.
- 1 We'll be eating seafood on the beach this time tomorrow.
- 2 While we are eating the main course, the chef will be preparing dessert.
- 3 Go to the shop now or it will have closed by the time you get there.
- 4 They'll be baking bread at 5 a.m.
- 5 Tomorrow morning at this time we'll have arrived in the mountains.

3 ★★ Read the conversations and choose the correct options.

- 1 **Ryan:** Can I call you again tomorrow at seven?
Meg: No way! I *won't be waking up / won't have woken up* by seven.
- 2 **Kelly:** Shall I pick you up in half an hour?
Grace: Yes, I *'ll be waiting / 'll have waited* outside the café.
- 3 **Amelia:** Let's meet outside the school gates at eight.
Jacob: I won't make it. I *'ll be cycling / 'll have cycled* to school at eight.
- 4 **Mum:** Are you at home, Alex?
Alex: No, I'm leaving school now.
Mum: Well, the courier has a package to deliver. *Will you be arriving / Will you have arrived* home by five?
Alex: Yes, the bus stops right outside at half past four.
- 5 **Dad:** I'm coming to listen to you sing at eight, right, Emily?
Emily: Dad, I *won't be singing / won't have sung* at eight. The concert finishes at seven.
- 6 **Ethan:** *Will you be leaving at / Will you have left* by half past nine?
Paige: Oh definitely. I'm tired and I want to be home by eight at the latest.
Ethan: So, I won't see you because I can't be there till half past nine.

4 ★★★ Complete the sentences with the Future Continuous or Future Perfect form of the verbs in bold in the list.

Start dinner @ 11:00

11.00 **put** pork in oven

12.45 **peel** potatoes and carrots

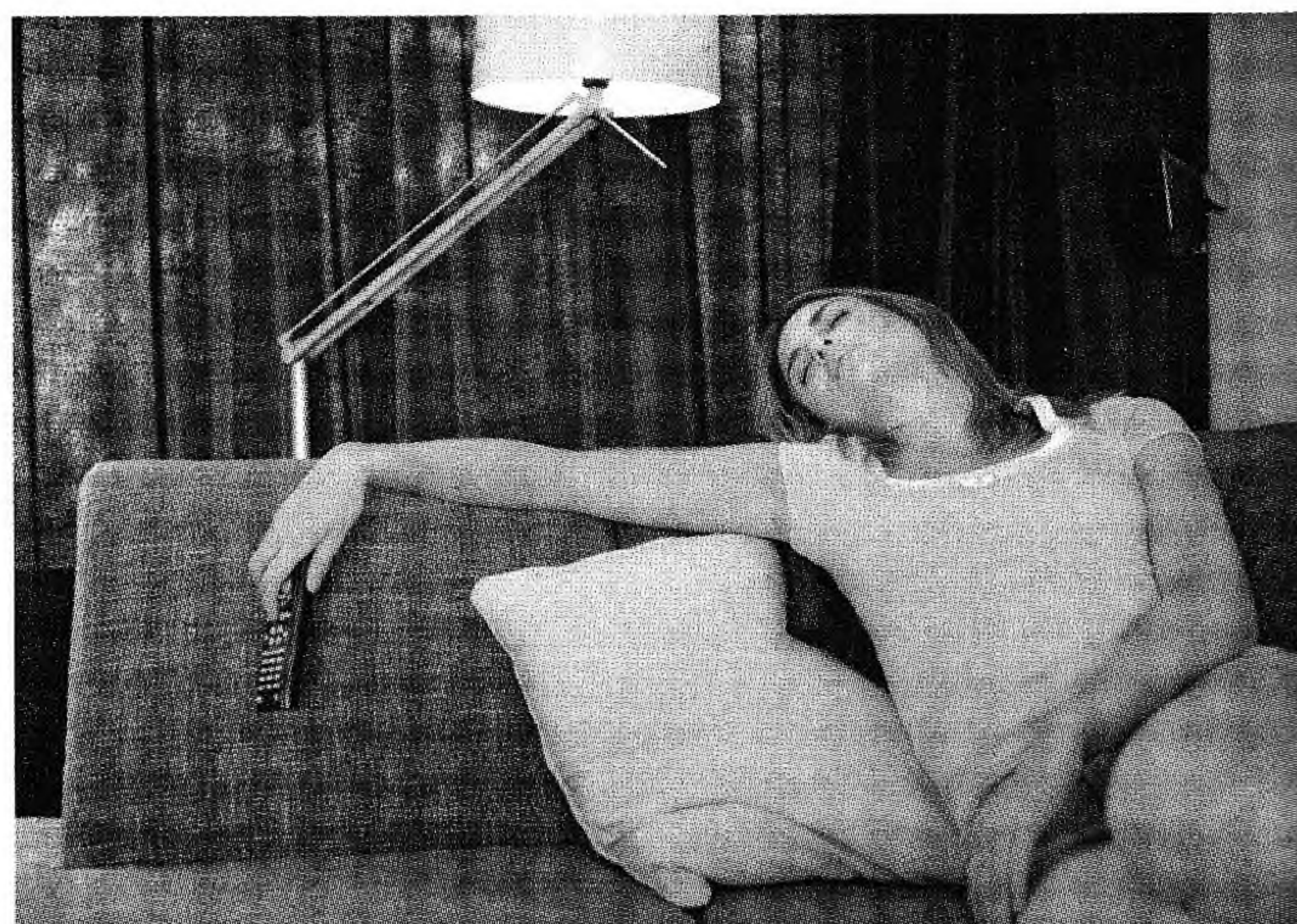
13.00 **wash** Brussels sprouts

13.30 **boil** vegetables

14.00 **serve** dinner

15.00 **sleep** in front of the TV 😊

- 0 By 11.05 we *'ll have put* the pork in the oven.
- 1 At 10.30 we _____ dinner yet.
- 2 We _____ the potatoes and carrots at 12.45.
- 3 By 13.30 we _____ the Brussels sprouts.
- 4 We _____ the vegetables by 13.55.
- 5 We _____ dinner at 14.00.
- 6 At 15.05 we _____ in front of the TV.



SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the sentences with the Future Continuous or Future Perfect form of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms where possible.

- 1 I can't meet you at six tomorrow because I _____ (not finish) my homework.
- 2 Dad _____ (wait) for you outside the school at 4 o'clock. Don't be late!
- 3 _____ (he/finish) that book he's reading by the end of the year?
- 4 Sorry, but by the time you get home, I _____ (eat) all the chocolates!
- 5 _____ (we/sunbathe) next to the pool at this time next week?
- 6 This time next year she _____ (study) law at Cambridge University.

4.6 Speaking language practice

In a restaurant

1 Complete the restaurant phrases with **Can I** or **Do you**. Then write **W** for something the waiter would say or **C** for something the customer would say.

- 0 Could I have the bill, please?
 1 What _____ get for you?
 2 _____ know what the pasta sauce is?
 3 _____ have chips with that?
 4 _____ have any vegetarian dishes?
 5 _____ order, please?
 6 _____ take your order?

C

2 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.

0 you / what / special / know / do / today's / is?
Do you know what today's special is?

1 A: about / fish / what?

B: salmon / is / the / delicious

2 tell / what / can / you / the Chef's Special Lamb / me / is?

3 me / you / the Farmer's Lunch / what / is / tell / could?

4 A: about / the Diavolo Pizza / how?

B: very / spicy / it's

5 know / there / olives / I'd / in / the pasta / like / if / to / are

6 get / can / I / where / the best pizza?

3 Cross out one unnecessary word in six of the questions.

- 0 I'd like to know what seafood ~~do~~ you have.
 1 Do you know what time does the restaurant closes?
 2 I'd like to see the dessert menu, please.
 3 Can you tell me how long it will it take to prepare the duck?
 4 Could you tell me what is the vegetarian special is?
 5 I'd like to know if do you have a table for two at 8 o'clock this evening.
 6 Can you tell me what soups do you have?
 7 Could you tell me where the gentlemen's toilets are?
 8 Do you know if is the chicken curry is very spicy?

4 Complete the words in the conversation. The first letter of each word is given.

- A: Excuse me, waiter. ⁰Can I order, please?
 B: Good evening, sir. Certainly, what can I get for you?
 A: ¹C_____ y_____ t_____ m_____ w_____ t_____ special i_____?
 B: Yes, sir. This evening's special is roast beef.
 A: Oh no! I don't eat red meat. I'll have chips, please. But ²c_____ I h_____ them cold?
 B: Cold chips? Er, well, certainly, sir. A large portion?
 A: Yes, that ³s_____ g_____. Large, please.
 B: Perhaps you'd like some vegetables with your chips?
 A: I'm ⁴s_____, but I'm a_____ to vegetables. They make me cough.
 B: Cough? Of course, sir. Is that everything?
 A: ⁵D_____ y_____ h_____ a_____ fruit salad?
 B: Er, I'll check with the chef. So, that's cold chips, followed by fruit salad for dessert.
 A: No, fruit salad with the chips, please.
 B: With the ...? Er, whatever you want, sir. And to drink?
 A: Just tap water, please. But I'll have it warm.
 B: Warm? Well, er, of course, sir.
 A: And ⁶c_____ I s_____ the dessert menu, please?
 B: Certainly, sir. Perhaps you'd like some hot ice cream with sardines?
 A: Don't be ridiculous! What kind of restaurant is this?
 B: Sorry, sir. It's just that your order is rather ... unusual.
 A: Well, I know what I like and I like what I know and you, young man, will definitely not be getting a tip!



4.7 Writing

A semi-formal email

1 Complete the tips for writing a semi-formal email with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

clarification indirect informal polite politely
reason refer reply responding why write

- 1 Start the email politely.
- 2 Don't use abbreviations, _____ phrases or contractions.
- 3 In the first paragraph, _____ to the letter/email/advert you are _____ to (if appropriate).
- 4 Also in the first paragraph, say _____ you are writing.
- 5 In the main body, use _____ expressions (e.g. _____ questions) to ask for information.
- 6 If something is unclear, ask for _____.
- 7 In the final paragraph, mention that you would like a _____.

2 Match 1–6 with a–g to make phrases. Then match the phrases with the tips in Exercise 1.

- | | | |
|------------------------------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 0 Dear Sir/ | a questions I would like to ask. | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 Could you clarify how much | b in the local newspaper. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 There are several | c some information about your offer. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 I look forward to | d discount you offer to groups? | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 I am writing to ask for | e receiving your reply soon. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 I saw your advert | f which activities the centre offers. | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6 I would like to know | g Madam, | <input type="checkbox"/> |

3 Complete the words in the email. The first letter of each word is given.

Dear Mr Mckinney,

¹T_____ y_____ f_____ y_____ email r_____ the training courses offered by your organisation. I ²a_____ w_____ to e_____ a_____ the Level 1 course in food hygiene.

First of all, ³c_____ I a_____ a_____ the possibility of studying this course part-time rather than full-time? I am still at school and so can only study in the evenings or at weekends. If a part-time course is available, ⁴c_____ y_____ c_____ w_____ the price is the same as for a full-time course? I ⁵w_____ a_____ I _____ to a_____ i_____ your organisation runs this course during the summer holidays. This would be an ideal option for students such as myself.

I ⁶l_____ f_____ to r_____ y_____ r_____ soon.

Yours sincerely,
Oliver Thornber

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 You recently received an email from your English friend Kelly. Read part of her email and the advert below and write your email to the centre.

I know you're looking for somewhere to have your birthday. I saw this advert and thought you might be interested. Why don't you write to them, tell them about your birthday and ask for some more information? Could be good!

Love,
Kelly

Are you looking for an original birthday party idea?

Do you love the great outdoors?

Are you a big fan of BBQ food?



Why not have your birthday party at High Grange Outdoor Activity Centre? We can offer a fun-filled day of outdoor activities, followed by a fantastic BBQ dinner in our gorgeous garden. We offer big discounts for large groups. Email us now for more information at H_G_O_A_C@mail.com.

Write your email in 140–190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my semi-formal email:

- I have started with an appropriate polite greeting.
- I have mentioned the letter/email/advert I received or saw in the first paragraph.
- I have given a reason for writing.
- I have politely asked for information and clarification (e.g. with indirect questions).
- I have made it clear that I would like the person to reply to my email in the final paragraph.
- I have ended with an appropriate phrase (*Yours faithfully/sincerely*).
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.

4.8 Use of English

Word formation

1 For questions 1–9, read the article below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.

Superfoods

In recent years we have seen the appearance of 'superfoods' in the media. These are foods that are supposed to be especially ⁰healthy, for example, garlic, blueberries and broccoli. But is there any ¹_____ evidence that they are as good for us as many people say? Let's take a look at the opinion of leading ²_____, Dr Edward Collins.

'Superfoods are definitely good for us. But many people often ³_____ the term and think that eating just these foods will prevent diseases or make them live longer. This is not true, of course. Everyone needs a ⁴_____ diet, not just to eat three or four things. This is especially true for ⁵_____, whose diet is already restricted because they don't eat meat. So the message is to eat a ⁶_____ of foods, including, but not limited to, superfoods.

Also, if you're suddenly going to eat a lot of a certain type of food, check you're not ⁷_____ to it first – even superfoods are not good for everyone! The usual rules of sensible eating apply to superfoods too. Don't eat a lot of tinned or ⁸_____ products – fresh food is always better. And try and eat something at each meal that's good for you but that is also ⁹_____ so that you don't snack between meals.'

- HEALTH
- SCIENCE
- NUTRITION
- UNDERSTAND
- BALANCE
- VEGETABLE
- MIX
- ALLERGY
- FREEZE
- FILL

TIPS:

- Question 1: You need an adjective here.
- Question 2: What is Dr Collins' job title?
- Question 3: Read this sentence and the next one to get the full meaning.

Key word transformations

2 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example.

0 Breakfast, lunch and dinner are all equally important.

AS

Breakfast is just as important as lunch and dinner.

1 Paulo wasn't hungry, so he didn't have any dinner.

WENT

Paulo _____ he wasn't hungry.

2 When you've finished your peas, you can have cake.

UNTIL

You _____ you've finished your peas.

3 We can listen to a live band playing during the meal tonight.

WILL

A live band _____ we are eating our meal tonight.

4 What clothes do I need to wear to work as a waiter?

TELL

Can _____ clothes I need to wear to work as a waiter?

5 Jack's going to finish the cookery course before he goes back to school.

HAVE

The cookery course _____ by the time Jack goes back to school.

6 If people eat a balanced diet, they usually get enough vitamins.

AS

People usually get enough vitamins _____ a balanced diet.

TIPS:

- Question 1: You need a phrasal verb which means 'not have something'.
- Question 2: You need to make a verb negative to keep the same meaning.
- Question 3: Which future form do you need here?

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
4.1	Vocabulary	I can describe food that I like and don't like.					Students' Book pages 48–49 Word Store page 9 Workbook pages 44–45
4.2	Grammar	I can use future time clauses to talk about future plans, predictions and conditions.					Students' Book page 50 Workbook page 46
4.3	Listening	I can understand the main points of a short monologue.					Students' Book page 51 Workbook page 47
4.4	Reading	I can understand the main points of an article.					Students' Book pages 52–53 Workbook pages 48–49
4.5	Grammar	I can talk about future actions and when they will happen.					Students' Book page 54 Workbook page 50
4.6	Speaking	I can order food in a restaurant and ask for information politely.					Students' Book page 55 Workbook page 51
4.7	Writing	I can write a semi-formal email.					Students' Book pages 56–57 Workbook page 52

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

4.10 Self-check

1 Complete the sentences with the opposites of the words in brackets. The last letter of each word is given.

- 0 Make sure you choose a ripe (unripe) mango. They aren't good if they're not ready.
- 1 Eugh! I just drank a big mouthful of _____ **r** (fresh) milk. I think I'm going to be sick!
- 2 A _____ **d** (monotonous) diet can include some sweet or greasy food, just not too much.
- 3 Bring that _____ **e** (fresh) bread with us to the park. We'll feed the ducks.
- 4 This salad dressing is a bit too _____ **y** (tasteless). Let's add some more honey and lime juice.
- 5 I'm afraid I overcooked the pork and now it's rather _____ **y** (juicy). Sorry everyone.

/5

2 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

away chop food healthy
mild smelly snack without

- 0 The best way to stay fit is to do plenty of exercise and have a healthy diet.
- 1 Don't have a big meal if you're not hungry. Have a light _____ instead.
- 2 Will you _____ up some peppers and some carrots so we can dip them in this hummus?
- 3 For me, the hardest part of being on a diet is going _____ chocolate.
- 4 Mum won't let me take egg sandwiches to school. She says they are too _____.
- 5 The problem with the school snack shop is that they don't sell any fresh _____. It's just crisps, chocolate and nuts.

/5

3 Complete the words in the sentences. The first two letters of each word are given.

- 0 I've bought some lovely ripe oranges and I'm going to make some fresh juice. Would you like a glass?
- 1 I can't stand pr _____. They are like insects that live in the sea – all those legs and those horrible black eyes! How can you eat them?
- 2 English breakfast is very gr _____ if you fry everything. I prefer to grill the bacon and have scrambled eggs. It's much healthier that way.
- 3 Choose the lettuce carefully. I want a fresh, cr _____ green salad with no brown bits or soft lettuce leaves.
- 4 Our Atlantic Pizza is made with crab meat and tuna, and is ideal for lovers of se _____.
- 5 The only types of sh _____ I like are langoustines and crab. I can't stand oysters.

/5

4 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 0 I know you're hungry. I promise we'll go for a burger _____ we get into town, OK?
A as soon as B until C unless
- 1 Candidates must not leave the exam room _____ the teacher gives them permission.
A when B if C unless
- 2 I'll switch the washing machine on _____ Kate has had a shower.
A as long as B when C unless
- 3 _____ you ask someone what to do, you'll never know.
A If B Unless C After
- 4 Miko can go to the party _____ she's home by midnight.
A before B as soon as C as long as
- 5 Tim will write the Christmas cards _____ you find out everyone's address.
A if B until C unless

/5

5 Complete the sentences with the Future Simple, Future Perfect Simple or Future Continuous form of the verbs in brackets.

- 0 Tomorrow at this time we will be sitting (sit) in the exam hall.
- 1 We predict the price of computer games _____ (go down) by the end of the year.
- 2 One day I think you _____ (like) strong flavours such as blue cheese. Your tastes change as you get older.
- 3 Tomorrow Uncle Mark _____ (go without) cigarettes for four years.
- 4 Mum _____ (not work) this Saturday morning, so we are going shopping together.
- 5 _____ (you/finish) that book by the time we go on holiday? I'd like to read it while we're away.

/5

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

We're going on holiday tomorrow, so we need to sort the fridge out. Actually, this milk is already ⁰ _____, so we can throw it ¹ _____. This cabbage will ² _____ bad by the time we get back and we're probably not going to eat the rest of this ham ³ _____ we have it for breakfast tomorrow. The chicken should be OK, ⁴ _____ we freeze it today, but that cheese your grandma gave us already ⁵ _____ a bit strange. I think it will have to go too. What a waste of food!

- 0 A rotten B sour C stale
- 1 A up B off C away
- 2 A have gone B be going C go
- 3 A unless B until C if
- 4 A when B as long as C as soon as
- 5 A smelly B smells C is smelling

/5

Total /30

5.1 Vocabulary

Natural world • Verb collocations

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the forum posts with words for geographical features.

survivalschool.net

Location, location, location

Do you go to school in an unusual place or make an unusual journey to get there? If so, tell us about it below.

Julia_D\$ I go to an international school on the other side of Tokyo. Tokyo is a huge ⁰city and I have to catch a train, then the underground, then a bus to get to school. It takes nearly two hours and I hate it. ☹

Sonia_16 My family lives on a very small ¹_____, so I get a boat every day to get to school. I can't be late because there's only one boat in the morning.

Bret@home Australia is a huge ²_____ and my parents own a farm hundreds of kilometres from the nearest big town. There's no secondary school in our little community, so I have all my lessons online.

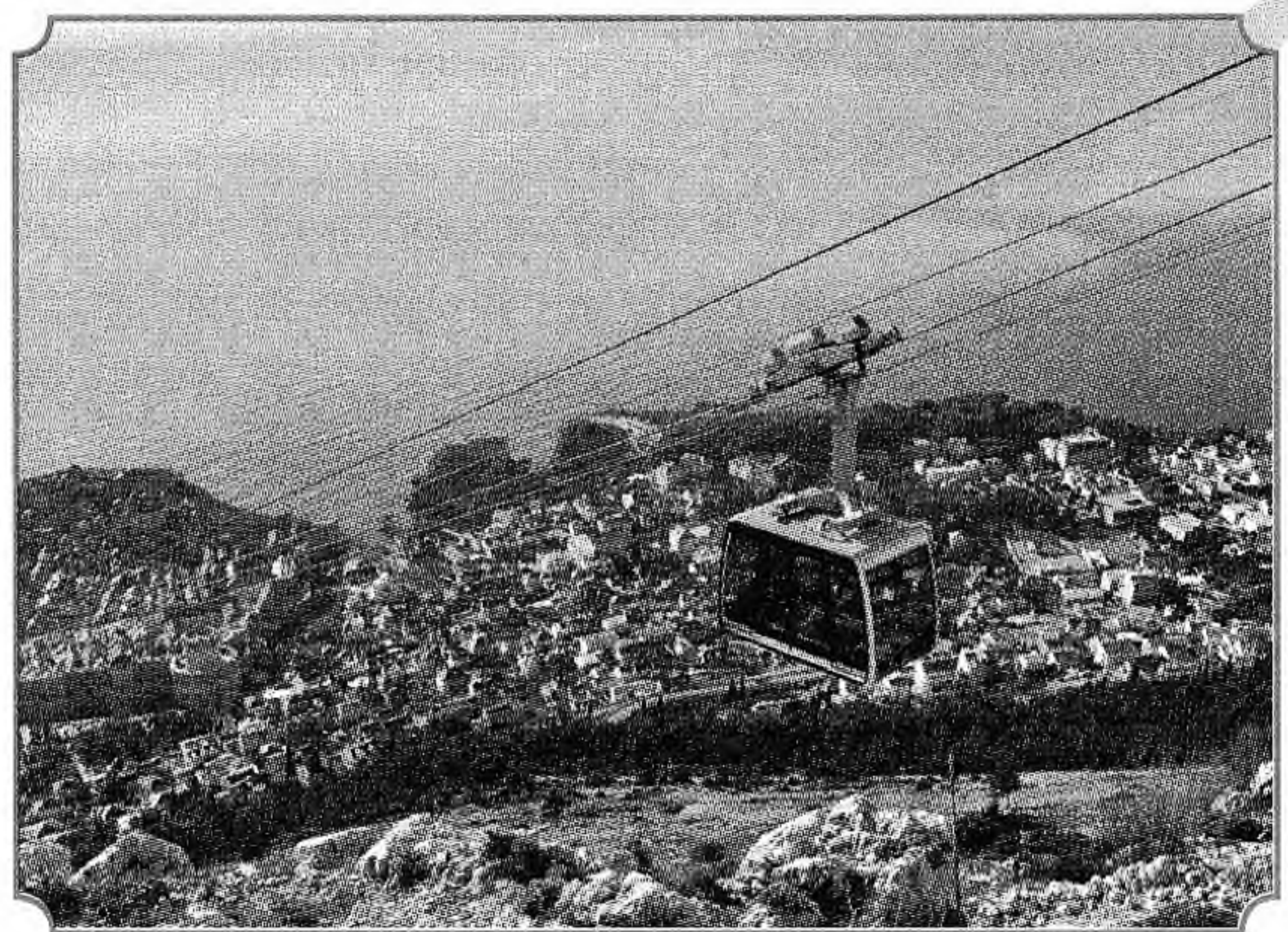
pinky I go to school near Cape Town in South Africa and about 20km from my school is the point where two ³_____ meet – the Atlantic and the Indian. I think our school has the most beautiful location in the world.

8ball_16 I go to school in Istanbul, which is famous for being the only city in the world where two ⁴_____ meet. My school is in Asia, but when I look out of the window, I can see Europe.

hellokaty_14 Everyone has heard of the famous ⁵_____ in our city, but most people don't know that the city is also called Niagara Falls. In fact, my school is called Niagara Falls High School!

Kid_16 My family lives in Dubai, very close to the ⁶_____. It hardly ever rains, but we regularly have storms – sand storms! When that happens we have to stay indoors, so it's impossible to get to school.

Yoda_347 My parents own a restaurant high in the ⁷_____ and I have to get a cable car down to the town to get to school every day. Sometimes, if it's really windy, I just have to stay at home ;)



WORD STORE 5A

Geographical features

2 Complete the extracts from travel guides with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

bank bay coast dam foothill
glacier peninsula river sea valley

Fishing fans can find a quiet spot to enjoy their hobby on the beautiful ⁰banks of the River Mure.

New Zealand's ¹_____ are an absolute must for any visitor, but you need good boots and an ice axe to climb them.

For walkers who don't wish to climb to the highest peaks of the Himalayas, the lower ²_____ are an ideal destination.

The Isle of Harris off Scotland's west ³_____ has wonderful sandy beaches.

The Peak District in the north of England has several large man-made ⁴_____ which help to control the water supply to nearby towns and villages.

Down in the ⁵_____ between the hills, is the beautiful village of Grindelford.

A walk along the ⁶_____ provides wonderful views of the ocean on three sides.

The water in the ⁷_____ is colder than the river, but warmer than the sea.

REMEMBER BETTER

To help you remember these and other geographical features, think of examples you know from your country or from other countries you have visited and write them next to the words, e.g. the Baltic Sea.

WORD STORE 5B

Verb collocations

3 Choose the correct options.

- On our second day in Barcelona we caught the cable car to the top of Montjuic, the hill that *strikes* / *overlooks* the city.
- The River Thames *flows* / *floods* through the south of England and the heart of London.
- Scientists warn that a huge earthquake may *strike* / *erupt* soon in British Columbia, Canada.
- In 1997 the River Odra *flooded* / *burst* Wrocław in Poland and left around one-third of the city centre underwater.
- When the Indonesian volcano Krakatoa *burst* / *erupted* in 1883, it made the loudest sound ever in history.
- When the Amazon River *bursts* / *floods* its banks, the floods are truly enormous.

WORD STORE 5C

Word families

4 Complete the table.

Noun	Verb
0 <u>destruction</u>	destroy
1 _____	evacuate
2 _____	locate
3 _____	predict
4 _____	produce
5 _____	reduce

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of words from Exercise 4.

- The town was completely destroyed by a huge earthquake in 1765.
 - Nothing good comes from war. Only death and destruction.
- We have a big _____ on the price of shoes in our winter sale.
 - Don't miss our one-day sale. Everything will be _____ by fifty percent.
- In case of a fire, _____ the building using the emergency exits.
 - The _____ of the area around the volcano is now complete.
- My new school is _____ on the banks of a beautiful river.
 - The new sports centre has excellent facilities, but the _____ is terrible. It's miles away!
- _____ of Coolfresh bottled water is moving from France to Poland.
 - We _____ four different models of ski jackets. They cost from €100 to €425.
- It's impossible to _____ exactly where and when lightning will strike.
 - Most mobile phones have text _____. It's the function that guesses what word you are going to type next, to make it easier to write messages quickly.



SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

6 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- Protesters say that building a new ___ will destroy an area of unique natural beauty.
A sea B peninsula C dam
- We aren't staying up on the mountain. We're in a hostel down in the bottom of the _____.
A bank B valley C bay
- Kim loves living on the ___ because she likes the beach.
A coast B foothills C glacier
- We're very lucky because our flat ___ the local park.
A floods B destroys C overlooks
- After heavy rain, the water in the river ___ very quickly.
A flows B strikes C erupts
- The ___ of rainforests leads to the loss of many species of plants and animals.
A destruction B evacuation C location
- Scientists are working on a new way to ___ when typhoons could strike.
A produce B predict C reduce
- Think carefully about ___ before you choose a student house. It's best to be close to the university.
A reduction B location C prediction
- The ___ of children from London during the Second World War took many months.
A destruction B reduction C evacuation
- Scientists say that the ___ in the size of the ice sheet over Antarctica is because of climate change.
A reduction B production C location

/10

5.2 Grammar

Articles: no article, a/an or the

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read the text and choose the correct options.

Visit Poland: Polish weather

Some people say ¹∅ / *the* Polish people love talking about ²a / *the* weather. This is no surprise because Poland is ³a / *an* relatively small country, but it has ⁴a / *an* interesting and very diverse climate. For example, when ⁵the / *a* sun is shining in Silesia, in March, ⁶the / ∅ lakes of Suwałki, are often still covered with ⁷an / ∅ ice. On average, Suwałki is ⁸the / *a* coldest place in Poland, where ⁹the / *a* local people cope with winter temperatures of minus twenty to minus thirty degrees. So if you meet a Polish person in ¹⁰a / *the* lift somewhere and ¹¹a / *the* lift gets stuck, now you can say something about Polish weather!

2 ★ Cross out *the* where it's not necessary. One sentence is correct.

- 0 The government should spend more on *the* education and less on *the* defence.
- 1 Has Emilia visited *the* Netherlands and *the* Germany?
- 2 In January 2013 only around thirty-nine percent of people in *the* United States owned *the* passports.
- 3 *The* population of *the* Estonia is about 1.3 million.
- 4 *The* citizens of Germany chose *a* female Prime Minister, and naturally *the* Prime Minister has promised to do more for *the* women of *her* country.
- 5 *The* biggest city in *the* China is *the* Shanghai. Around 16 million people live *there*.
- 6 *The* pollution is generally *a* problem in big cities, but *the* pollution in *this* city is worse than in most others.

3 ★★ Complete the protest signs with a/an, the or ∅.

End ⁰∅ racism **now!**

You never know when you might need ¹___ nurse. **More pay for nurses!**

Say **NO** to ²___ terrorism!

There is an answer to war. ³___ answer is peace.

⁴___ Amazon rainforest belongs to everyone.

Graffiti is ⁵___ crime. Keep our city clean.

Save ⁶___ planet.

⁷___ TOKYO WANTS THE OLYMPIC GAMES!

4 ★★★ Complete the telephone conversation with a/an, the or ∅.

- A: Hi, Kevin.
 B: Anna! It's you ... I mean, hi. It's good to hear from you.
 A: Yeah? Are you sure?
 B: Of course, sorry. I was busy with something ...
 A: I see. Well, how's life in ⁰∅ London?
 B: Oh pretty good, thanks. It's great studying in ¹___ capital city.
 A: Are you enjoying the course?
 B: Yes. There's a long way to go, but I'm still hoping to be ²___ big, successful lawyer one day.
 A: Ha! Well, I'm sure you'll be ³___ best. You're very dedicated, after all.
 B: Well, er ... thanks. I've moved into ⁴___ new flat, actually.
 A: Oh cool. What's it like?
 B: Well, ⁵___ flat is quite small, but I've got my own.
 A: Great! Does that mean I can come and visit?
 B: Er ... well ... there's a bit of ⁶___ problem, actually. I've kind of met someone and I'm not sure she'd understand if you ...
 A: But Kevin, we broke up. We're not boyfriend and girlfriend anymore, right?
 B: Right, right. I know, but ...
 A: So we can't even be ⁷___ friends now?
 B: Well, we can, but I ... well, it's difficult, Anna. I don't know what to say.
 A: Well, thanks very much, Kevin.
 B: Anna, I'm sorry ... Anna? Anna, are you there?

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

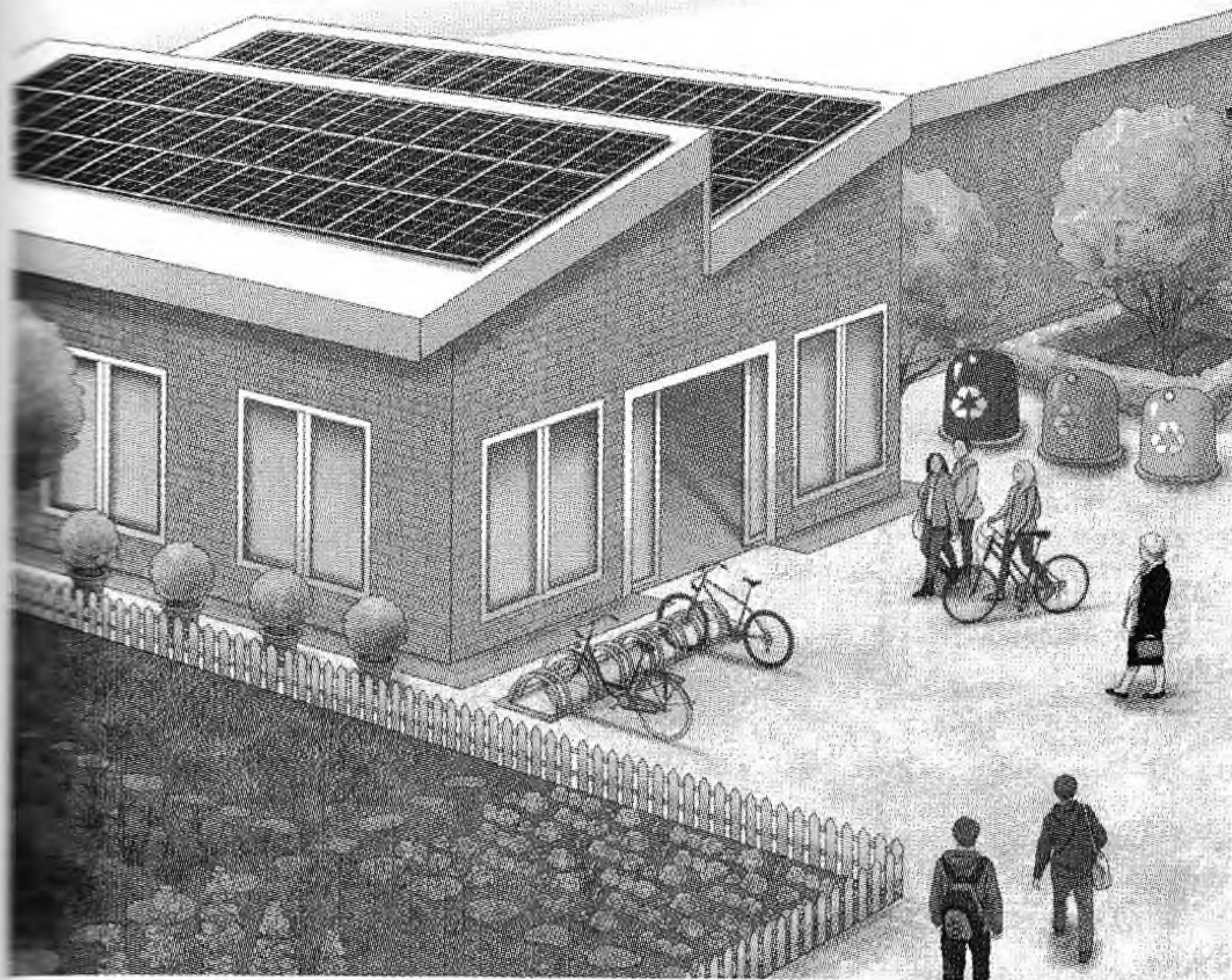
5 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- 0 We try to provide a food and water for the poorest families. *∅ food and water*
- 1 For me, Paris is a very special city. It's a city where I was born. _____
- 2 I'd like to become the journalist and report on our country's problems. _____
- 3 An economic development is positive, but not if it destroys the environment. _____
- 4 Pencils will not be allowed in the exam. Please bring the pen. _____
- 5 Hill that overlooks Barcelona is the best place to view the city. _____
- 6 Is this an only place to eat around here? _____

5.3 Listening language practice

An eco-school • Collocations • Compound nouns

- 1 Read the extract from an interview with a student about a project for an eco-school. Choose the correct options to complete the collocations in bold. Then listen and check.



Extract from Students' Book recording CD•2.37 MP3•80

- A: First of all, we have solar panels on the roof of the school. [...]
- B: And will they ¹use / provide / have **power** for the whole school?
- A: Yes, that's the idea. It will ²pay / cost / **save a lot of money on electricity**. [...]
Our eco-school will ³eat / grow / cook **vegetables** and we'll use them for school dinners. [...] We'll also have chickens, rabbits and ducks.
- B: And will they go into the school dinners too?
- A: Ha, ha, no! That would be terrible. They'll be pets and they'll be useful. They'll ⁴throw away / use / eat **the leftovers** from the kitchen and the chickens will ⁵provide / eat / collect **eggs**.
- B: Very good. So what other plans do you have to make the school more environmentally friendly?
- A: We'll ⁶use / buy / make **low-energy light bulbs** in all the classrooms. We'll also ⁷clean / have / empty **recycling bins** in every classroom and in the school grounds.
- B: And what about your lessons – will they be different from non-eco-schools?
- A: Most of our lessons will be similar to lessons in any secondary school. But in our Science lessons we'll ⁸focus / think / learn more **on environmental issues** like climate change and global warming. Then, in our Technology lessons we'll ⁹consider / learn / study **about things like** renewable energy and even how to make solar panels.
- B: I see. Well, we've almost run out of time. Thank you for talking to us about your project. It's very nice to meet a teenager who is so ¹⁰confused / concerned / nervous **about the environment**. [...]

REMEMBER THIS

When completing collocations in exam tasks, look out for prepositions that can give you clues to the correct answers. Ask yourself which verbs go with which prepositions.

consider ~~about~~ things X

study ~~about~~ things X

learn about things ✓

- 2 Complete the sentences with collocations from Exercise 1. Change the verb forms if necessary.

- 0 If you turn down the heating at home, you'll use less energy and save a lot of money on electricity.
- 1 If Peter can't finish all the food on his plate, his dad always _____.
- 2 The wind farm currently _____ for local houses.
- 3 The school now _____ outside the main building, so please separate your rubbish.
- 4 If you are really _____, why don't you sell that big car and buy something greener?
- 5 To save energy, the council will make sure all the street lights in the city _____.
- 6 Jeremy and Pat _____, herbs and fruit in their garden.
- 7 Vote for the Green Party. We promise to _____, not on defence and industry.
- 8 At the moment in Maths, we _____ Algebra.
- 9 A local farm _____ all the eggs used in this restaurant.

WORD STORE 5E

Compound nouns – the environment

- 3 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 There are recycling ___ in our apartment block, but some people still don't separate plastic and paper.
A bins B panels C issues
- 2 Despite all the evidence, there are still people who don't believe that climate ___ is real.
A warming B recycling C change
- 3 This backpack has small solar ___ on it and you can actually use it to charge your phone.
A panels B climates C light bulbs
- 4 Global ___ is causing the ice caps in both the Arctic and the Antarctic to melt.
A environment B warming C change
- 5 Renewable ___ is the future. We can't continue burning fossil fuels forever.
A energy B recycling C low-energy
- 6 The developing world is facing serious ___ issues such as air pollution and water contamination.
A climate B change C environmental
- 7 The Energy Minister is in trouble after newspapers reported that she does not use low-energy ___ in her own home.
A bins B light bulbs C panels

5.4 Reading

A very bright idea • Adjective-noun collocations

Glossary

attempt (n, v) = try

angle (n, v) = the space between two straight lines that join each other; you measure it in degrees, e.g. 30, 45, 90

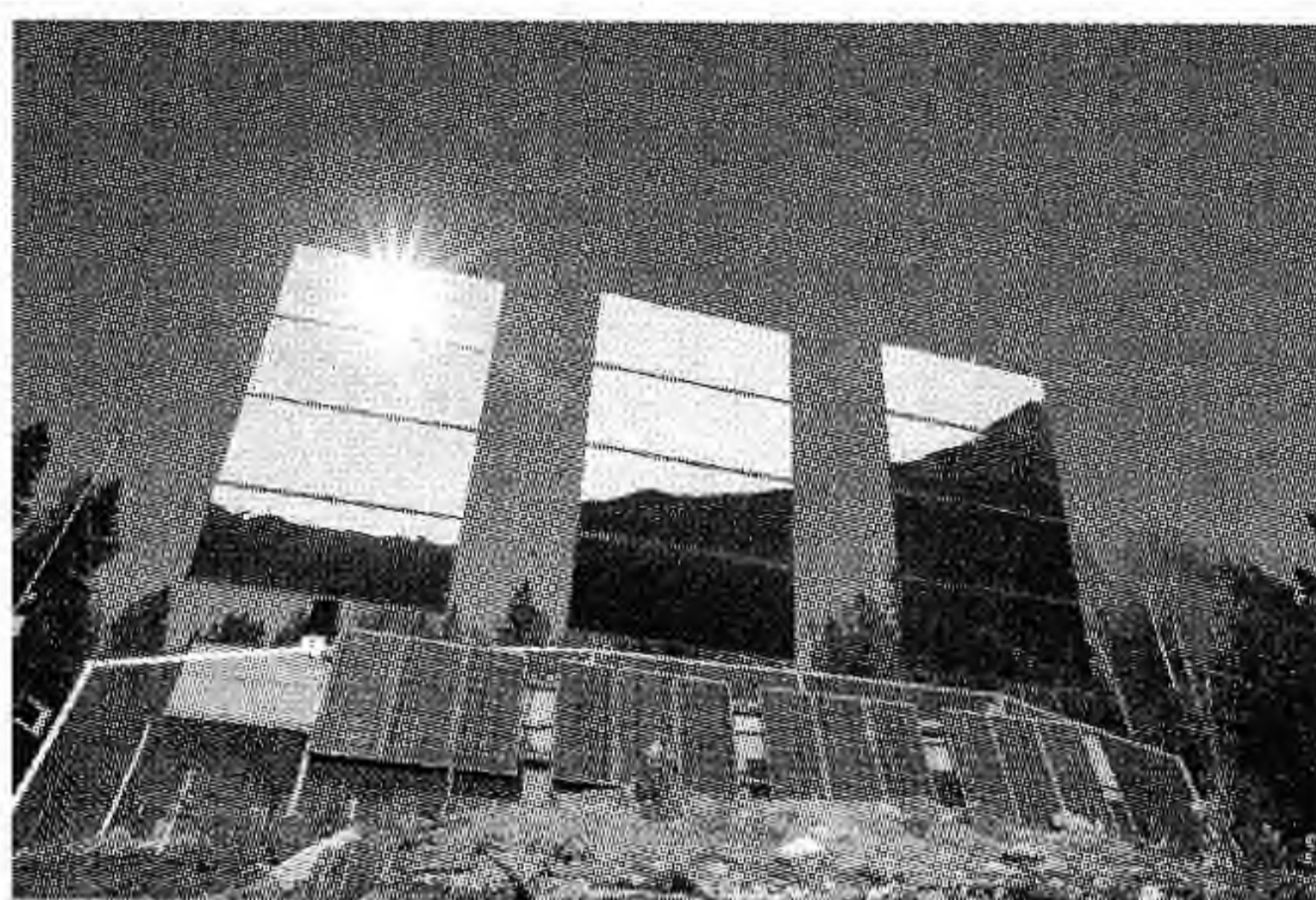
ray (n) = a straight, narrow line of light, e.g. from the sun, the moon or a laser

shade (n) = slight darkness or protection from the sun made by something blocking it, e.g. an umbrella

top up (v) = to increase the level of something and make it full again, e.g. your mobile phone credit

residents (n) = the people who live in a particular place or building

A very bright idea



The sun makes life on Earth possible. Almost all plants and animals rely on its warmth and heat to stay alive. For us humans, it also provides many simple pleasures such as long summer evenings, bright winter days and the feeling of warm sunlight on our faces. Imagine the frustration of living somewhere where, even when the sun is shining, people can't feel its heat or appreciate its light. ¹___

For six months of the year, Rjukan, a town of 3,500 people located 100 miles west of Oslo, is cut off from direct sunlight by the steep forested hills that surround it. ²___ Of course, many Scandinavian towns and cities suffer from freezing cold temperatures in the winter months, but Rjukan's residents have had to cope with a complete lack of sunlight as well. In an early attempt to find a solution to this problem, a cable car was built in 1928, which allowed the town's citizens to ride to the top of the hill and top up their vitamin D.

These days however, the people of Rjukan can stand in their central square and enjoy the warmth and the light of the winter sun. How is this possible? What has changed? Well, the answer might seem like something from a science-fiction story, but in fact, it is reality. Authorities have placed three giant mirrors on top of the hills surrounding the town to reflect light down into the valley. ³___ As a result of this investment and of the unusual flights, the town now benefits from a 600-square-metre area of light which brightens the central square. 'We think it will mean more activities in town, especially in autumn and wintertime,' said Karin Roe, head of the town's tourist office. 'People will be out more.'

The mirrors are controlled by a computer to follow the sun and adjust to the best angle to catch the rays and reflect them onto the centre of the town. ⁴___ However, it was only made possible with modern technology. Solar panels power equipment to automatically wash the mirrors and move them into position.

Steinar Bergsland, the town's mayor, said, 'It is really special to stand in the light down on the square and feel the heat. This is for the pale little children of Rjukan.' A message on the Rjukan tourist website states, 'The square will become a sunny meeting place in a town which is otherwise in the shade.'

⁵___ A similar project was completed in Italy in 2006, when the residents of Viganella installed mirrors on the hills above their village to take advantage of the sunlight that shone there.



1 Read the article quickly and choose the newspaper section that you think it would not appear in.

- 1 Environment news
- 2 Technology news
- 3 Tourism news
- 4 Winter sports news
- 5 Scandinavian news

2 Read the article again and choose from the sentences (A–F) the one which fits each gap (1–5). There is one extra sentence.

- A The huge mirrors were carried there by helicopters, as part of a project which cost 5 million kroner (£500,000).
- B This happens because between September and March, the sun is so low in the sky that its light and warmth don't reach the small town in the bottom of the valley.
- C Environmentalists disapprove of the project, however.
- D The town of Rjukan, in Norway, is just such a place.
- E In fact, Rjukan is not the only place to benefit from this kind of scheme.
- F The idea was first suggested 100 years ago by Sam Eyde, who was responsible for building the town of Rjukan.

3 Read the article again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 Many Scandinavian towns suffer from a complete lack of sunlight.
- 2 The mirrors project is not the first attempt to solve the problem in Rjukan.
- 3 The idea for the mirrors project came from a science fiction story.
- 4 Mirrors have been placed in the town square to reflect the sunlights.
- 5 The movement of the mirrors is powered by the sun.
- 6 This is the first time anyone has successfully completed such a project.

4 Match 1–5 with a–e to make extracts from the article.

- 0 ... many Scandinavian towns **suffer**
 - 1 The mirrors (...) **adjust**
 - 2 They installed mirrors (...) to **take advantage**
 - 3 ... the town now **benefits**
 - 4 Sam Eyde (...) was **responsible**
 - 5 ... residents had to **cope**
- a **of** the sunlight that shone there.
 - b **from** a 600-square-metre area of light ...
 - c **with** a complete lack of sunlight ...
 - d **for** building the town of Rjukan.
 - e **to** the best angle to catch the rays ...
 - f **from** freezing cold temperatures in the winter ...

5 Complete the sentences with the words in bold in Exercise 4. Change the verb forms if necessary.

- 0 The air pollution in this city means that many residents suffer from serious allergies.
- 1 People in this region have learned to _____ the destructive effects of tropical storms.
- 2 Every person on the planet is _____ reducing global warming. We all need to change our behaviour.
- 3 It may take some time to _____ life in the countryside after living in the city for so many years.
- 4 We invite hotel guests to _____ our free airport bus service.
- 5 The only people who _____ illegal logging are the loggers themselves.

REMEMBER BETTER

After some verbs and adjectives, we put a particular preposition before the object. Make two-sided memory cards to help you remember the correct combinations. Start by making cards like the one below for the combinations in Exercise 4. You can use this technique to learn new verbs and adjectives with prepositions found in a dictionary or online.

My sister always
suffers _____
colds in winter.

from

WORD STORE 5F

Adjective-noun collocations

6 Complete the text with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

[endangered environmental dense global
interactive local outside renewable]

Survival – the global movement for tribal people's rights

Imagine what it would be like to be a member of a tribe that lives in the middle of a ⁰dense rainforest.



Research suggests that in countries such as Brazil, there are still some forest tribes that have little or no idea that the ¹ _____ community exists at all. It is likely that the members of these tribes have never left their ² _____ communities and know nothing of the ³ _____ world. However, they almost certainly know every square-metre of the forests around the area in which they live. They don't need ⁴ _____ maps or GPS to find their way around. As more and more forests are cut down, it is not only ⁵ _____ species of plants and animals that we need to be concerned about, but also the people who call the forest their home. If you would like to know more, visit

www.survivalinternational.org.

5.5 Grammar

Non-defining relative clauses

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box and relative pronouns. There are two extra words.

bangle east court embassy
opponent ostrich pitch tour leader

- 0 The coast is a place where the sea meets the land.
- 1 A(n) _____ is a large flightless bird _____ lives in Africa.
- 2 A(n) _____ is a person _____ travels with and looks after a group of tourists.
- 3 A(n) _____ is a place _____ cricket, football, rugby and hockey are played.
- 4 A(n) _____ is jewellery _____ is worn round the wrist.
- 5 A(n) _____ is a place _____ an ambassador works.

2 ★ Read the text and choose the correct options.

sparebrain – your online encyclopedia

Tōhoku earthquake and tsunami

The 2011 tsunami in Japan, ¹*which / that* hit the Tōhoku region on Pacific coast, was caused by a huge undersea earthquake. The earthquake, ²*what / which* was the most powerful ever to hit Japan, created waves of up to 40.5 metres high and killed over 15,000 people. In Sendai, ³*which / where* is the largest city in the region, the waves travelled up to 10km inland. In Fukushima, ⁴*where / whose* Fukushima Daiichi Nuclear Power Plant is located, there was a major nuclear disaster. Naoto Kan, ⁵*who / whose* was the Prime Minister at the time, said, 'In the sixty-five years after World War II, this is the toughest crisis for Japan.' The World Bank, ⁶*who / whose* goal is to increase development and reduce global poverty, said that cleaning up and rebuilding after the tsunami would cost more than after any other natural disaster in world history.

3 ★★ Write sentences with non-defining relative clauses. Use the correct form of *be*.

- 0 Australia / sixth largest country in the world / home to a relatively small population
Australia, which is the sixth largest country in the world, is home to a relatively small population.
- 1 Sydney / the famous opera house can be found / not actually the capital of Australia

- 2 Australian actress Nicole Kidman / films include *Moulin Rouge* and *The Others* / actually born in Hawaii

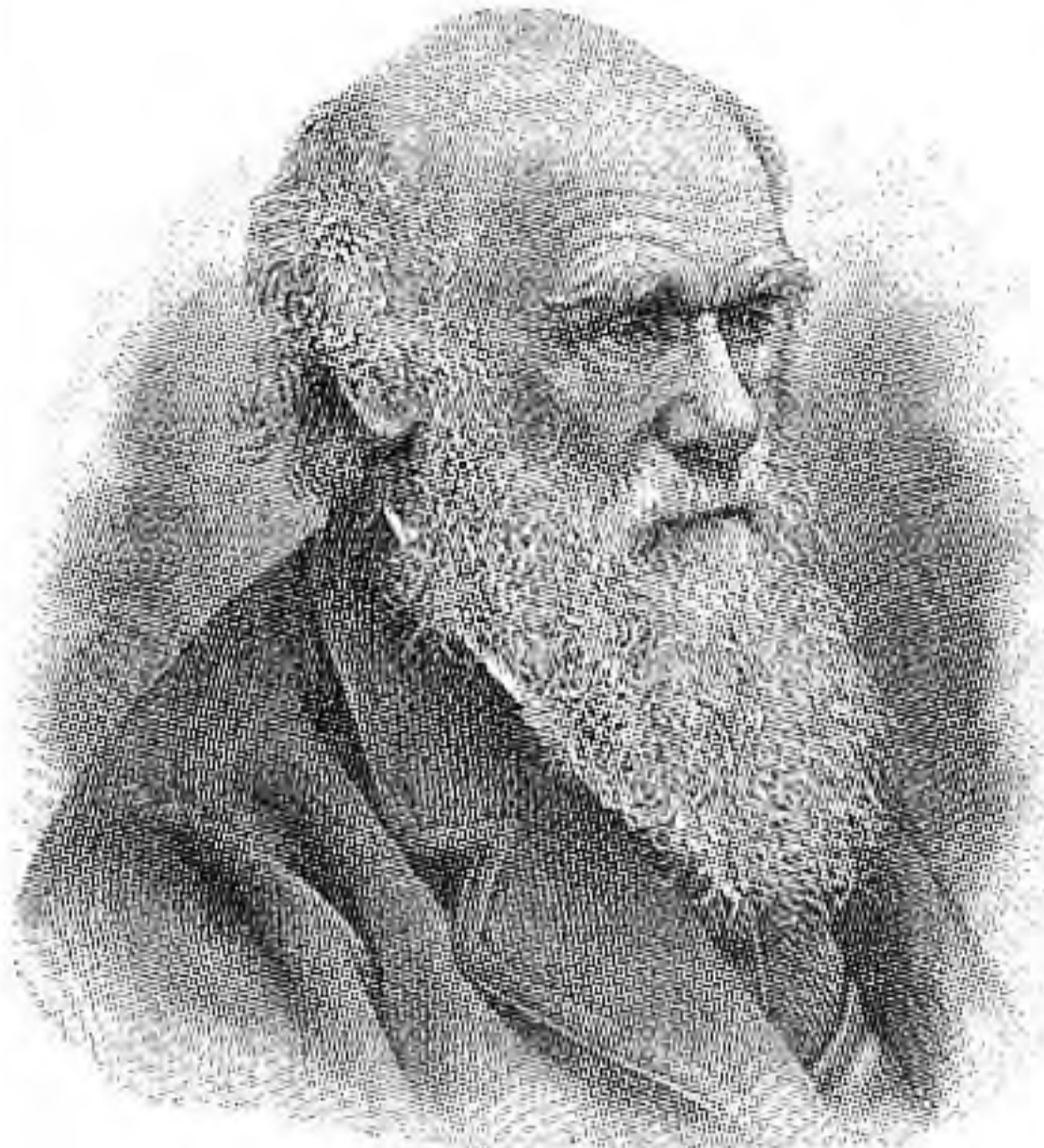
- 3 Hugh Jackman / known for playing Wolverine in the *X-Men* films / from Sydney

- 4 in South Australia, Anna Creek Cattle Station / over 34,000km² / larger than Belgium

4 ★★★ Complete the text with relative pronouns. Add commas where necessary.

sparebrain – your online encyclopedia

Charles Darwin



Charles Darwin, ⁰*who* was born on 11 February 1809, was an English naturalist and geologist. He was the first person to suggest that all species evolved from a single form of life. He also suggested the theory of natural selection ¹ _____ attempts to explain why there are now so many different forms of life on Earth. In the Galapagos Islands ² _____ Darwin studied local birds he found strong evidence to support his theories. Natural selection ³ _____ is sometimes called 'survival of the fittest' is still the most popular scientific explanation for the variety of life found on our planet. Darwin ⁴ _____ ideas were questioned at first is now famous as one of the most important thinkers in human history.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Rewrite the sentences using relative clauses for the information in brackets.

- 0 Mount Vesuvius, (*it last erupted in 1944*), is a popular tourist attraction today.
Mount Vesuvius, which last erupted in 1944, is a popular tourist attraction today.
- 1 My cousin, (*he lives in Manhattan*), has an apartment overlooking the city.
My cousin, _____ has an apartment overlooking the city.
- 2 Our new car, (*we bought it this year*), is environmentally friendly.
Our new car, _____ is environmentally friendly.
- 3 Poland, (*it's in central Europe*), has a very diverse climate.
Poland, _____ has a very diverse climate.
- 4 Northern Ireland, (*it's the smallest country in the UK*), has a population of around 2 million.
Northern Ireland, _____ has a population of around 2 million.
- 5 These low-energy light bulbs, (*they are supposed to save money*), are actually quite expensive.
These low-energy light bulbs, _____, are actually quite expensive.

5.6 Speaking language practice

Expressing and justifying an opinion

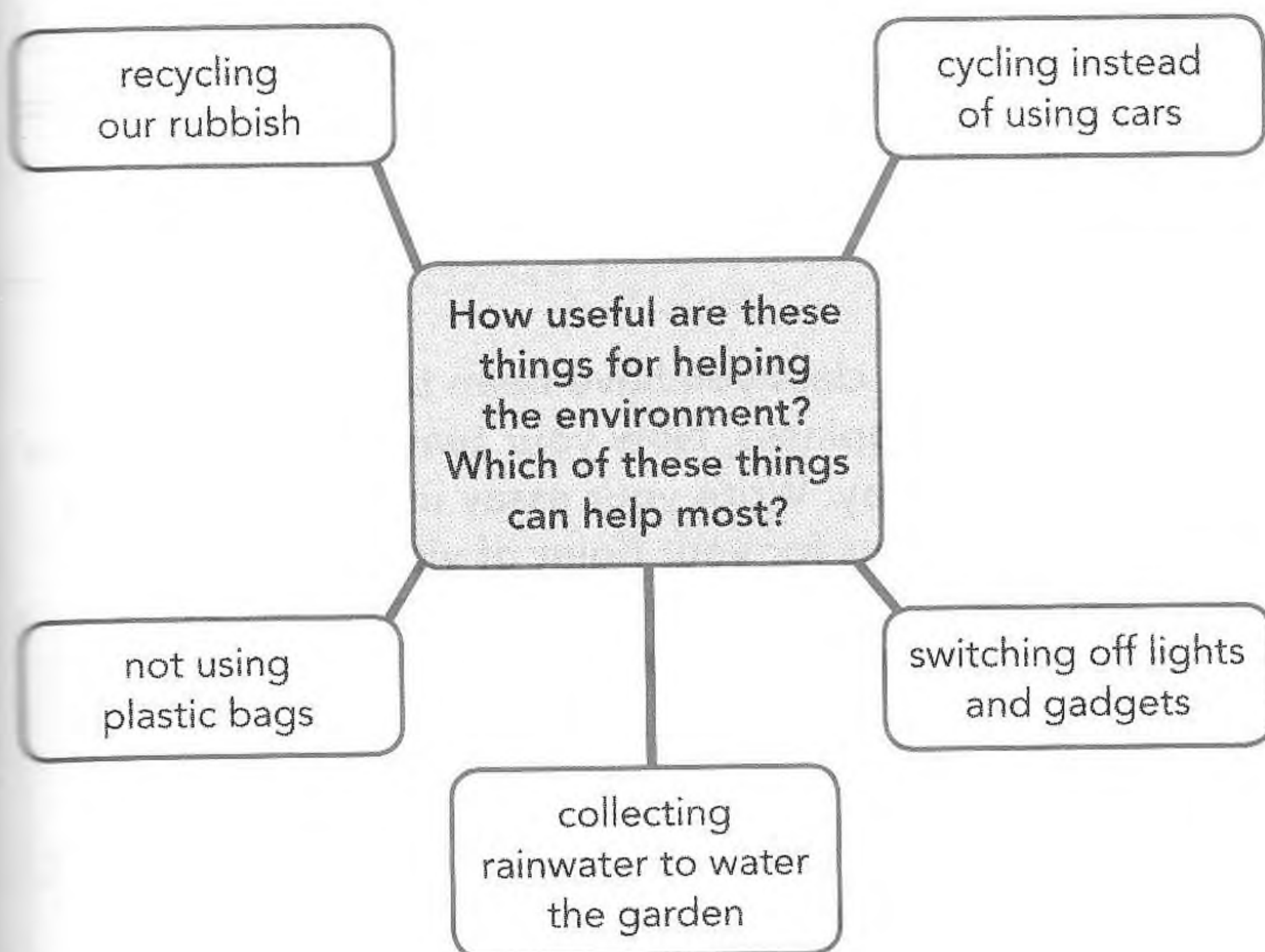
1 Label the phrases **D** for discussing different options or **C** for choosing one of the options and justifying the choice.

- 0 What about this idea?
- 1 I wouldn't choose the picture showing ... because ...
- 2 I'm not so sure.
- 3 I'd go for picture X because ...
- 4 Let's start with this one.
- 5 I completely agree with you.
- 6 Out of these three pictures, I'd choose picture X because ...

2 Read the discussion task and then complete the conversation two students had about it. The first letter of each word is given.

Here are some things we can do to help the environment.

- 1 Talk to each other about how useful these things are for helping the environment.
- 2 Decide which of these things can help most.



A: OK. ¹L___s___w___t___o___ – recycling our rubbish. I think this is really useful because then we don't throw so much onto landfill sites. ²W___d___y___t___?

B: Yes, ³y___r___. It helps the countryside and we can also make new products from the rubbish that we recycle. ⁴W___a___t___i___ – cycling instead of using cars?

A: I ⁵t___t___i___a g___i___. It's also very healthy for people to do.

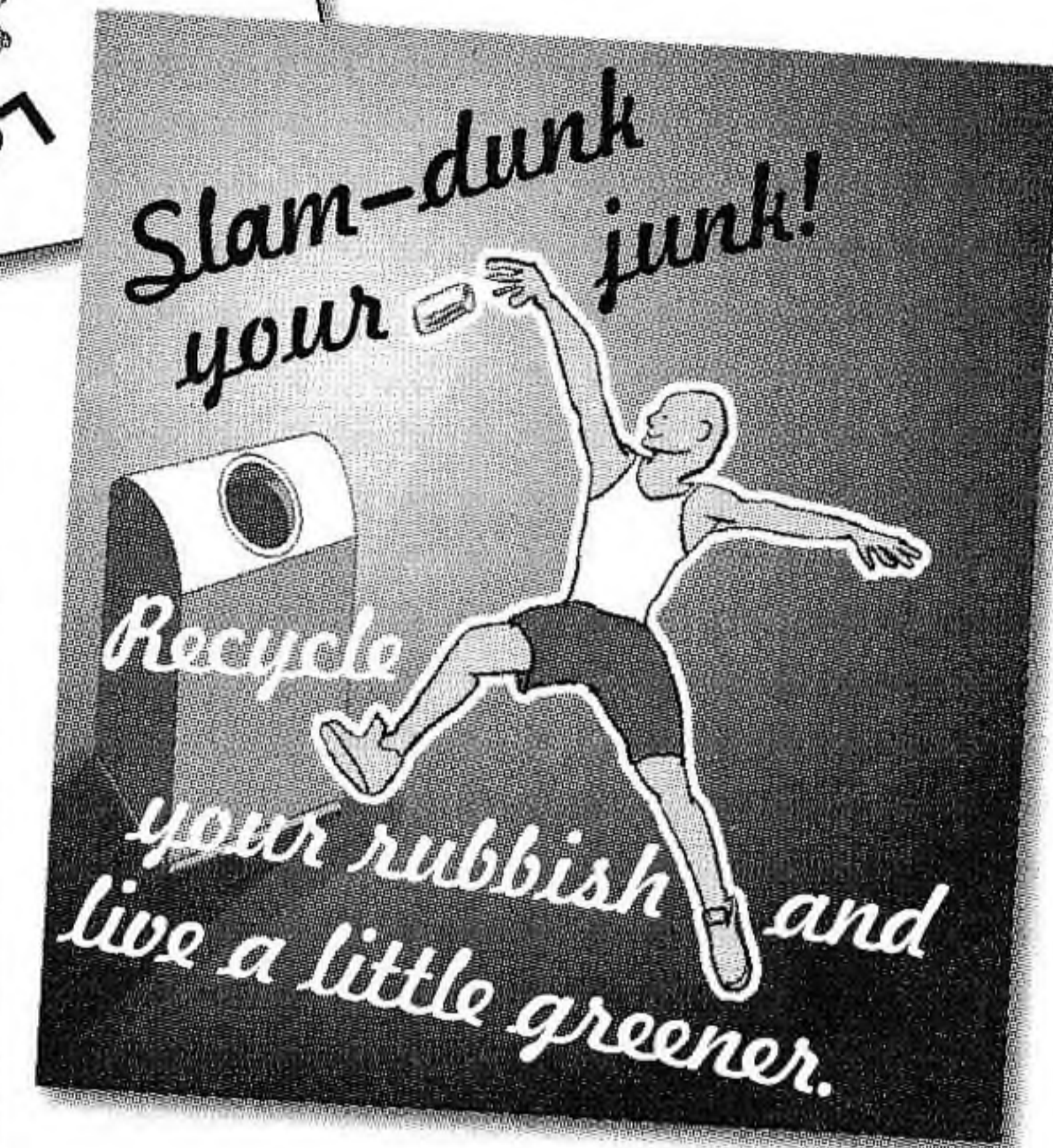
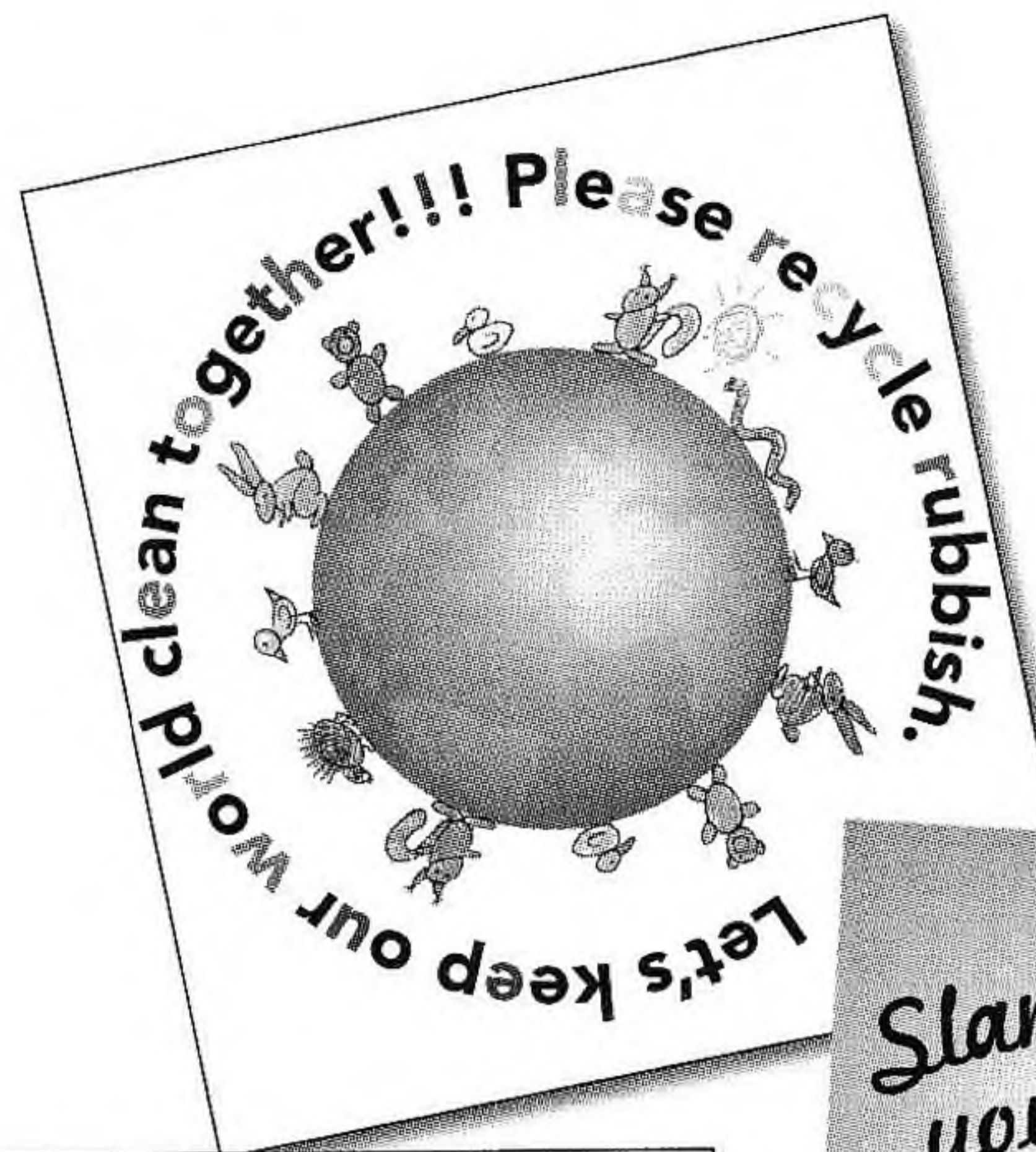
B: I ⁶c___a___w___y___. It makes the air much better and we don't use so much petrol.

A: Switching off lights and gadgets. Do you think that's useful?

B: ⁷I___n___s___s___. I don't think it saves much energy, do you?

A: No, but not using plastic bags is good. They can cause a lot of damage to animals, especially birds.

B: And they last for hundreds of years! We don't collect rainwater; do you?



A: ⁸T___p___w___t___i___ you need a big thing to collect it and some people don't have anywhere to put it!

B: True!

A: So, which of these things can help most? ⁹P___, I w___g___f___ switching off lights.

B: You're right. ¹⁰O___o___t___i___, I g___f___ the recycling. Everyone can do it and it's really useful.

A: I completely agree with you.

3 Rewrite the sentences. Use the words in brackets.

0 The three photographs show different environments. The three photographs focus on different environments. (focus)

1 I wouldn't choose poster 2 because it's too shocking.

_____ because it's too shocking. (reason)

2 Picture 2 isn't as funny as picture 3.

_____ (funnier)

3 I think the best option would be picture 2 because it's clear and simple.

_____ because it's clear and simple. (choose)

4 I don't like picture 3 because it's too old-fashioned.

_____ because it's old-fashioned. (go for)

5 Poster 3 is more interesting than the other posters.

_____ (not as ... as)

6 The message in poster 2 is not clear.

_____ the message is not clear. (problem)

5.7 Writing

A 'for and against' essay

1 Read the first paragraph of the essay and decide which statement is being discussed. Don't worry about the words in italics for now.

- 1 It would be better if everyone in the world spoke the same language.
- 2 Everyone in the world should learn to speak at least one foreign language.
- 3 All the world's school pupils should study the Mandarin language.

Experts say there are nearly 7,000 languages in the world today. Huge amounts of money and time are spent on learning and translating languages. It is not surprising that some people believe life would be simpler if we all spoke the same language. ¹*For example / However*, other people feel that language is an essential part of identity, and that a global language would not make the world a simpler place.

²*On the one hand / On the other hand*, there are arguments for the idea of a single language. ³*Secondly / Firstly*, for business people, the language barrier would no longer be a problem. ⁴*For instance / To sum up*, international companies would not have to spend large sums of money on translation. ⁵*Secondly / Thirdly*, a single world language would probably be good for tourism. ⁶*For example / Finally*, tourists would feel safer visiting certain countries if they knew they could communicate easily.

⁷*On the one hand / On the other hand*, there are important arguments against a single global language. ⁸*First of all / However*, a nation's language is a significant part of its culture and character. For example, when Poland was occupied by other countries in the past, the Polish language helped people to keep their identity as Poles. ⁹*For instance / Furthermore*, many people get pleasure, satisfaction and income from studying, using and teaching languages. For such people, a single global language would not be an advantage.

¹⁰*In conclusion / Finally*, although there are some reasonable arguments for the idea of a single world language, it is hard to imagine it could ever happen. ¹¹*Finally / In my opinion*, if there ever was a single language, the world would be a far less interesting place.

2 Read the essay and choose the correct options.



3 Complete the table about linkers with the words in the box.

finally for instance give a personal opinion
give examples introduce a conclusion
list arguments personally, I think show contrast

Use	Examples
⁰ <i>list arguments</i>	First of all/Firstly/Secondly/ 1 _____
² _____	For example/ ³ _____
⁴ _____	However/On the one hand/ On the other hand
⁵ _____	In my opinion/ ⁶ _____
⁷ _____	In conclusion/In summary

4 You are going to write a 'for and against' essay discussing the question *Can money buy you happiness?* Mark these arguments for (F) or against (A).

- 1 People get pleasure from nice possessions.
- 2 Friendship and love don't cost anything.
- 3 In many places education and healthcare is not free.
- 4 If you have money you can see the world.
- 5 Life is full of simple pleasures.
- 6 Happiness comes from achieving your goals.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 In your English class you have been talking about money and happiness. Now your teacher has asked you to write an essay. Write your essay using all the notes and give reasons for your point of view.

Can money buy you happiness?

Notes

- friendship
- health
- _____ (your own idea)

Write your essay in 140–190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my 'for and against' essay:

- I have started the first paragraph with general or factual comments about the topic.
- I have ended the first paragraph with a statement mentioning both sides of the topic.
- I have presented arguments for and against the topic and supported them with examples in the other paragraphs.
- I have included a summarising statement and my personal opinion in the final paragraph.
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.

5.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

1 For questions 1–9, read the article below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Can wolves change rivers?

It doesn't seem very likely, does it? How can ⁰ ___ species of wild dog change the course of a river? Let's find out.

In Yellowstone National Park, ¹ ___ is thought to be the oldest national park in the world, by the 1990s the wolf had been ² ___ for over seventy years. Then, in 1995, wolves were reintroduced. By then, the ³ ___ of deer and other large plant-eating animals had risen greatly ⁴ ___ there were no predators left to hunt them. Wolves, of course, ⁵ ___ meat, including deer, so when wolves came, back deer numbers went down. As deer numbers went down, more plants and trees grew in the forests. These helped to stop the river ⁶ ___ from collapsing into the river, so in time the rivers in

Yellowstone became straighter. So yes, wolves can actually change rivers!

It doesn't stop there, either. Straighter rivers support more life, so there were more fish and plants in the rivers. Other ⁷ ___ of the forest began to appear in greater numbers as the environment changed. The numbers of small birds, mice and rabbits went up first. Eagles eat small birds, mice and rabbits, so then more eagles appeared. Bears eat fruit, berries, small mammals and fish, so their numbers ⁸ ___ too. Scientists say Yellowstone Park should make a complete ⁹ ___, all thanks in great part to one of its lost animals: the wolf.

- | | | | | |
|---|--------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| 0 | A an | B that | C the | D a |
| 1 | A where | B that | C which | D what |
| 2 | A dead | B killed | C finished | D extinct |
| 3 | A population | B total | C measure | D size |
| 4 | A however | B because | C although | D so |
| 5 | A kill | B feed | C eat | D hunt |
| 6 | A banks | B sides | C edges | D borders |
| 7 | A people | B lives | C inhabitants | D citizens |
| 8 | A expanded | B lifted | C raised | D increased |
| 9 | A recreation | B recovery | C relief | D response |

TIPS:

Question 1: You need a relative pronoun, but be careful! Is the relative clause about a place or thing?

Question 2: Which word is used when a type of animal disappears completely?

Question 3: Think of a word that is used to describe large numbers of animals or people.

Word formation

2 For questions 1–8, read the article below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.

My report about sharks

If you mention sharks, most people think of a ⁰ *frightening* monster. But recently, more and more ¹ _____ are trying to change public opinion about these animals. Many shark species are becoming ² _____ because every year, an estimated 100 million sharks are killed by humans.

The main reason for this ³ _____ is soup. It may seem very hard to believe but the huge ⁴ _____ market for shark fin soup has created this problem. There are enormous ⁵ _____ benefits for fishermen to change their normal fishing habits and catch sharks instead. Many of them live in ⁶ _____ and selling sharks' fins offers a higher income.

We need to raise ⁷ _____ of this issue with the consumers of shark fin soup. Sharks are not a ⁸ _____ source. Once they are gone, they are gone forever.

FRIGHT
SCIENCE
DANGER
DESTROY
GLOBE
ECONOMY
POOR
AWARE
NEW

TIPS:

Question 1: What do we call the people who study or work in this subject?

Question 2: You need to add a suffix and also to make one other change to the word.

Question 3: You need to form a noun here.

5.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
5.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about geography and natural disasters.					Students' Book pages 60–61 Word Store page 11 Workbook pages 56–57
5.2	Grammar	I can use articles correctly.					Students' Book page 62 Workbook page 58
5.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in an interview.					Students' Book page 63 Workbook page 59
5.4	Reading	I can understand the structure of a text.					Students' Book pages 64–65 Workbook pages 60–61
5.5	Grammar	I can use non-defining relative clauses.					Students' Book page 66 Workbook page 62
5.6	Speaking	I can express and justify an opinion.					Students' Book page 67 Workbook page 63
5.7	Writing	I can present and support arguments in a 'for and against' essay.					Students' Book pages 68–69 Workbook page 64

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

5.10 Self-check

1 Complete the words in the sentences. Some letters are given.

- 0 The best place to eat seafood is in one of the restaurants on the **coast** overlooking the sea.
- 1 The water in the **b_____y** is much calmer than the water in the open sea.
- 2 With the hills on either side of you, follow the river along the bottom of the **v_____y** until you reach the village.
- 3 Before you can begin climbing the high mountains, you have to cross the lower **f_____s** on horseback.
- 4 The **c_____e** in Thailand is tropical, which means it is hot and humid for most of the year.
- 5 Residents are being evacuated before the **h_____e** hits the area tomorrow. Winds of up to 120km per hour are expected.

/5

2 Match the sentence halves. Then complete the missing words. The last two letters of each word are given.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 0 Some scientists say renewable <input type="checkbox"/> 1 Since we started using low-energy <input type="checkbox"/> 2 Here on the top there are solar <input type="checkbox"/> 3 Six people are missing in the dense <input type="checkbox"/> 4 Numbers of this previously endangered <input type="checkbox"/> 5 Members of the local <input type="checkbox"/> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> a _____ls which provide power for the lights. <input type="checkbox"/> b _____es of frog are slowly increasing again. <input type="checkbox"/> c _____ty support the development plans. <input type="checkbox"/> d _____ht _____bs, we've saved a lot of money. <input type="checkbox"/> e energy is the best alternative to nuclear power. <input type="checkbox"/> f _____st to the north of the village. <input type="checkbox"/> |
|---|---|

/5

3 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

destroy burst erupt flood
flow locate overlook strike

- 0 I booked a room with a sea view, but my room overlooks the car park.
- 1 This river _____ from here to the Pacific Ocean, which is over 1,000km away.
- 2 A volcano _____ in Chile yesterday and sent smoke and ash over 2km up into the sky.
- 3 In February 2011 an earthquake _____ Christchurch, New Zealand and killed 185 people.
- 4 Police are trying to _____ the missing man, who was last seen on Thursday night.
- 5 Over 10,000 books were _____ when a library caught fire in the city centre last night.

/5

4 Complete the sentences with a/an, the or Ø (no article).

- 0 Ladies and gentlemen, we have landed in Ø Madrid.
- 1 Last night I had Ø strange dream. The dream was about my teacher.
- 2 When Clara leaves school, she wants to be Ø architect.
- 3 Kevin has a plan. Actually, Ø plan was Ian's idea, but Kevin told us about it.
- 4 Ø swimming pool at our school is very old and a bit scary.
- 5 Ø unemployment in the country has fallen recently.

/5

5 Add who, which, where or whose and commas to form sentences with non-defining relative clauses.

- 0 Katie, ^{who} lives next door, looks after lost and injured animals. [^]
- 1 Stratford-upon-Avon I was brought up in is famous as the birthplace of William Shakespeare.
- 2 Singapore is an island country in South-East Asia is an extremely clean and tidy place.
- 3 Prince George of Cambridge great grandmother is the Queen of England was born in 2013.
- 4 Ganesha is a Hindu god has an elephant's head.
- 5 Penang is an island off the coast of Malaysia is sometimes called 'the Pearl of the Orient'.

/5

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

Focus on: North Korea

⁰ North Korea, ¹ is officially known as the Democratic People's Republic of Korea, is an unusual and secretive socialist country. The ordinary people of North Korea rarely have any contact with the ² world because it is impossible for them to travel overseas or access the Internet. The rest of the world knows very little about what life is like in North Korea because it is not part of the wider ³ community. Kim Jong-un, ⁴ is currently the supreme leader of North Korea is the third member of the Kim family to lead the Republic since it was established in 1948. ⁵ capital city is called Pyongyang and is located in the south-west of the country.

- | | | |
|-------------------|-----------|------------|
| 0 A Ø | B The | C A |
| 1 A where | B which | C who |
| 2 A inside | B outside | C other |
| 3 A global | B local | C national |
| 4 A which | B whose | C who |
| 5 A Ø | B The | C A |

/5

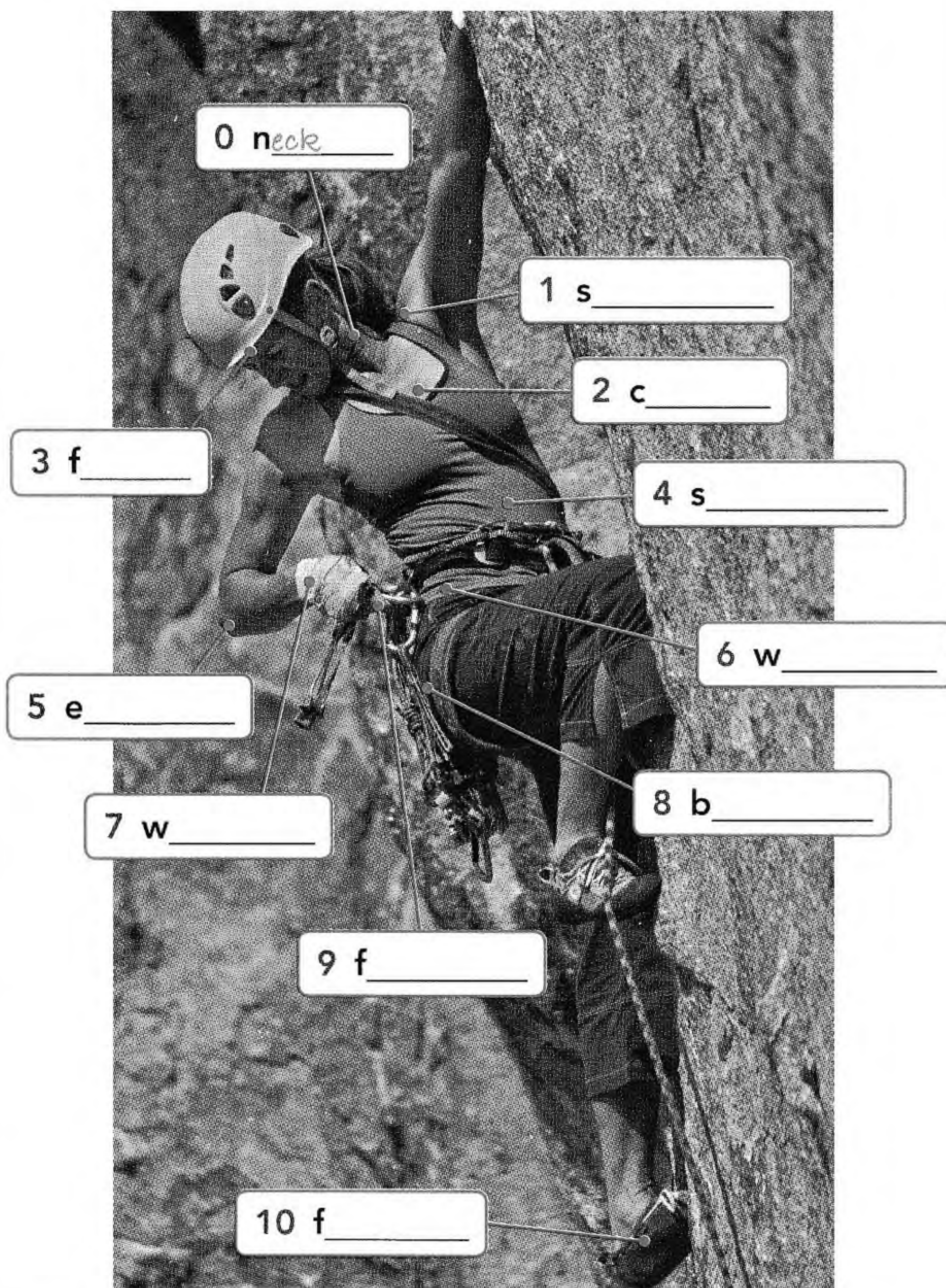
Total /30

6.1 Vocabulary

Parts of the body • Injuries • Body idioms

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

- 1 Label the parts of the body. The first letter of each word is given.



- 2 Complete the sentences with words for parts of the body.

- 0 I've painted my fungernails the same colour as my new dress.
- 1 In many European countries, male friends kiss female friends on the _____ but not usually on the lips.
- 2 Granddad bit into a nut and broke his left front _____.
- 3 Some geckos, a type of lizard, lick their own eyes clean with their _____.
- 4 When you are trying on ski boots, make sure your _____ stay on the bottom of the boot and don't lift up when you lean forward.
- 5 Although it's rare, some people are born with six fingers on one hand or six _____ on one foot. The condition is called polydactylism.
- 6 We sell shoes in very large sizes for people with unusually big _____.

WORD STORE 6A

Parts of the body

- 3 Read the adverts and choose the correct options.

Aching muscles

in your ¹thumbs / thighs
and your ²calves / elbows?
Relaxing leg massages
only €10 for 30 minutes.

**Do your ³eyebrows / lips
look like hairy caterpillars?**

**Let Beverly the Beautician
restore your beauty.**

⁴Lips / Knees

not kissable enough?

*You need our
deep protecting balm.*

**Click the blue
⁵toe / thumb
to like us
on Facebook.**

Attention all boxers!

Our new mouth-guards
protect your teeth and your
⁶jaws / hands in the ring.

Our new hiking boots
support your ⁷thighs / ankles
and reduce the pain
in your ⁸chest / knees
caused by long days
walking in the mountains.

WORD STORE 6B

Word families – injuries

- 4 Complete the conversations with the correct form of the words in brackets.

Conversation 1: Mum and Gavin

- G:** Mum, I'm calling from the hospital. It's about Ollie.
He's got a ⁰sprained (sprain) ankle.
- M:** What! Oh Gavin, your little brother! You were supposed to look after him. What happened? Are you sure it's not ¹_____ (break)?
- G:** Mum, it's not my fault! He ²_____ (sprain) it skateboarding. Anyway, I drove us here and he's OK. The doctor says it's not a serious ³_____ (sprain).
- M:** He's OK? Gavin! Why didn't you call me immediately? Is he upset?
- G:** It's OK, Mum! He's fine. He's ⁴_____ (scratch) his knee and he's got a ⁵_____ (cut) on his forehead.
- M:** He's ⁶_____ (cut) his forehead! Oh my beautiful boy!
- G:** Ha, ha! Don't let him hear you say that.
- M:** Gavin! This is not funny.
- G:** Mum, chill out! It's not like he's got a horrible ⁷_____ (burn) or anything. He'll be fine. Actually, he thinks it's cool. He says he hopes he has a scar and the doctor called him a tough guy.
- M:** Cool? A scar? Did he bang his head and go crazy? I'm on my way!

Conversation 2: Doctor and Agata

D: Do you want the good news or the bad news, Agata?

A: Good news? Is there any good news?

D: Well, yes. You have a ⁸ _____ (bruise) elbow and you've ⁹ _____ (dislocate) your shoulder, but you haven't ¹⁰ _____ (break) it.

A: OK ... and that is good, is it?

D: Well, a ¹¹ _____ (dislocate) shoulder is not usually as painful as a ¹² _____ (break) shoulder and in your case, it's going to be a lot easier to fix.

A: Will I be able to ski again this week? We only arrived yesterday.

D: Er, that's the bad news, I'm afraid. After a ¹³ _____ (dislocate) like this, we recommend that you rest completely for at least six weeks.

A: Six weeks? Are you joking?

REMEMBER BETTER

To help you remember the vocabulary in this section, make a list of injuries you or people you know have had.

Joe dislocated his toe when he was playing football.

I've never broken a bone.

I've got a scratch on my hand now (from our cat).

WORD STORE 6C

Body idioms

- 5 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.**

bottom eyes ~~hand~~ head
heart leg thumb tongue

- 0** I've sprained my wrist and I can't lift anything heavy. Could you give me a hand with my luggage?
- 1** When she showed us the bruise, we couldn't believe our _____. It covers the whole of her thigh!
- 2** When Frieda's cat died, it broke her _____. I told her it was just a cat and she slammed the door in my face.
- 3** What's it called again? You know ... er ... thingy. Oh come on! It's on the tip of my _____.
- 4** It's your birthday? Really? But I didn't get you anything. Or did I? Ha, ha! I'm only pulling your _____. Here's your gift. Happy birthday!
- 5** When I saw Jason dressed as nurse Florence Nightingale, I laughed my _____ off.

REMEMBER THIS

Take care not to overuse idioms. Most idioms are only used occasionally by native speakers. Consider how often you use them in your own language and use this as a guide.

- 6 Complete idioms 1–6 with the correct verbs. Then match them with definitions a–f.**

- 1 _____ someone a hand
2 _____ on the tip of your tongue
3 _____ someone's leg
4 _____ head off
5 _____ someone's heart
6 _____ your eyes

- a be very surprised
b laugh a lot
c joke with someone
d upset someone very much
e almost remember a word
f help someone

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

- 7 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C, to complete both sentences in each pair.**

- 1** I hope I never ___ a bone. It must be so painful. I'm exhausted. Can we take a ___ for half an hour?
A rest B hurt C break
- 2** Your socks are right at the ___ of the bag. Take everything out and you'll find them.
A bruised ___ is very common for snowboarders. That's the body part you usually land on when you fall.
A bottom B top C arm
- 3** I'm afraid it'll take long to see a doctor. Please be _____. My daughter is a ___ in this hospital. When can I visit her?
A patient B burn C calm
- 4** It was so funny when he fell over. I laughed my ___ off. Behave yourself or I'll send you to the ___ teacher.
A eyes B mouth C head
- 5** Lucy has a ___ on her foot. She stepped on some broken glass.
___ the chicken into six pieces and cover with olive oil and a little salt and pepper.
A scratch B cut C chop

- 8 Choose the correct options.**

- 1** Jack has a *burnt / sprained / dislocated* thumb. He didn't put the glove on when he took the pizza out of the oven.
- 2** Look at the size of the muscles in her *heels / ankles / calves*. She must be a marathon runner.
- 3** What is the actress in *The Hunger Games* called? It's on the tip of my *teeth / tongue / lips*. Jennifer something.
- 4** When I saw the comedian on television last night, I laughed my *face / mouth / head* off!
- 5** Most people have two *ankles / thumbs / eyebrows*, but Ryan's meet in the middle, so it looks like he has just one.

/10

6.2 Grammar

Second Conditional • wish/if only


SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read the sentences and choose the correct meaning, A or B.

- If I had a pair of winter boots, my feet wouldn't be cold.
A The speaker's feet are cold.
B The speaker's feet aren't cold.
- My brother and I wouldn't fall out if he wasn't so immature.
A The speaker's brother is immature.
B The speaker's brother is not immature.
- She'd need glasses if she was short-sighted.
A She needs glasses. B She doesn't need glasses.
- Peter, you'd find writing more difficult if you were left-handed.
A Peter is right-handed. B Peter is left-handed.
- Polly wouldn't hang out with Ella if they didn't have so much in common.
A Polly and Ella are very different.
B Polly and Ella are very similar.

2 ★ Read the article and choose the correct options.

RANDOM QUESTIONS



Today's online guest is British teenage rap sensation

Mikey Silence

Latest questions (there are 171 people logged in)

20.08 Clairewiththehair

What would you do if you weren't a rapper?

Hi, Claire. Interesting name. I ¹wouldn't be / 'd be a doctor or a teacher if I ²wasn't / wouldn't be a rapper. I'd like to do something to help other people.

20.07 Sk8r_132

If you ³would have / had a superpower, what would it be?

Interesting question, Sk8r. I'd love to be able to fly. If I ⁴would want / wanted to get away from people for a while and be on my own or write some new lyrics. I ⁵d fly / will fly up to the clouds and just hang out there for a while. That would be pretty awesome.

20.05 Lilly422

Which part of your body would you like to change?

Woah! Lilly, that's a bit of a personal question, I'm pretty happy as I am, to be honest. Nobody's perfect, but I don't really care what anybody else thinks. I suppose if I ⁶d change / changed anything I ⁷d make / made myself a bit taller. I love hanging out and playing basketball, but I am kind of short. ☹

waiting for next question ...

3 ★★ Write Second Conditional sentences using the sentences in bold and the words in brackets. Use commas where necessary.

- I wish I didn't have this virus.** (I / go out / and meet my friends)
I'd go out and meet my friends if I didn't have this virus.
- If only the exam was next week.** (we / have / a bit longer for revision)
If _____
- I wish my legs were stronger.** (I / run / much further)
I _____
- If only we lived on the coast.** (I / walk / on the beach every day)
If _____
- I wish you liked fish.** (we / have / a healthier diet)
We _____

4 ★★★ Complete the second sentence to show that you would like the situation or behaviour to be different.

- My brother borrows my clothes without asking.
I wish my brother wouldn't borrow my clothes without asking.
- I have a dislocated finger.
If only _____ a dislocated finger.
- My boyfriend never calls me.
I wish _____ call me.
- Our school doesn't have recycling bins.
I wish _____ recycling bins.
- My girlfriend isn't talking to me.
If only _____ to me.
- Fast food is bad for you.
If only _____ bad for you.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Find and correct the mistakes in the sentences.

- If only driving lessons would be cheaper. were
- If Lucas would have a suit, he'd wear it to the wedding. _____
- We save a lot of money if we stayed over at Karen's house. _____
- I wish I wouldn't be so pale-skinned. _____
- I'd ate it if it wasn't so greasy. _____
- If only broccoli tastes like chocolate. _____
- I wish my shoes wouldn't smell so bad. _____



6.3 Listening language practice

Prepositions • Verb patterns

- 1 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C. Then listen and check.

Students' Book recording CD•3.10 MP3•99

I'm sure everyone here knows all ¹ _____ the terrible illness, Ebola, which is affecting thousands and thousands of people in Africa. There have been a few cases in Europe and America, but the problem is still mainly in African countries. At the moment scientists are working very hard to find a vaccine because normal medicines don't work. People don't catch the illness ² _____ the air, but from touching other people who have it. This makes it hard ³ _____ doctors and nurses who are looking ⁴ _____ them. We really need to help them. They need more money ⁵ _____ research, hospitals and more doctors. So that's why I'm talking to you today. The school is planning to have a walk for charity next weekend. Last year we organised a marathon swim and we raised over £3,000 for the local children's hospital. This time we hope to get more, perhaps over £5,000! The event will start ⁶ _____ the school on Saturday morning at 10.30. The route will go ⁷ _____ the forest and across the hills to Brockfield. The fastest walkers should take ⁸ _____ three hours. The slowest, like me, will take quite a lot longer! But we hope the last people will arrive ⁹ _____ Brockfield before 4.30. So get your trainers ¹⁰ _____ and join us on Saturday to help fight Ebola!

- | | | |
|---------|---------|-----------|
| 1 A on | B about | C for |
| 2 A in | B out | C from |
| 3 A for | B to | C at |
| 4 A for | B on | C after |
| 5 A to | B for | C of |
| 6 A off | B on | C at |
| 7 A in | B over | C through |
| 8 A in | B for | C about |
| 9 A by | B in | C up |
| 10 A on | B down | C to |

REMEMBER THIS

It is not easy to know which prepositions come after which verbs. Remember that different combinations are possible, depending on the context. For example, many verbs can be followed by either *for* + noun or a *to*-infinitive.

I want to **raise** money **for** charity.

I want to **raise** money **to help** heart attack victims.

- 2 Choose the correct options.

- a I'm afraid you'll have to pay *to / for* see a private doctor.
b Please pay *to / for* your popcorn before you start eating it!
- a Visitors: queue here *to / for* the aquarium.
b Do we queue here *to / for* buy a ticket for the match?
- a Ronaldo has scored seventeen goals so far this season *to / for* his country.
b England need to score one more goal *to / for* become world champions.
- a Matthew is very serious about basketball. He always plays *to / for* win.
b In my opinion, it's not right that foreign players play *to / for* the national team.
- a Darling, I promise I'll always be there *to / for* you.
b Don't worry about your sprained ankle. We'll be there *to / for* help you get up the stairs.

WORD STORE 6D

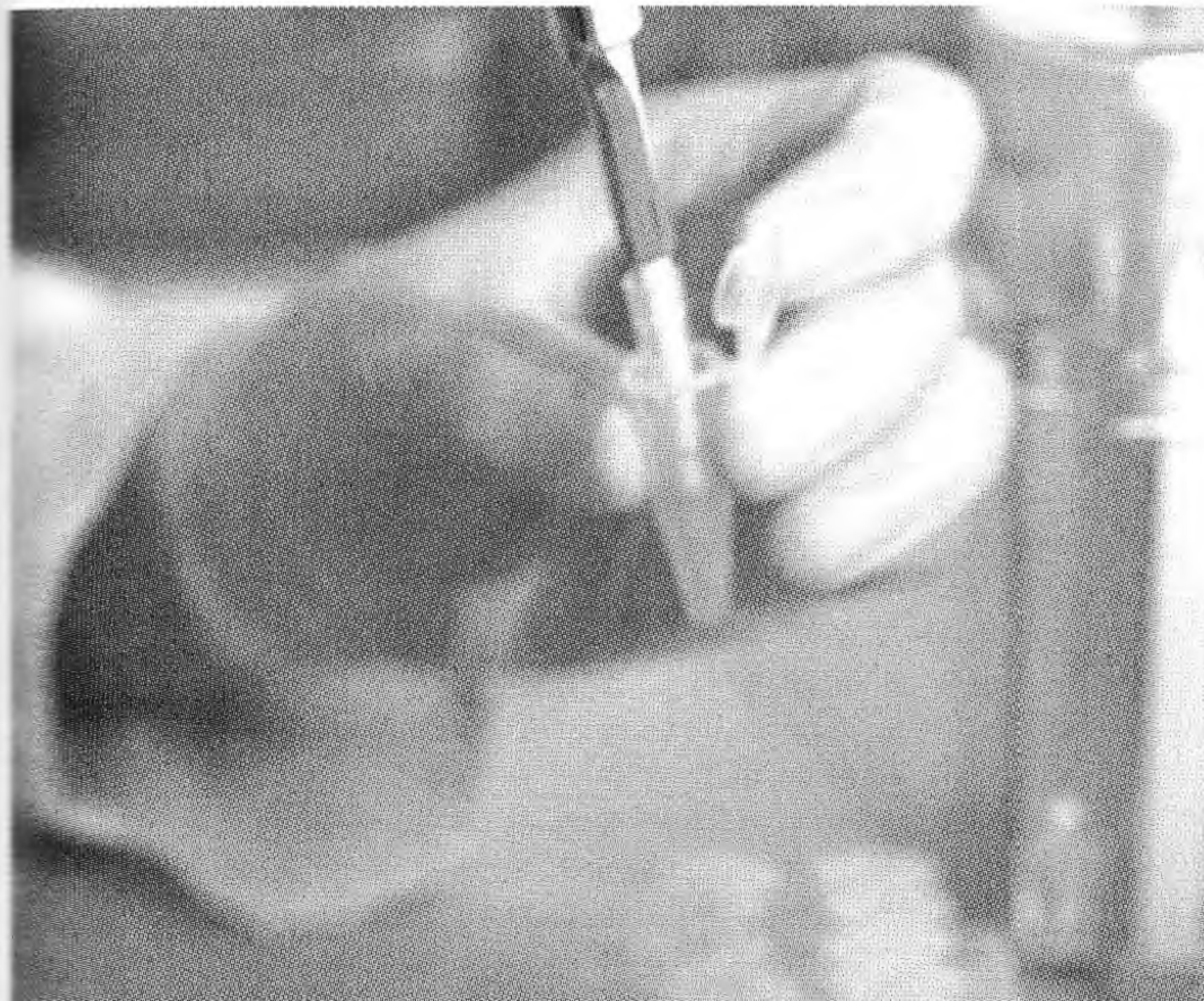
Compound nouns – health issues

- 3 Complete the words in the notice. The last letter of each word is given.

First Aid and Home Health Course for young people – starting next month

Would you know what to do if someone was having a ⁰heart attack? Do you know how to stop a ¹_____e bleed? If the answer is *no*, then maybe you should enrol on our First Aid and Home Health Course. We'll be learning practical things such as how to treat a ²_____k eye or deal with a ³_____e sting, as well as offering advice on things like preventing ⁴_____n burn and coping with ⁵_____y fever.

The course begins on 3 February and will be held every week for six weeks, between 16.00 and 17.30, in room 303. All students are welcome, but there are only twenty places, so be quick! For registration, see Mrs Barker in the school office.



6.4 Reading

A lot of light bulbs • Health issues

Glossary

anaesthetist (n) = a medical professional who specialises in stopping patients from feeling pain during surgery

device (n) = a machine or tool that does a special job; a synonym for *gadget*

pancreatic (adj) = connected with the pancreas, an organ near the stomach that produces insulin

A lot of light bulbs

¹ On first impressions, Jack Thomas Andraka is a pretty normal American teenager. A student of North County High School, near Baltimore, he was born in 1997 and raised in Maryland on the east coast of the US. His father is a civil engineer, his mother an anaesthetist and originally, his family comes from Poland. Jack is a keen scout who likes white water rafting and is a member of the National Junior Wildwater Kayak Team. He enjoys Maths at school, reading on his Kindle and watching crime series on TV.

² Sounds pretty average, right? Well, in fact, this teenager is anything but average. Jack is the winner of several major science awards, the subject of a number of documentary films and a regular speaker at scientific and educational conferences around the world. Why? Because as well as being a regular teenage boy, he is also a world-famous inventor, pioneering cancer researcher and proof that you don't need a lifetime of experience to be able to invent something truly life-changing.

³ After the sad death of a friend from pancreatic cancer, the same illness that killed Apple founder Steve Jobs in 2011, Jack began doing research into the life-threatening condition. He discovered that one of the

reasons so many people died from this particular type of cancer was because there was no cheap and reliable test that allowed doctors to diagnose the illness early enough to save the patient. Amazingly, Jack thought of a way to develop a simple test using things he had learned in his Biology class at school and through scientific journals and articles, some of which he found by chance online.

⁴ Jack needed money, assistance and a laboratory to continue developing his idea, so he contacted around 200 research professionals to ask for help. Unfortunately, 199 of the replies were negative, but the 200th from Dr Anirban Maitra, a professor at Johns Hopkins School of Medicine, was the one that Jack was waiting for. So, with the help of Professor Maitra and the use of his lab, Jack successfully developed a test for pancreatic cancer that is 168 times faster, 400 times

more sensitive and 26,000 times less expensive than the current diagnostic tests. The test is even effective for two other types of cancer as well.

⁵ In 2012 Jack received the grand prize of the Intel International Science and Engineering Fair for his invention. Since his success, he has met Bill Clinton and Barack Obama and been interviewed by the BBC, CNN and many other radio stations, television channels and newspapers around the world. Jack hasn't stopped inventing and is currently working with a group of other prize-winning teenagers on a device the size of a mobile phone that can diagnose a wide range of illnesses instantly and without a blood sample. Sounds like something from *Star Trek*, right? Well, yes. That's where the inspiration came from.

⁶ Professor Maitra is enthusiastic about Jack's future. The professor spoke to a newspaper reporter and compared Jack to Thomas Edison, the inventor of the light bulb. He called him, the Edison of our times, and promised there were going to be a lot of light bulbs coming from Jack in the future.



1 Read the article. Why is it called A lot of light bulbs?

- 1 Because Jack Andraka invented several new types of the light bulb.
- 2 Because light is an important element in Jack Andraka's invention.
- 3 Because the writer is comparing Jack to Thomas Edison, the inventor of the light bulb.

2 Read the article again and choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 1 In the first paragraph, the writer wants to
 - A explain how unusual Jack is.
 - B explain Jack's interest in science.
 - C describe Jack's personality and looks.
 - D explain how normal Jack is.
- 2 Jack began the research into his invention because of
 - A the death of someone famous.
 - B an interesting Biology class at school.
 - C the loss of a friend.
 - D something he read in a scientific journal.
- 3 Which organisation helped Jack develop his invention?
 - A North County High School
 - B Johns Hopkins School of Medicine
 - C Apple
 - D Intel
- 4 The text says that Jack's test for pancreatic cancer
 - A doesn't require a blood sample.
 - B was inspired by *Star Trek*.
 - C is not as fast as current tests.
 - D can also help patients with other kinds of cancer.
- 5 What is the main message of the article?
 - A Young people can achieve amazing things.
 - B You don't have to be rich to be a successful inventor.
 - C Even the most serious types of cancer are treatable.
 - D Few organisations are willing to help young inventors.

3 Match the headings with the paragraphs of the article. There are two extra headings.

- a Development of the test
- b An average teenager
- c A bright future
- d Inspired by *Star Trek*
- e Jack's big idea
- f Pancreatic cancer
- g Recognition for Jack
- h Not so normal after all

4 Match these phrasal verbs with their underlined synonyms in the text.

- 0 carry on continue
- 1 brought up _____
- 2 came across _____
- 3 got in touch with _____
- 4 came up with _____
- 5 given up _____

5 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in Exercise 4.

- 0 They carried on walking until they reached the fence that surrounded the mysterious building.
- 1 One day, if I become a parent, I hope to _____ my kids in a world where men and women are truly equal.
- 2 I wasn't planning to buy you a gift, but then I _____ this in the market and I just had to get it.
- 3 Uncle Steve has _____ smoking four times this year. It's obviously not working.
- 4 Lindsay _____ the idea for a surprise party for Damien. He absolutely loved it.
- 5 David, your teacher _____ me today to say that you haven't been to school all week.

REMEMBER BETTER

Draw a line down the page of a notebook to make two columns. In one column write the phrasal verbs from Exercise 4 and in the other column write their full-verb synonyms. Fold the page so that you can only see one of the columns, then test yourself or a friend by trying to remember what is on the other side.

WORD STORE 6E

Word families – health issues

6 For each pair of sentences, complete one gap with the verb and one with the noun form of the words in the box. Change the form of the verbs if necessary.

[cure diagnose inject
prescribe prevent recover treat]

- 0 a Many types of cancer can now be cured.
b There is no cure for the common cold.
- 1 a Eat healthily and get plenty of exercise. When it comes to heart disease, _____ is better than cure.
b To _____ the spread of bacteria in the hospital, please wash your hands regularly.
- 2 a To get an exact _____, we'll have to do a blood test.
b The doctor examined Claire and _____ her illness as a stomach virus.
- 3 a I'm sorry, sir, you can only buy this medicine if you have a(n) _____ from the doctor.
b You have an ear infection James, so I'm going to _____ a course of antibiotics.
- 4 a Dear Nicole, get well soon. We hope you have a quick _____. Love from Chris and Mike.
b It may take several months to _____ from a heart attack.
- 5 a The best _____ for a cold is to rest and drink plenty of fluids.
b Nowadays, doctors can _____ malaria with drugs.
- 6 a Shelly hates needles in her mouth. _____ at the dentist's are her worst nightmare.
b Ellen, I need to _____ you now, so you might feel just a little pain.

6.5 Grammar

Third Conditional

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the beginnings of the sentences with the Past Perfect form of the verbs in brackets. Then match them with the endings.

- 0 Jack and I hadn't met (not meet), c
- 1 Beata _____ (break) her arm once,
- 2 Ken _____ (lose) touch with Amy,
- 3 Emma _____ (not study) meteorology,

- a so she didn't know a lot about the weather.
- b so she knew how much it hurt.
- c so I didn't recognise him.
- d so he was surprised when she called.

2 ★ Read the sentences and choose the correct options.

- 1 If Jack and I had met, I would've recognised him.
real past event: We *met* / *didn't meet*.
real past result: I *recognised* / *didn't recognise* him.
- 2 Beata wouldn't have known how much it hurts when you break your arm if she hadn't done it once.
real past event: Beata *broke* / *didn't break* her arm once.
real past result: She *knew* / *didn't know* how much it hurt.
- 3 Ken wouldn't have been surprised when Amy called if he hadn't lost touch with her.
real past event: Ken *lost touch* / *didn't lose touch* with Amy.
real past result: He *was* / *wasn't* surprised when she called.
- 4 Emma would have known a lot about the weather if she had studied meteorology.
real past event: Emma *studied* / *didn't study* meteorology.
real past result: She *knew* / *didn't know* a lot about the weather.

3 ★ ★ Complete the conversation with the correct form of the verbs in brackets. Use short forms.

Anne and Dan are at the summer house.

A: What a long journey. Open the door, Dan. I need a cup of tea.

D: You've got the keys.

A: What? I texted you this morning to say bring the spare ones.

D: What? If I ⁰ received (receive) a text message, my phone ¹ _____ (go) beep.

A: Well, I definitely texted you. You ² _____ (see) the message if you ³ _____ (look) at your phone. I've lost my keys.

D: But why didn't you say something before we left? Anne, we are 200km from home!

A: We'll have to break a window.

Later in the hospital:

D: Ouch! This really hurt, Nurse!

N: Sorry, Mr Finch, but I have to clean the cut.

A: I'm sorry, Dan.

D: It's not your fault, Anne.

A: But if I ⁴ _____ (not lose) the keys, you ⁵ _____ (not cut) your hand and we wouldn't be here in the hospital now.

4 ★ ★ ★ Write Third Conditional sentences to complete the conversations.

0 Erin: I was in a bad mood last night. I shouted at Sally and we had an argument.

Alfie: stay calm / not fall out
 Oh dear! If you'd stayed calm, you wouldn't have fallen out.

1 Karen: I was late home last night. Mum was so mad.

Nina: phone your mum / she probably not be so angry
 Oh Karen! If _____

2 Dominic: I really thought I'd left my passport at home.

Reece: miss the flight / you forget it
 We _____

3 Louis: Chris fell off his bike yesterday. The bruise on his forehead was huge.

Imogen: not hurt himself / wear his helmet
 It's his own fault, Louis. He _____

4 Jodie: That food was so spicy.

Issac: not be so bad / not used so much chilli sauce
 It _____

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the Third Conditional sentences. Use *if* and the prompts in brackets.

0 We wouldn't have won (you / not score / a goal).
 We wouldn't have won if you hadn't scored a goal.

1 (you / not be / cold) if you had worn long trousers that night.
 _____ you had worn long trousers.

2 If the clothes hadn't been so cheap, (I / not buy / three jackets).

If the clothes hadn't been so cheap, _____

3 My boyfriend would have left me if (I / forget / about his birthday again).

My boyfriend would have left me _____

4 (our electricity bill / be / smaller) last year if we'd bought low-energy light bulbs.

_____ last year if we'd bought low-energy light bulbs.

5 Daisy wouldn't have burnt herself if (she / be / more careful in the kitchen).

Daisy wouldn't have burnt herself _____

6.6 Speaking language practice

A doctor's appointment

1 Put the words in 1–5 in the correct order to form questions. Then match them with answers a–f.

- 0 pain / when / start / the / did?
When did the pain start? f
- 1 other / have / do / symptoms / you / any?

- 2 does / if / push / I / here / hurt / it?

- 3 dizzy / you / feel / do?

- 4 ever / you / rash / had / a / have?

- 5 time / when / were / was / last / the / you / ill?

- a About six months ago. I had a bad cough.
 b Yes, as well as the headache, I feel sick.
 c No, never. This is the first time.
 d Yes, it feels like the room is spinning.
 e Ouch! Yes, it does.
 f Yesterday, when I got home from school.

2 Cross out the option that is not possible in each sentence. Then write **D** for something a doctor would say or **P** for something a patient would say.

- 1 I'm going to give you a prescription / give you indigestion / make an appointment for you.
- 2 I feel ill / weak / temperature.
- 3 I've got a sick / sore throat / runny nose.
- 4 I'm going to examine you / take your temperature / lie down please.
- 5 I think you've got a virus / a blood test / indigestion.
- 6 You should open wide / eat more slowly / go on a diet.
- 7 Breathe in / out / down.

3 Put the conversation in the correct order.

- 1 Good morning. Please come in and sit down. Max, is it?
- Well, let's take a look. Lie down, please. If I push here does it hurt?
- Yes, I've got a runny nose and a sore throat and I feel very weak.
- Actually, no. Not there either.
- I think I'm dying, doctor. I feel terrible and I've got an awful headache.
- Yes, doctor. Max Cooper.
- Dying? Oh dear! Do you have any other symptoms?
- Well, no. No, it doesn't.
- OK, Max, what seems to be the problem?
- Well, Max, I don't think you are going to die just yet. I think perhaps you have a cold.
- And here?

REMEMBER THIS

Ouch is a word for the sound that you make when you feel sudden pain. Such sounds are called interjections. Other examples include **achoo**, the sound of a sneeze, **oops**, a sound you make when you make a mistake or break or drop something, **phew**, a sound to express relief, and **wow**, a sound to express amazement. Look in a dictionary or online for more interjections like these.

4 Isobel is at the doctor's. Complete the words in the conversation. The first letter of each word is given.

D: Isobel? Yes, come in, please. Have a seat. How can I help?

I: Sorry?

D: Isobel, is it? Please sit down. How can I help?

I: Yes, thanks. I'm Isobel.

D: Er ... yes ... well. ⁰What's the problem, Isobel?

I: Well, my ears ¹h_____ and I can't hear very well.

D: Aha! I see. Do you have any other symptoms?

I: Yes, ²if_____ ^d_____, like my head is spinning, and my neck is ³s_____. It's much bigger than usual.

D: Yes, I can see that. ⁴W_____ ^d_____ ^t_____ ^p_____ ^s_____?

I: Sorry?

D: How long have you been in pain?

I: In Spain? I've never been to Spain.

D: No, WHEN DID IT START HURTING?

I: Oh, sorry. Yesterday.

D: OK, er ... since Thursday.

I: No, thanks.

D: What?

I: No, thanks, I'm not thirsty.

D: No, I said SINCE THURSDAY.

I: Oh yes. I was looking after my little sister and I fell asleep and when I woke up, I couldn't hear properly.

D: I see. ⁵I_____ ^g_____ ^t_____ ^e_____ ^y_____.

Lie ⁶d_____, ^p_____.

Aha! ⁷I ^t_____ ^y_____ ^g_____ something stuck in your ear. Yes, and in this side too. Hang on. I'll pull them.

I: Ouch!

D: Well, how strange. These look like little round sweets.

I: What? How did they get in there?

D: Perhaps you need to speak to your little sister.

I: She must have ... I'll kill her!



6.7 Writing

An article

1 Match the sentence halves to make tips for writing an article.

- 1 Give your article an interesting or funny title
- 2 Try to avoid repeating the same words
- 3 Talk directly to the reader in the article
- 4 Use linking expressions.
 - a by using a wide range of vocabulary.
 - b to make well-constructed and logical sentences
 - c to attract reader's attention.
 - d by asking some questions.

2 Match the examples with the tips in Exercise 1. There are two examples for one of the tips.

- a How many diets have you tried? I've been on loads!
- b As well as having a degree in medicine, Jack has several years of experience as a volunteer.
- c My (un)healthy life!
- d Katy loved studying to be a doctor. She particularly enjoyed her second year.
- e When I was a child, I always saw the same doctor whereas now I see a different doctor every time I'm ill!

3 Read the article and put the paragraphs in the correct order (1-4). Then choose the best title.

A ____ B ____ C ____ D ____

- 1 My sister had an accident in France
- 2 Doctor! Doctor!
- 3 Don't go swimming!
- 4 How to treat a foot injury

A We were spending the day on a beautiful sandy beach and my sister went swimming. Then she came out of the water. She was crying and she couldn't walk very well. Her foot was very red and it was getting bigger and bigger as we looked. What should we do next?

B This taught us an important lesson. People really need to find out before they go on holiday what to do and where to go in a medical emergency!

C Getting ill is horrible, but somehow it's even worse when you're on holiday. It can also be really scary because you're not always sure what to do! Something bad happened to my young sister when our family was on holiday in the north of France. It scared us all.

D Luckily, there was a French woman near us on the beach. She pointed across the road and said, 'Doctor, doctor! Quick!' Dad carried my sister to the house the woman pointed at and a doctor saw my sister immediately. He said that she had stepped on a dangerous fish and he gave her an injection. Her foot got better within a few minutes!

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 You have seen this announcement on an international students' website.

Holiday health problems!

Have you ever been ill on holiday or do you know someone who has? We are looking for articles about people's experiences. Write an article about getting ill on holiday, saying how people helped you, and you could see your article on the website!

Write your article in 140-190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my article:

- I have used a catchy title.
- I have engaged the reader by addressing them directly sometimes.
- I have shown a range of vocabulary and avoided repeating words.
- I have used linking words.
- I have written an ending that is funny or interesting.
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.



6.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

- 1 For questions 1–8, read the article below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

The Loch Ness Challenge

Have you ever heard of Scotland's Loch Ness Monster? Well, this year I took part ⁰ ___ a different kind of Loch Ness Monster: it was a 'monster' charity cycle race – 106 kilometres long!

The event is held every year and ¹ ___ cycle around the lake on traffic-free roads. The idea of the race is to ² ___ money for the cancer support charity Macmillan. I decided to do the race in ³ ___ of my grandfather, who died from cancer two years ago. I asked all my friends and family to ⁴ ___ me for as much money as they could. In the end, we were able to

⁵ ___ over £400 to Macmillan. The best way to organise and collect the money is to ⁶ ___ up a webpage through a specially-designed website. There are loads of them on the Internet.

A word or warning: I would have done more training if I ⁷ ___ known how steep some of the hills were! My ankles and feet were ⁸ ___ by the end of the day (they soon went back to their normal size, you'll be pleased to know!).

Would I do it again? Of course! In fact, I've already entered next year's race. Maybe I'll see you there!

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|----------------|--------------|
| 0 A of | B in | C on | D at |
| 1 A supporters | B members | C participants | D public |
| 2 A raise | B provide | C have | D bring |
| 3 A reminder | B reminding | C remembering | D memory |
| 4 A suggest | B recommend | C offer | D sponsor |
| 5 A help | B pass | C donate | D award |
| 6 A make | B set | C take | D use |
| 7 A had | B am | C have | D was |
| 8 A scratched | B swollen | C broken | D dislocated |

TIPS:

Question 1: Which word describes people who are doing sporting events?

Question 2: You need a word that collocates with *money* and describes what people do for charities.

Question 3: Look at the words before and after the gap. Only one of the words can complete the phrase.

Open cloze

- 2 For questions 1–9, read the email below and think of the word which best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Hi Anna,

I have an amazing story to tell you! I'm actually ⁰ *in* hospital at the moment. It's OK, don't ¹ _____. I'm OK now, but let me tell you what happened.

I was out for a picnic in the countryside with my family when I started finding it difficult to breathe. I've had hay ² _____ for years, especially in the spring and summer. With that, though, I usually only get a ³ _____ nose (I use so many tissues!) rather than breathing problems. My mum said I had all the symptoms ⁴ _____ asthma, but I'd never had that before. Eventually, Mum decided to take me to the hospital. The doctor did a blood ⁵ _____ but there

didn't seem to be anything wrong. It hurt ⁶ _____ she took the blood, but it wasn't as bad as having an ⁷ _____. You know I hate having a needle stuck in my arm! But guess who's just arrived at the hospital and is sitting here with me now! Jenny! She's broken her leg, so she's a patient ⁸ _____ the hospital too. They put her in the bed next to mine. I wish you ⁹ _____ here with us too. But don't have an accident! By the way, my asthma's OK and I should be out soon.

See you soon!

Maria

TIPS:

Question 1: You need the base form of a verb here.

Question 2: What collocates with *hay* and is a condition a lot of people get in the spring and summer?

Question 3: What word describes your nose when you need to use a lot of tissues?

6.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.
 😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.
 😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
6.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about the body and minor injuries.					Students' Book pages 72–73 Word Store page 13 Workbook pages 68–69
6.2	Grammar	I can talk about imaginary situations in the present.					Students' Book page 74 Workbook page 70
6.3	Listening	I can identify details in conversations and talks.					Students' Book page 75 Workbook page 71
6.4	Reading	I can find specific detail in an article.					Students' Book pages 76–77 Workbook pages 72–73
6.5	Grammar	I can talk about imaginary situations in the past.					Students' Book page 78 Workbook page 74
6.6	Speaking	I can talk about health, illness, symptoms and treatment.					Students' Book page 79 Workbook page 75
6.7	Writing	I can write an article for a student magazine.					Students' Book pages 80–81 Workbook page 76

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

6.10 Self-check

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in the box. There are two extra words.

eye hand heart jaw
leg lip thumb thigh

- 0 Be careful not to burn your lips – this tea is really hot.
1 I wasn't serious! I was only pulling your _____.
2 When Simon kissed Polly, he broke Sue's _____.
3 Leah needs some help with her Maths homework. Can you give her a(n) _____?
4 I don't like these jeans. They're the wrong shape for my legs. They make my _____ look really big.
5 Sam's ring is too big for his fingers, so he has to wear it on his _____.

/5

2 Match the words in box A with the words in box B. Then complete the sentences. There is an extra word in box A.

A black ear first hay ~~dislocated~~ nose sun

B aid burn eye fever ache ~~shoulder~~

- 0 After the rugby match we discovered that Andrew had a(n) dislocated shoulder.
1 When Scott took off his sunglasses, everyone was shocked to see that he had a(n) _____.
2 Don't go swimming if you have a(n) _____. It'll get worse if water gets in there.
3 Achoo! Oh, excuse me. I get _____ at this time of year. I'm allergic to the summer grasses.
4 Oh Mia, look at you. You are bright red! Is it _____? Did you fall asleep by the pool again?
5 Does anyone here know how to give _____? My boyfriend has been stung by a bee.

/5

3 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 0 About one minute after the dentist __ the anaesthetic, I couldn't feel the left side of my face.
A sprained B operated **C injected**
1 Jo fell off her horse. She was lucky she didn't __ her neck.
A cut B break C recover
2 We are going to __ this infection with antibiotics and you should feel better in about a week.
A treat B diagnose C prevent
3 When I told Sarah what had happened, she __ her head off. I didn't expect her to find it so funny.
A pulled B broke C laughed
4 Karen found it difficult to walk in high-heels and unfortunately she fell and __ her ankle.
A sprained B scratched C burnt
5 What if the __ for cancer is inside the mind of someone who doesn't have the opportunity for a good education?
A prescription B prevention C cure

/5

4 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

- 0 I wish I wasn't (not be) so tired because I'd really love to go out tonight.
1 If Claire _____ (not feel) ill, she'd join us.
2 Damien wishes he _____ (have) more money so he could take Nicole to an expensive restaurant.
3 If motorists _____ (not drive) so close to each other on the motorway, there would be far fewer accidents.
4 If the government made healthcare free for everyone in the country, we _____ (pay) much higher taxes.
5 If only ice cream _____ (be) good for me. I'd be the healthiest person alive.

/5

5 Decide which prompt goes in each gap. Then complete the Third Conditional sentences. Use short forms.

- 0 Jack wouldn't have been late if he hadn't stopped to watch the football match. (not be late, not stop)
1 Erin _____ the other skier if she _____ so quickly. (hit, not turn)
2 I _____ to pay for everyone if I _____ how expensive it was here. (know, not offer)
3 If Jill _____ her shoulder, she _____ in the match yesterday. (dislocate, not play)
4 If Connor _____ to the toilets, he _____ in the classroom. (not run, be sick)
5 The doctor _____ penicillin for Fay if she _____ she was allergic to it. (not say, prescribe)

/5

6 Read the email and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

Hi Clara,
I'm writing to you from my hospital bed after the ⁰ __ on my knee. I'm doing OK, but it is still a bit painful. They ¹ __ a big hole in my leg (!) and it's going to take a while to ² __. I asked if I could go home this morning. The doctor said that if I went home, I ³ __ the strong painkillers they give me here. He says I need to stay for another two days. I wish I ⁴ __ because I miss normal food. If Mum ⁵ __ me food from home, I wouldn't have eaten anything this week. Are you coming to visit me tomorrow? If you do, can you bring me some magazines?
See you x

- 0 **A operation** B fever C patient
1 A bruised B cut C stung
2 A cure B treat C recover
3 A wouldn't get B won't get C didn't get
4 A can leave B could leave C left
5 A didn't bring B wouldn't bring C hadn't brought

/5

Total /30

7.1 Vocabulary

Television • Modifiers with base and extreme adjectives

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Match six of the TV programmes in 1–11 with extracts A–F.

- | | | | | |
|-------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 0 a sports programme | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | F | 6 a chat show | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 1 a talent show | <input type="checkbox"/> | | 7 the weather | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2 a soap opera | <input type="checkbox"/> | | 8 a reality show | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3 a music programme | <input type="checkbox"/> | | 9 a sitcom | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4 the news or current affairs | <input type="checkbox"/> | | 10 a series/serial | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5 a quiz or game show | <input type="checkbox"/> | | 11 a documentary | <input type="checkbox"/> |

- A Later in the programme, the very talented Pharrel Williams will be singing live in the studio. But first, the UK's top ten album downloads this week. At number 10 ...
- B Ladies and gentlemen, the lovely Jennifer Lawrence! Jennifer, welcome to the show. Let's start by talking about your latest film ...
- C The time is 6 o'clock and here are today's headlines. The European Union is considering ...
- D Question 3 for £2,000: in which country are Christmas gifts given on 24 December rather than 25? The UK, Poland, France or Australia?
- E After the tiger, the African lion is the second largest of the four big cats, with some males weighing up to 250 kilos.
- F If you've just joined us, the score is 3-2 to Germany and this is turning out to be a fantastic game.



WORD STORE 7A

TV shows

2 Complete the advertisement with the correct form of one of the words in brackets.

Talented Britain

Talented Britain is coming to a city near you soon! Channel 7 is beginning its search for ⁰contestants (view / contest) to appear on the next series of *Talented Britain*, which will be ¹_____ (broadcast / perform) next year. Do you have what it takes to perform in front of a(n) ²_____ (panels / audience) of judges and millions of ³_____ (act / view) watching at home? This summer we will be holding ⁴_____ (rehearse / audition) in towns and cities across the country, so come and prove that you are good enough to be on the show. Start your ⁵_____ (broadcast / rehearse) now so you are ready to perform at your best when *Talented Britain* comes to your city.

[Click here for a list of cities and dates.](#)

WORD STORE 7B

Word families – TV shows

3 Complete the table.

Noun	Noun (person)	Verb
competition	competitor	0 <u>compete</u>
1 _____	editor	edit
entertainment	2 _____	entertain
performance	3 _____	perform
presentation	presenter	4 _____
5 _____	producer	produce

4 Complete the sentences with words from Exercise 3. The number of letters is given in brackets.

- 0 Here's Jill, the first of our six competitors on today's show. (11 letters)
- 1 Nicholas, you _____ on stage regularly, but this is your first film. (7 letters)
- 2 Here at Granada Studios we _____ two sitcoms and a soap opera. (7 letters)
- 3 And now, _____ for all the family in our afternoon film *Ice Age 4*. (13 letters)
- 4 After filming has finished, the _____ begins putting the various scenes together. (6 letters)
- 5 Natalie desperately wants to become a TV _____ one day. (9 letters)

WORD STORE 7C

Modifiers with base and extreme adjectives

5 Look at the meanings in brackets and complete the extreme adjectives in the conversations. The first letter of each adjective is given.

1 **A:** Well, that was really awful (very unpleasant)! What a terrible programme and a complete waste of an hour of my life!

B: Well, it's r_____ (very silly) to complain now, after you've watched the whole show. Why didn't you switch off after five minutes?

2 **A:** Did you see *House* last night? Oh, I love it. I think that English guy, the main actor, is absolutely h_____ (very funny).

B: *House*? Er, hello? *House* is, like, so old now, and anyway, if you ask me, every episode is i_____ (very similar).

A: Yeah, well, whatever. I like it.

3 **A:** Kyle, TV off! Homework! Now!

B: Dad, I'm watching a documentary about World War II, which is not only f_____ (very interesting) but also e_____ (very important) for my History project.

A: Oh. Very good, carry on.

4 **A:** Dad, are you watching the news again? Nothing new has happened since an hour ago.

B: Toby, new things happen all the time. There's just been an a_____ (very good) report about a skateboarding dog.

A: Er ... sounds great.

C: Don't listen to your dad. He's only watching because he thinks the newsreader is g_____ (very beautiful).

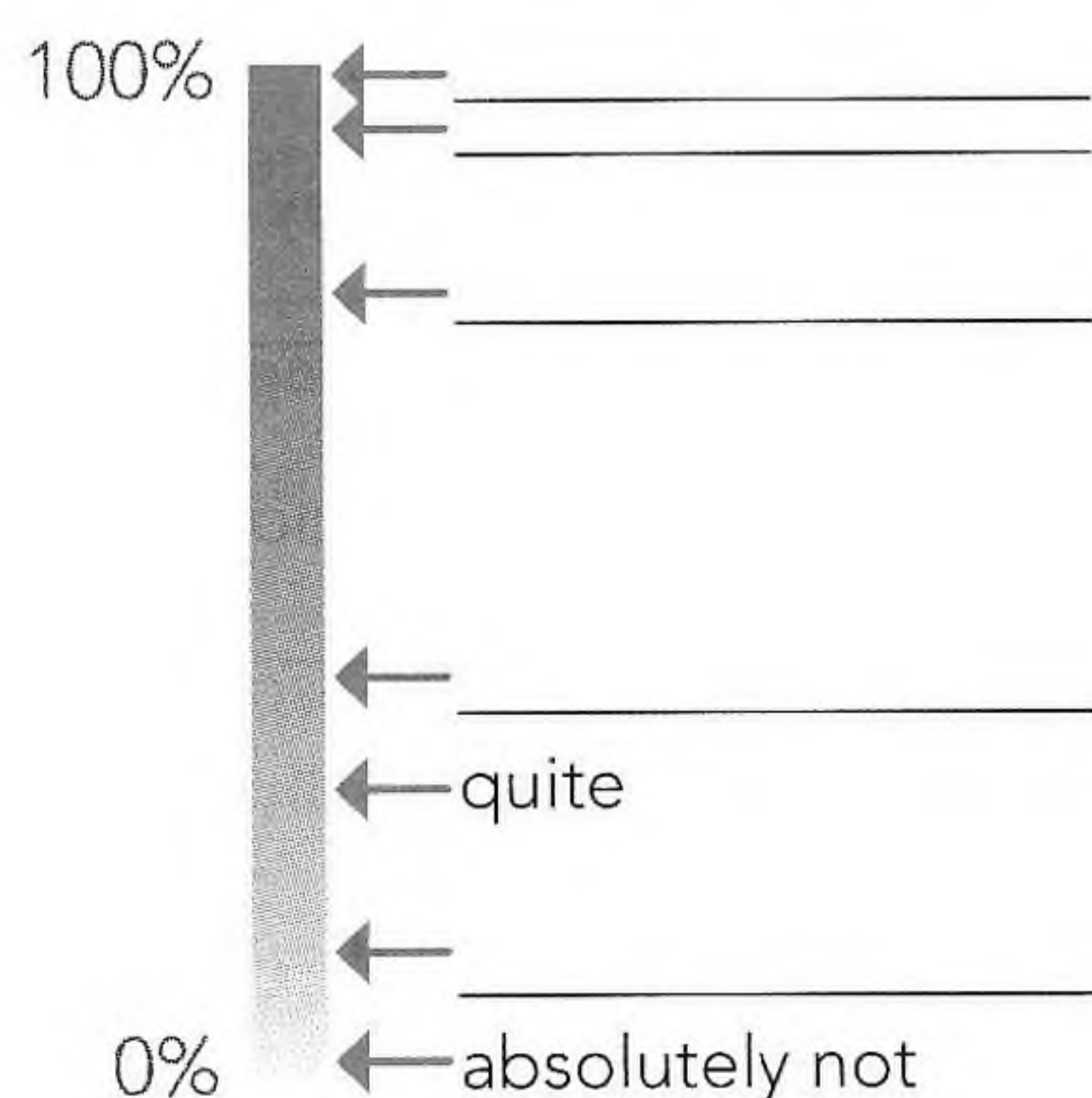
B: That's not true! Well, I mean, she's quite pretty, yes, but she's also a b_____ (very talented) journalist.

B: Who reports on skateboarding dogs ...

A: Don't you have some homework to do, Toby?

6 Write the modifiers in the box in the correct place on the line.

[absolutely not very rather really very]



7 Read the text and choose the correct options.

Telly Addicts: last night on the box

Here at Telly Addicts we thought last night's television highlight was definitely the ¹absolutely / rather fascinating BBC2 documentary *Icemen* about the lives of Iceland's fishermen. Some of the fishermen's stories were ²rather / absolutely sad, but ³very / absolutely interesting, and the shots of the Icelandic coastline were ⁴very / absolutely gorgeous.

Also worth watching was Channel 4's new quiz *What's Up?* which was presented by the ⁵extremely / absolutely talented Rosie Perks and her ⁶very / absolutely funny partner Richard Bond. Though many of the questions on the show are ⁷very / absolutely impossible to answer, we still found it ⁸really / absolutely entertaining from start to finish.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

8 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

1 Hello, everyone. I'm Serge Dupont. Today *Channel 8 News* is ___ live from outside the European Parliament.
 A broadcasting B rehearsing C auditioning

2 Next, a ___ of experts discuss the results of today's election in our Election Special.
 A contestant B panel C viewer

3 Katy, you're a world-famous ___. You sing, you dance, you act and now you've written a book. Is there anything you can't do?
 A performer B editor C producer

4 I've always wanted to ___ people. At school I used to tell jokes and sing songs in front of the class.
 A compete B present C entertain

5 And now a special celebrity Christmas ___ of *Who wants to be a Millionaire?*
 A entertainment B edition C competition

6 Big Don is an extremely ___ character. He's certainly not popular with viewers.
 A impossible B brilliant C unpleasant

7 If you ask me, the story has become ___ ridiculous. I think I'm going to stop watching this series.
 A very B extremely C absolutely

8 The news is very ___ on all the channels. It doesn't make much difference which one you watch.
 A identical B similar C awful

9 We finally watched *One Flew over the Cuckoo's Nest* last night. What an absolutely ___ film!
 A amazing B important C interesting

10 Remember the ___ where the monkey suddenly jumped out of the trees? I jumped a metre out of my seat.
 A series B scene C serial

/10

7.2 Grammar

Reported Speech – statements

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Put the words in the correct order to complete the conversation between Mum, Dad and Kristy.

D: Kirsty, please tell me we are not watching *The X Factor*.

K: You ¹ _____ (watch / said / could / I) it tonight.

D: No, I ² _____ (could / you / watch / said) it upstairs.

K: Dad!

D: What? The other day I ³ _____ (I / television / said / was / taking back / my) on Saturday nights. I want to watch the Grand Prix.

K: Mum! *The X Factor* has started!

D: Kirsty! Last Saturday night I ⁴ _____ (told / you / bought / I / had) a second television for exactly this kind of situation.

M: Oh. Did you ⁵ _____ (*The X Factor* / that / say / started / had)?

D: But ... the Grand Prix.

M: There's another television upstairs, Walter.

2 ★ Report the underlined statements.

0 Charles Sykes: 'Television is not real life. In real life people actually have to leave the coffee shop and go to real jobs.'

Charles Sykes said that television was not real life.

1 Ann Landers: 'Television has proved that people will look at anything rather than each other.'

Ann Landers said that _____ rather than each other.

2 Kevin O'Leary: 'Television is the most interesting hobby I have ever had.'

Kevin O'Leary said _____.

3 Margaret Mead: 'Thanks to television, the young are seeing history before it is censored by their elders.'

Margaret Mead said that thanks to television, _____ by their elders.

3 ★★ Match the underlined reporting verbs in the report with the definitions which follow.

Minister Embarrassed in Television Interview

Last night on *Channel 10 News* the Minister for Culture claimed that young people were happier these days than when he had been young. The journalist Mandy Striker pointed out that there was no real proof of that and politely suggested that happiness was very difficult to measure. The minister explained that his statement was based on meetings he had had with young people and parents in local schools in his area. He added that his own teenage children were also living full and happy lives. The minister then asked Ms Striker if this was reasonable evidence. Ms Striker replied that not all young people were as lucky as those who lived in the area where the minister lived.

- 0** gave a reason for something explained
- 1** said that something was true _____
- 2** answered _____
- 3** said more about something _____
- 4** told someone something that they didn't know or hadn't thought of _____
- 5** said something in an indirect way _____

4 ★★ ★ Read the statements and choose the correct reporting verbs. Then complete the reported statements.

0 'Honestly, please believe me, I really didn't know she was a drug dealer.'

The TV presenter suggested / claimed he hadn't known (not know) that the woman had been a drug dealer. He begged the court to believe him.

1 'In our opinion, the show isn't suitable for children.'

When a journalist asked why the show had been banned, the members of the panel added / replied that, in _____ opinion, it _____ (not be) suitable for children.

2 'Don't tell everyone, but maybe you should wait until next week. There's probably going to be a sale here.' I was in the electrical store a few weeks ago and the assistant winked at me and replied / suggested that the _____ week there _____ (probably/be) a sale _____.

3 'Leo can't have taken the car today. My car keys are still here.'

I was at Maggie's house last week when her car was stolen. I added / suggested that maybe Leo had taken it, but she said Leo _____ (not take) the car _____ day because _____ keys were _____.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Report the statements.

0 'I'll miss the last part of my favourite TV series tomorrow.' It was a long time ago, but I remember she said she would miss the last part of her favourite TV series the following day.

1 'We're going to be on television next week.' Two months ago, they said _____.

2 'I'm meeting your sister here later today.' We were in the café and Dad told me _____.

3 'We saw you both last month.' It was back in January when they told us _____.

4 'Your audition is cancelled.' We waited all day, then at 6 o'clock in the evening the organiser told us that _____.

5 'I'll see you tomorrow.' Six days ago she told him she _____, but then she never came back.

7.3 Listening language practice

Useful expressions • Synonyms • Words with two meanings

1 Read the extracts and complete the phrases in bold with the words in the box. Then listen and check.

common expression feel formula
himself laugh spans stupid

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•3.24 MP3•113

1 A viral video is a video that becomes popular very quickly through the Internet. People share the video through social media and email. There isn't a ⁰ formula for a viral video hit. But the most popular ones **have three things in** ¹ _____. Firstly, they're really short. People **have short attention** ² _____, especially when they're looking at websites, so the most successful viral videos are around three minutes long. Secondly, they engage your emotions; they may be funny, sad, shocking, entertaining or even extremely annoying, but they **make viewers** ³ _____ **something**. The third ingredient is story. Many of the most popular viral videos tell a simple story and the ones with an inspirational ending are the most memorable.

3 My favourite videos are the ones that **make you** ⁴ _____. It's usually because somebody **does something** ⁵ _____. For instance, there's a video of a man who dives into a frozen swimming pool. Well, I say he dives, but of course, he hits the ice and slides across the swimming pool. How can you be so stupid? [...] I couldn't believe it! And I love the one where a baby bites his brother's finger. The little brother puts his finger in his baby brother's mouth and, **surprise, surprise**, the baby bites it. I love **the** ⁶ _____ **on the baby's face – he's very pleased with** ⁷ _____.

2 Complete the sentences with words and phrases from Exercise 1. Change the verb forms if necessary.

- 0 People ask me what the formula for success is. I tell them it's hard work and good timing.
- 1 Viv loves spending time with Dave. He _____ her feel happy and relaxed.
- 2 I love visual comedy. It _____ me laugh more than any joke could.
- 3 Emma and Karen both got top marks in the test, so they were very _____ with themselves.
- 4 When Kieran heard he had won, the expression _____ his face was fantastic.
- 5 Danielle, I've _____ something really stupid. I forgot to pay the deposit and we've lost the booking.
- 6 Lindsay and I split up. We just didn't have anything _____ common.
- 7 This game is for children over six. Younger children's attention spans are too _____ to enjoy it.

3 Match the underlined adjectives in the extracts with their synonyms.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|--------------|-------|
| 0 happy | <u>pleased</u> | 4 foolish | _____ |
| 1 brief | _____ | 5 irritating | _____ |
| 2 amusing | _____ | 6 disturbing | _____ |
| 3 straight-forward | _____ | | |

4 Read REMEMBER THIS. Which meaning of *surprise*, *surprise* is used in extract 2 in Exercise 1?

REMEMBER THIS

The expression **surprise, surprise** can be used when something unexpected and pleasant happens.

I asked her out on a date and, surprise, surprise, she actually said yes!

In contrast, it is often used ironically, when someone has done something or something has happened that was very predictable and therefore is not a surprise.

He was late on Monday and Tuesday and, surprise, surprise, he was late again on Wednesday.

WORD STORE 7D

Words with two meanings

5 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C, to complete both sentences in each pair.

- 1 Gary, you've had four ___ singles this year and your album is number one in the charts.
I posted a video of myself dancing on Tumblr, but it hasn't had even one ___ so far.
A big B view C hit
- 2 Click on the ___ below for more information.
People have known about the ___ between smoking and health problems for decades.
A page B connection C link
- 3 The doctor said it was a ___ infection, so antibiotics wouldn't help.
This year's most popular ___ video on YouTube featured a talking dog.
A serious B viral C short
- 4 In my ___, most of the programmes on television are rubbish.
My website had a(n) ___ from someone in Alaska yesterday!
A opinion B view C hit
- 5 I wasn't very hungry, so I ___ my sandwich with Helen.
You ___ a photo on your profile. Click here to tag the people in the photo.
A shared B divided C split
- 6 Will you ___ this letter for me if you pass a box?
That is a hilarious video. I'm going to ___ it on Facebook.
A post B send C put

7.4 Reading

The story behind your TV set • Collocations • Phrasal verbs

Glossary

dial (n) = the wheel-like part of a radio or old-fashioned television that you turn to find a different station or channel

adjust (v) = to change or move something slightly to improve it or make it work better

The story behind your TV set

A

If your mum or dad were lucky enough to have a television in their bedroom when they were your age, they probably felt pretty cool, even if it was black and white, weighed about twenty kilos and had an antenna that looked like a metal coat hanger. ¹___ The technology of televisions has changed so quickly that it's



not surprising some of the most sophisticated features of the TV sets of the past seem rather silly these days. In this week's article, check out these old TV technologies, but while you are laughing, remember that many modern gadgets will seem just as ridiculous to the youngsters of tomorrow.

B

Stay tuned is something you still occasionally hear people on television say when they are really asking you not to switch off or change the channel. The phrase has lost its original meaning, which referred to 'tuning' early analogue televisions (adjusting them to get the best quality picture) by turning a big dial, or wheel, on the front. Later televisions had individual channel buttons, but for each button there was still a tuning dial located behind a little plastic door on the front of the set. These dials were often tiny and tricky to turn, so some manufacturers used to sell their sets with a little plastic stick that you would put into a hole and turn until the picture was clear enough to watch. ²___ Nowadays, thank goodness, televisions 'tune' themselves automatically.

C

When your parents were young, 'channel surfing' actually required physical effort because to change the channel, you had to stand up, walk across the room and press a button on the television. ³___ Eventually, remote controls were invented, but the first ones actually had a wire that stretched across the

1 Read the article. For questions 1–7, choose from the sections (A–E). You can choose each section more than once.

Which section mentions:

- 1 an activity that was unreliable?
- 2 a way of locating the correct channels?
- 3 one gadget that has replaced several other gadgets?
- 4 the weight of an early television?
- 5 a means of finding out what is on television?
- 6 a reminder that the gadgets we use today will continue to change?
- 7 a part of an early television that was not easy to use?

room from the remote to the television. Later more boxes appeared – video recorders, satellite tuners and so on – and with those came additional remote controls. Eventually, when it became impossible to open the living room door because of all the different remotes, universal controllers



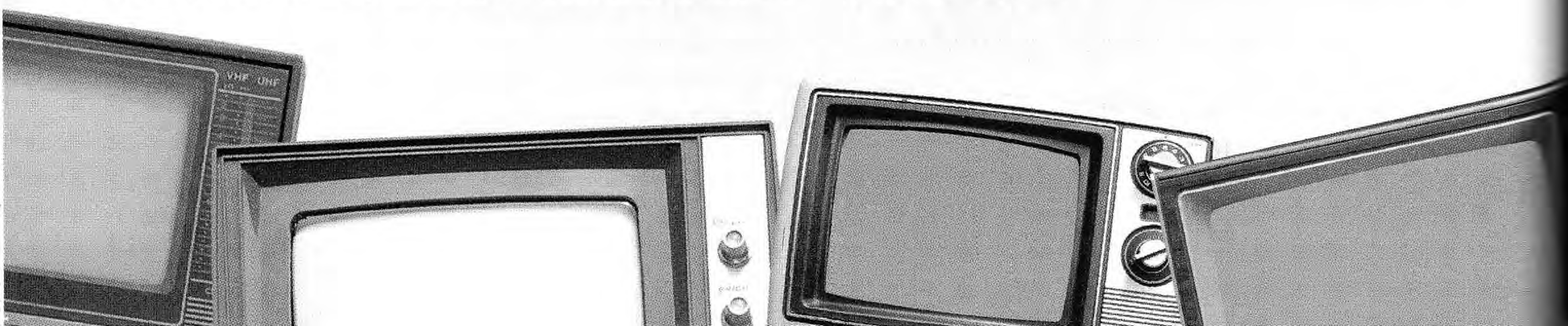
became popular and one small device could finally control all the different boxes in your living room! Now, with the help of the right app, it is becoming more and more common to use a mobile phone or tablet to control all the various media devices in your house, though some homes still have more remote controls than hands to operate them.

D

Not so many years ago, viewers had no choice but to wait a week for the next episode of their favourite TV programmes to be shown. ⁴___ It was not unusual for people to plan their week around the TV schedule and, if they were busy at the time of their favourite show, they either missed it or found space on a video tape, set the video recorder for the right time and hoped the tape didn't run out before the programme had finished. These days, TV schedules are still printed in magazines and some newspapers. However, they are much less significant because of 'catch-up' TV channels, on-demand Internet TV services such as Netflix or I-player and, of course, legal and illegal downloading.

E

Television and the technology associated with it is changing constantly and if you have children, by the time they are your age, flat-screen, HD and 3D will probably seem as silly and old-fashioned as black and white, two channels only and a coat hanger for an aerial.



2 Read the article again. Choose from the sentences (A–E) the one which fits each gap (1–5). There is one extra sentence.

- A If you lost this little tool, the entire set became useless.
- B These first colour television sets were extremely expensive.
- C People would check the weekly TV schedule in a magazine or newspaper and highlight the shows they really wanted to watch.
- D Now, just a decade or two later, most of us carry small, powerful, high-definition, full-colour, multi-media devices in our bags and pockets.
- E Actually, this wasn't such a big problem, because for a long time there were only two or three channels to choose from.

3 Match the underlined adjectives in the article with their synonyms below. Use a dictionary if necessary.

- | | |
|----------------------------|------------------------|
| 0 fortunate = <u>lucky</u> | 4 single = _____ |
| 1 important = _____ | 5 instant = _____ |
| 2 advanced = _____ | 6 contemporary = _____ |
| 3 more = _____ | 7 difficult = _____ |

REMEMBER BETTER

When you learn a new word or if you want to learn more about a word you already know, look it up in a dictionary and make a note of some common collocations in which it is used.

Complete each group of sentences with one of the underlined adjectives in the article.

- 0 a And the lucky winner of tonight's lottery is ticket number 459!
- b That was a(n) lucky escape. If we hadn't been late, we would've been on the train that crashed.
- c Did you really know the answer or was it a lucky guess?
- 1 a Jolanta thought number 7 was a particularly _____ question.
- b It's a bit of a(n) _____ situation. If I go to the party, I'll have to talk to my ex-boyfriend; but if I don't go, I won't see any of my friends.
- c For many young people, love can be a very _____ subject to discuss with parents.
- 2 a There has been a(n) _____ increase in the price of tropical fruit recently.
- b Obviously, there is a(n) _____ difference in the quality of the picture on a television which costs €1,000 and one which costs €100.
- c Environmentalists have noted _____ changes in the temperature of sea water in this area.
- 3 a In the _____ world most people have access to television.
- b Computers are an essential part of _____ life.
- c Have you been to the Museum of _____ Art?

WORD STORE 7E

Phrasal verbs

4 Complete the second sentence using the word in capitals so that it has a similar meaning to the first. Do not change the word in capitals.

- 0 I found an interesting vlog by a DJ the other day.

ACROSS

I came across an interesting vlog by a DJ the other day.

- 1 Jake became interested in skateboarding when he was four. **INTO**

Jake _____ skateboarding when he was four.

- 2 The bill for the school's new computer room totalled €26,000. **CAME**

The bill for the school's new computer room _____ €26,000.

- 3 The new smartphone did not match the telecommunications industry's expectations. **LIVE**

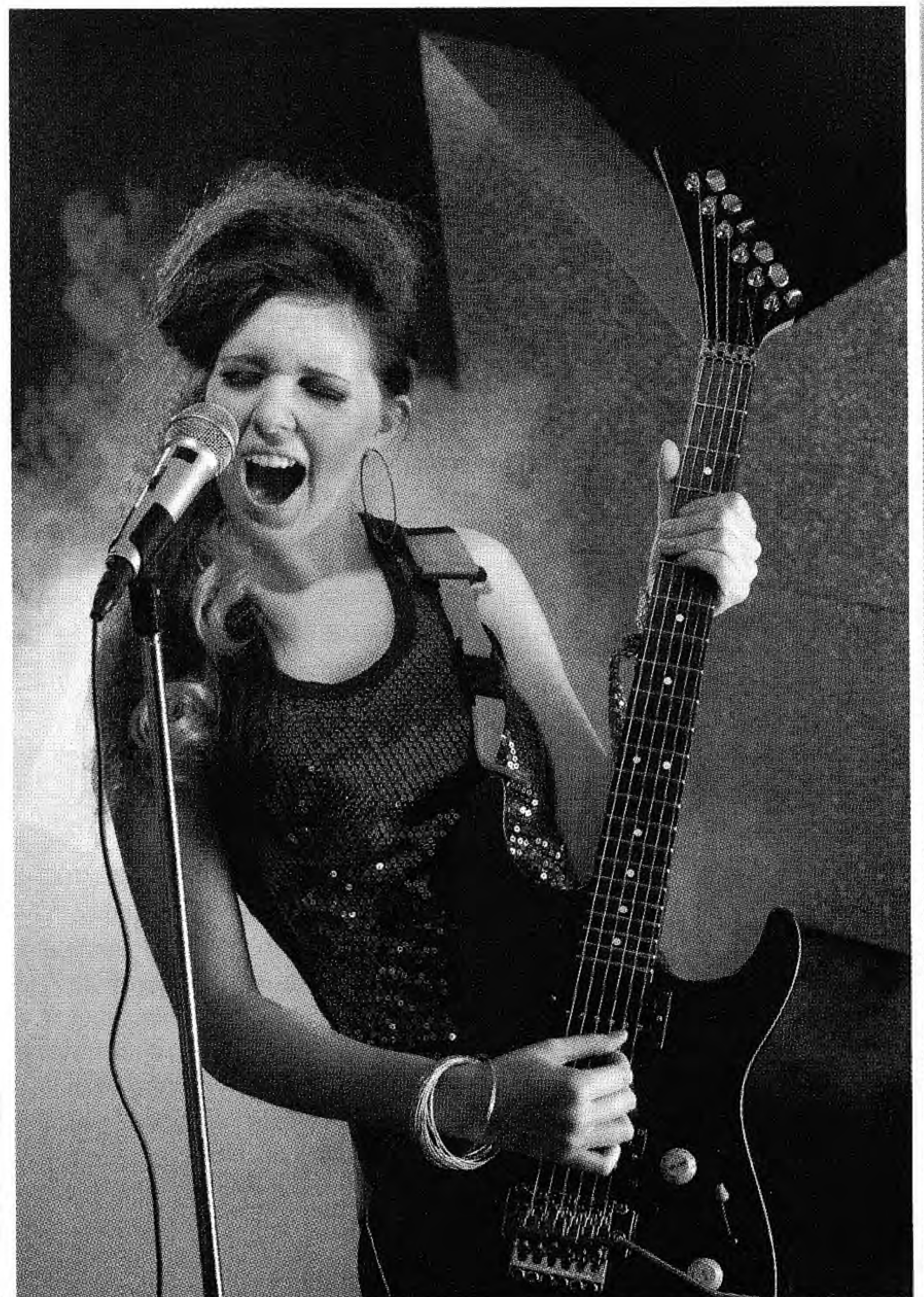
The new smartphone did not _____ the telecommunications industry's expectations.

- 4 If I don't continue to do the cleaning, the bathroom becomes too disgusting to use. **KEEP**

If I don't _____ the cleaning, the bathroom becomes too disgusting to use.

- 5 They really need to think of a new type of reality show. I'm so bored with singing competitions. **WITH**

They really need to _____ a new type of reality show. I'm so bored with singing competitions.



7.5 Grammar

Reported Speech – questions and imperatives

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Read Lori's answers and write her grandmother's questions.

G: ⁰ What are you going to wear to the end-of-term party?

L: I'm going to wear a black dress and high heels to the end-of-term party.

G: ¹ _____

L: I'm going with my friends and my boyfriend.

G: ² _____

L: Yes, I have got a boyfriend, Grandma.

G: ³ _____

L: I started seeing him last month.

G: ⁴ _____

L: Yes, he's good to me.

G: ⁵ _____

L: You're going to meet him at my birthday party.

2 ★ Katy is talking to her friend about a boy she met in a café yesterday. Read what the boy asked her and choose the correct options in the reported questions. Then match them with Katy's answers a–f.

Yesterday the boy said:

- 1 Do you come here often?
- 2 Can I buy you a coffee?
- 3 What is your name?
- 4 Have you got a boyfriend?
- 5 Where did you meet him?
- 6 What is he like?

Today Katy is telling her friend:

- 1 He asked me *did I go there / if I went there* often.
- 2 He asked whether he *can / could* buy me a coffee.
- 3 He asked me what *my name was / was my name*.
- 4 He asked me *did I have a boyfriend / if I had a boyfriend*.
- 5 He asked me where *I had met / did I meet* him.
- 6 He asked me *what was my boyfriend like / what my boyfriend was like*.

- a I said I had met my boyfriend at a friend's party.
- b I told him it was Katy.
- c I said he could buy me a coffee and also a cookie if he liked.
- d I told him my boyfriend was fantastic and I loved him.
- e I said I had a boyfriend, so he was wasting his time.
- f I said I went there most lunchtimes.

3 ★★ Look at Rosie's list and complete her conversation with her friend Poppy.

Horrible things my sister has said to me

<u>Monday</u>	<u>Tuesday</u>	<u>Wednesday</u>
1 Shut up!	3 Grow up.	5 Go away.
2 Don't annoy me.	4 Don't be stupid!	6 Stop writing lists!

P: How are things with your sister, Rosie? Are you still writing your list?

R: Yes, I am. I'll tell you. On Monday she ⁰ told me to shut up and ¹ _____ annoy her. On Tuesday she ² _____ grow up and ³ _____ stupid, and on Wednesday she ⁴ _____ go away and asked me ⁵ _____ lists.

P: Oh, Rosie. Poor you.

R: Yeah, she's pretty mean, but then she's got her exams coming up soon, so I have decided to forgive her.

4 ★★ Complete the reported questions and answers from Exercise 1. Use short forms.

0 Grandma asked Lori what she was going to wear to the end-of-term party.

Lori said she was going to wear a black dress and high heels.

1 She also asked her _____ to the end-of-term party with.

Lori said she _____ with her friends and boyfriend.

2 Then she asked her _____ a boyfriend.

Lori said she _____ a boyfriend.

3 Next, she asked her _____ him.

Lori said she _____ him the month before.

4 After that, she wanted to know _____ good to her.

Lori said her boyfriend _____ good to her.

5 Finally, she asked _____ meet him.

Lori told her grandma _____ meet him at her birthday party.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Report the questions and imperatives. Use short forms.

0 'Have you arrived safely?'

Mum called as soon as the plane landed and asked me if I had arrived safely.

1 'What was the flight like?'

She _____

2 'Have you been through passport control yet?'

Then she _____

3 'Did you remember to collect your luggage?'

She even _____

4 'Don't forget to change some money.'

Next, she _____

5 'How are you getting to your aunt and uncle's house?'

Still more questions! She _____

6 'Say hello to everyone from me.'

Finally, she _____

I'm looking forward to a little time away from home!

7.6 Speaking language practice

Asking for permission • Polite requests

1 Put the words in the correct order to form polite requests.

- 0 the channel / it / is / I / if / OK / change?
Is it OK if I change the channel?
- 1 here / mind / you / if / do / I / sit?

- 2 you / if / were / could / we / wondering / we / ask / a question?

- 3 toothbrush / I / can / your / borrow?

- 4 me / you / lend / could / your / bike?

- 5 mind / photograph / take / do / if / you / we / your?

2 Choose the correct options to complete the responses to the requests in Exercise 1. Then write G for giving permission or R for refusing permission.

- 0 *No problem / (I'm sorry) but I'm watching this programme.* R
- 1 *Yes / No, not at all. No one is sitting there.*
- 2 *Yes, that's fine / I'd like to help, but I'm rather busy at the moment.*
- 3 *Well, OK, I suppose so / not, although it's a bit disgusting.*
- 4 *Sure / Not at all, I don't see why not. Do you want to borrow my helmet too?*
- 5 *Yes, I do, actually / go ahead. I'm afraid I don't like being in photographs.*

REMEMBER THIS

Remember that after requests with *Do you mind if I/we ...* you say *no*, meaning 'No, I don't mind,' (i.e. it's OK) to give permission; you say *yes*, meaning 'Yes, I do mind,' (i.e. it's not OK) to refuse permission.

3 Complete the conversations with Yes, I do or No, I don't.

- 0 A: Do you mind if we leave early?
 B: No, I don't. You can leave whenever you want.
- 1 A: Do you mind if I call you Liz?
 B: _____ I'd prefer it if you called me Elizabeth.
- 2 A: Do you mind if the little ones watch television for a while?
 B: _____ We have some children's films they might be interested in.
- 3 A: Do you mind if we smoke?
 B: _____ But please go out onto the balcony and close the door.
- 4 A: Do you mind if I open the window?
 B: _____ You'll let the mosquitoes in if you do.

4 Complete the words in the conversations. Some letters are given.

Conversation 1: Alan and Driver

In a taxi:

- A: Excuse me, ⁰is it OK if I eat my sandwich in the taxi?
 D: ¹W_____, OK, I s_____ so. Actually, it smells very nice.
²C_____d I have a bite?
 A: Er ...

Conversation 2: Floyd and Majorie

In the shopping centre car park:

- F: Hi, sorry to disturb you, but you look like a very sweet old lady and I ³w_____ w_____ i_____ l c_____ ask you to watch my shopping while I go get some change for the parking machine. There are too many bags to carry down those stairs again and if I leave them here, I know someone will steal them.
 M: ⁴N_____, n_____ a_____ a_____, young man, you ⁵g_____ a_____.
 F: Really? How kind! You see, even though you are old, you are still useful. Back in two minutes!

Floyd leaves to get change.

M: Useful? Well, how rude!

Marjorie takes out her mobile phone.

M: Dorothy! Bring the car round quickly. We've got some extra free shopping today.

Conversation 3: Duncan and Mum

- D: Mum?
 M: Yes?
 D: ⁶D_____ y_____ m_____ i_____ I borrow your car tonight?
 M: ⁷S_____, I d_____ s_____ w_____ n_____.
 D: Really? Fantastic!
 M: There's hardly any petrol in it though, so you'll have to fill it up.
 D: No problem. Oh ... er, Mum?
 M: Yes?
 D: ⁸C_____ n I borrow some money?
 M: Well, Duncan, I'd like ⁹t_____ h_____ b_____ I think I gave you £20 yesterday, didn't I?
 D: Oh. Er, yes! Yes, of course you did, sorry. I'll use some of that.



7.7 Writing

A review of an event

1 Complete the puzzle with the following words.

- two adjectives which mean 'very bad' (2, 9)
- one adjective to describe nice tasting food (8)
- one modifier for base adjectives (7)
- one modifier for extreme adjectives (3)
- four adjectives which mean 'very good' (1, 4, 5, 6)

1	b			l	l				t
2	t				i	b		e	
3	a	b							y
4	a			z				g	
5	f			t	a	s			
6	l		v			y			
7	e	x		r				l	y
8	d		l		c				
9	a		f						

2 Read the article and put the paragraphs in the correct order (1–5). Then choose the best title.

A ____ B ____ C ____ D ____

- 1 The village anniversary
- 2 Last weekend was nice
- 3 A bright, beautiful and busy 400th birthday

3 Replace the underlined words in the article with more descriptive alternatives from Exercise 1. Use each word only once. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

4 You have seen this announcement on an international students' website.

Reviews wanted: Unusual school events!

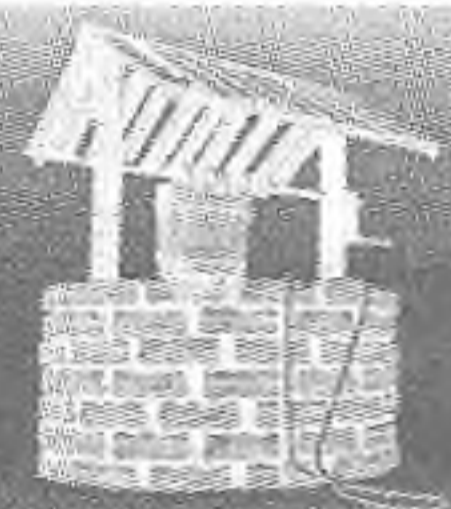
Has there been an interesting event at your school recently? Write a review of the event for the website, explaining what happened during the event, whether you enjoyed it and what changes you would suggest for the next time this event is held.

Write your review in 140–190 words.

SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my review of an event:

- I have begun with an interesting, funny or unusual title to attract the reader's attention.
- I have asked a question or given interesting facts in the introduction to hold the reader's attention.
- I have described the event using a variety of adjectives and modifiers.
- I have made my descriptions interesting by describing what I saw, heard, smelled and tasted.
- I have finished with a recommendation for the reader.
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.



Abbydalevillagenews.com

- A Saturday began with an early morning fun run. It was ⁰nice lovely weather and when the sun rose, the sky turned a(n) ¹very ____ pretty orangey-blue colour. When the runners reached the finish next to the abbey, the sun was already high in the sky, the music had started and the smell of ²nice tasting ____ food was everywhere.
- B Unfortunately, the traffic in the village was ³bad ____ . Trying to drive through the village was almost impossible and the sound and smell of the cars was ⁴bad ____ . Maybe next year one of the farmer's fields outside the village can be used as a car park.
- C It is not often you get to say, 'Happy 400th birthday!' but last weekend in our village that's exactly what we did. 400 years ago, a group of monks decided to build an abbey, or church, next to the river and our village grew up around it. The ruins of the abbey are still standing today and that's where the anniversary celebrations were held.
- D Except for the traffic, it was a ⁵nice ____ day. I think every town and village should have a day when they celebrate their community and its history.
- E By midday, everyone from the area was there enjoying the ⁶nice ____ sunshine. All around the ruins, there were colourful market stalls and people selling ⁷nice ____ local food. There were some great live bands and a(n) ⁸really ____ fabulous play which told the story of the village.

7.8 Use of English

Word formation

- 1 For questions 1–9, read the article below. Use the word given in capitals at the end of some of the lines to form a word that fits in the gap in the same line. There is an example at the beginning.

The history of television

The development of television is a long and ⁰*fascinating* story, as interesting as any of today's amazing programmes. A new ¹_____ film tells the story of television's history.

Paul Zimmer, the ²_____ of the film, explains: 'Most people agree that television has had a bigger effect on society than any other ³_____ in history, particularly on family life. No other form of ⁴_____ has changed people's lives more. I wanted television to tell the story of its own life, almost like an ⁵_____, not just as a list of things that happened. So the film shows recordings from some of the most ⁶_____ TV programmes ever made to show how TV has changed over time.'

'The really old programmes are my favourites,' says Paul. 'It was a very new technology, so the ⁷_____ weren't very good! They often forgot what to say! And because it was a new technology, there were very few ⁸_____ television broadcasters. They make today's mix of soap operas, ⁹_____ shows and sitcoms look absolutely brilliant!'

FASCINATE
DOCUMENT

DIRECT
INVENT
ENTERTAIN
BIOGRAPHY
IMAGINE

PRESENT
PROFESSION
REAL

Key word transformations

- 2 For questions 1–6, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence, using the word given. Do not change the word given. You must use between two and five words, including the word given. There is an example.

- 0 Do you like watching the latest programmes and films?

KEEP

Do you always keep up with the latest programmes and films?

- 1 It's a shame that I don't know how to vlog.

ONLY

If _____ to vlog.

- 2 I don't have enough money, so I can't go to the festival.

IF

I'd go to the festival _____ money.

- 3 Can I show the rest of the class your video?

WONDERING

I _____ show your video to the rest of the class.

- 4 The programme wasn't as good as I expected.

UP

The programme didn't _____ expectations.

- 5 Felix had a hit single ten years after he started playing guitar.

BEEN

Felix _____ ten years before he had a hit single.

- 6 'Don't try and play this music too fast!' the music teacher said to Fiona.

NOT

The music teacher _____ the music too fast.



7.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
7.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about and give my opinion about TV programmes.					Students' Book pages 84–85 Word Store page 15 Workbook pages 80–81
7.2	Grammar	I can report what other people said.					Students' Book page 86 Workbook page 82
7.3	Listening	I can understand the main points of a short monologue.					Students' Book page 87 Workbook page 83
7.4	Reading	I can find specific detail in an article.					Students' Book pages 88–89 Workbook pages 84–85
7.5	Grammar	I can report questions and imperatives.					Students' Book page 90 Workbook page 86
7.6	Speaking	I can ask for permission and make polite requests.					Students' Book page 91 Workbook page 87
7.7	Writing	I can write a review of an event.					Students' Book pages 92–93 Workbook page 88

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

7.10 Self-check

1 Choose the correct options.

- 0 We are proud to announce that the new judge on *The X Factor* viewer / panel / broadcast is ...
- 1 Some of the scenes in that new Jim Carey comedy are *absolutely* / *extremely* / *very* hilarious.
- 2 Miley Cyrus' new website received 4 million *hits* / *shares* / *links* in the first hour it was online.
- 3 The director tells the actors what to do and the *editor* / *performer* / *producer* is responsible for actually getting the film made.
- 4 Contestants in the new series will *view* / *compete* / *audition* for the chance to go into space on a commercial space flight.
- 5 I thought the final episode was *quite* / *absolutely* / *extremely* disappointing. Not terrible, but not as good as the rest of the series.

/5

2 Complete the sentences with words that have a similar meaning to the words in brackets. The first letter of each word is given.

- 0 It costs a lot to post (send) a parcel to England. It's cheaper to order online and get free UK delivery.
- 1 Amy s_____ (puts photos, videos, etc. online) videos and photos all day long. I don't think she actually does any studying!
- 2 Dylan c_____ a_____ (found) a video on YouTube that was exactly what he needed for his school project.
- 3 Lucy c_____ u_____ w_____ (thought of) an idea for a charity event.
- 4 Adam g_____ i_____ (became interested in) vlogging after reading about it online.
- 5 The latest edition of *Grand Theft Auto* really l_____ u_____ t_____ (matches) expectations. It's amazing.

/5

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

auditions edit ~~link~~ post
present rehearsal share viral

- 0 Click on the link to find out more about next week's episode of *Royal*.
- 1 If you would like to be in the school play, _____ will be held on Friday at 15.30 in the school hall.
- 2 OK, look into the camera and tell us what happened. Don't worry if you go wrong. We can _____ the film later.
- 3 Snoop Dogg and Steve Carell will both _____ awards at this year's MTV Movie Awards.
- 4 Visit our website to find all the latest _____ videos, watched by millions across the web.
- 5 Today's _____ showed that there is still a lot of work to do before we are ready to put on this play.

/5

4 Find and correct the mistakes in the reported statements.

- 0 TV presenter: 'Your show is the best I've ever seen.'
The TV presenter said the star that his show was the best he'd ever seen. told
- 1 Jo: 'I am watching a film, Ann.'
Jo told Ann I was watching a film. _____
- 2 Kim: 'I haven't seen the film yet.'
Kim told she hadn't seen the film yet. _____
- 3 Tim: 'I missed the show yesterday.'
Tim said he had missed the show yesterday. _____
- 4 Mollie: 'We'll meet here at six o'clock.'
Mollie said we'll meet there at six o'clock. _____
- 5 Ben: 'It can't be the same actor.'
Ben said it can't be the same actor. _____

/5

5 Read the conversation between Phil, the head of a Drama school, and Ruby. Then complete the reported questions and statements.

- | | |
|---|----------------------------|
| P: Do you really want to be an actress? | P: Have you studied Drama? |
| R: Yes, I do. | R: No, I haven't. |
| P: Are you sure? | P: Can you act? |
| R: I'm sure. | R: Yes, I can. |
| | P: Show me. |

- 0 He asked me if I really wanted to be an actress.
- 1 He asked me whether _____.
- 2 He asked me if _____.
- 3 I replied that _____.
- 4 He asked me whether _____.
- 5 And then he asked me _____.

/5

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

I took Grandma to buy a new TV last weekend. The shop assistant asked us what kind of TV we ⁰ interested in and Grandma ¹ she wanted a black and white TV that was square and had at least four channels. The assistant told her ² colour TVs and that they all ³ more than four channels. She said she wanted an absolutely ⁴ one to the old one.

In the end, we persuaded her to buy a little colour TV. Altogether, it came ⁵ £79.99, which I thought was good value, but Grandma thought it was 'ridiculous'. Now she loves her little TV and says it was worth every penny. 😊

- | | | |
|--------------------|------------------|----------------|
| 0 <u>A were</u> | B are | C have been |
| 1 A told | B said | C said him |
| 2 A they only sold | B they only sell | C we only sell |
| 3 A have had | B had had | C had |
| 4 A same | B identical | C similar |
| 5 A up to | B into | C to |

/5

Total /30

8.1 Vocabulary

Human qualities • Suffixes • Verb phrases

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Choose the correct options.

- 1 Could you really run into a burning building? Do you think you are *courageous* / *courage* enough to become a fire-fighter?
- 2 Most people show great *enthusiastic* / *enthusiasm* during their first few weeks as gym members. Unfortunately, for many people it doesn't last.
- 3 Be *honest* / *honesty* with yourself. Do you always treat other people the way you would like them to treat you?
- 4 I'd like to meet an intelligent and kind girl. *Modest* / *Modesty* is also important, I feel.
- 5 Diane is absolutely *determined* / *determination* to find a job as soon as she leaves school.
- 6 Jodie's aunt is extremely rich but not very *generous* / *generosity*. She only gave Jodie £5 on her birthday.
- 7 A *loyal* / *loyalty* fan doesn't stop supporting his team just because the team stops winning.
- 8 Since the new Prime Minister was elected, there has been a sense of *optimistic* / *optimism* in the country.

WORD STORE 8A

Suffixes – forming nouns

2 Complete the texts with the correct form of the words in brackets.

The Royal Society for the Prevention of ⁰*cruelty* (cruel) to Animals would like to thank you for your ¹_____ (donate) to our organisation. Your ²_____ (kind) is very much ³_____ (appreciate).

Thanks for looking after the cat while we were away. It's nice to have such ⁴_____ (help) people living in the ⁵_____ (neighbour). Let us know if we can do anything for you.

Choosing the right career

At The Job Centre, we always advise young people to try to find ⁶_____ (employ) which ⁷_____ (engage) them. Put simply, this means choosing a career that you find interesting rather than one which pays the highest salary.

3 Find and correct the mistakes in six of the sentences.

- 0 We got you this gift to show our appreciate for all your help this year. appreciation
- 1 The new sports equipment at our school was paid for with donate from local businesses. _____
- 2 Congratulations on your engage. We hope you'll be very happy together. _____
- 3 We employ young people during the school holidays because the theme park gets very busy. _____
- 4 The lady in the driving school office was useless. Helpful was not one of her qualities. _____
- 5 McQueen's new film explores the cruel of the slave trade. _____
- 6 Your stupid has got you into trouble again. I wish you'd behave like an adult for a change. _____
- 7 Many philosophers agree that friendship is one of the most important elements of happiness. _____
- 8 My neighbourhood had a barbeque on his balcony and someone called the police. _____

WORD STORE 8B

Suffixes – forming adjectives from nouns and verbs

4 Complete the adjectives in the conversations. The first letters of each adjective are given.

Conversation 1

DJ Dan: Hi, you're through to 101.5 Chorley FM on DJ Dan's phone-in show. Today's topic is celebrities. Hello on line 1! What's your name and what do you want to say?



Dave: Hi, I'm Dave. Personally, I find it hard to be ⁰*sympathetic* with celebrities and models who earn millions of pounds for doing very little and at the same time complain how ¹*stress*_____ their lives are. I think people like that are partly to blame for the ²*material*_____ and selfish society that we live in nowadays. I mean, they could have real problems and real stress in their lives. They could be ³*job*_____ or even ⁴*home*_____ and then they'd really know how hard life can be.

DJ Dan: Thanks, Dave. I'm sure a lot of our listeners will be nodding their heads in agreement with that comment. Who have we got on line 2?

Conversation 2

DJ Liv: Hi, you're through to Talk FM's *Late Night Love Line* with me, DJ Liv. Who would you like me to play a song for and why?

Tess: Hi, Liv, this is Tess. I'd like you to play a song for my boyfriend, Colin. It's our two-year anniversary today and he's the best boyfriend in the whole world. He's ⁵sensi _____, ⁶honour _____ and ⁷rel _____, and he bought me a very ⁸imagin _____ anniversary present.

DJ Liv: What was that, Tess?

Tess: A hot-air balloon ride.

DJ Liv: Wow! So you are not afraid of heights then?

Tess: Oh no. Colin said he wants to ask me a very important question when we are high up in the sky.

DJ Liv: Oh Tess! Is he going to ask you to marry him, do you think?

Tess: I'm not sure, but I'm ⁹hope _____.

DJ Liv: And what song would you like me to play for Colin, Tess?

Tess: *I Do, I Do, I Do, I Do, I Do* by Abba, please.

WORD STORE 8C

Verb phrases

5 Complete the advert with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

do give have help
make put take warm

Highfield Children's Home Could you help make a difference?

Highfield Children's Home is looking for teenage volunteers to ⁰help us out during the summer holidays. Contact with lively, positive young people always ¹_____ a smile on our children's faces and the chance to talk, play and spend time with another young person from outside the home can really ²_____ their day.

Maggie, a local teen who ³_____ us a hand last Christmas, had the following to say about her experience:

'I loved every minute I spent at Highfield. The kids were lovely and on my last day they sang a song to say goodbye, which really ⁴_____ my heart. I'd recommend the experience to any young person who wants to ⁵_____ a good deed and have a lot of fun at the same time.'



REMEMBER THIS

There are many expressions with the word *hand*. They're worth remembering because they are often used in everyday language.

6 Read the sentences and choose the option that has a similar meaning to the underlined phrases.

- 1 Could you hand me that bottle of water? *pass / buy*
- 2 First aiders are on hand to help anyone who injures themselves. *paid / available*
- 3 You can get some real bargains in second-hand clothes shops in England. *used / small*
- 4 I'm going to hand out the exam papers now, but please do not open them until I say so. *take in / give out*

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

7 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in brackets.

- 1 I spent hours helping him, but he didn't show any _____ (appreciate). Not even a thank you.
- 2 I'm looking for whatever _____ (employ) I can get. There aren't many summer jobs for teenagers here.
- 3 The man was found guilty of _____ (cruel) to animals and fined €5,000.
- 4 There's nowhere for young people to hang out in our _____ (neighbour), so we just meet in the car park.
- 5 There's no need to be so _____ (sense). I wasn't criticising you.
- 6 I will always buy this brand of phone. They are always so _____ (rely).
- 7 The most important characteristic to look for in a life partner is _____ (kind).
- 8 Please make a _____ (donate) to our charity event. It really is for a good cause.
- 9 How did you lose the car keys? I just can't believe your _____ (stupid)!
- 10 I've known Karen for twenty years – her _____ (friend) is really important to me.

8 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 1 If you've made a mistake, the ___ thing is to apologise.
A honourable B hopeful C imaginative
- 2 She's just so ___. All she thinks about is money.
A jobless B materialistic C sympathetic
- 3 What great news! You've totally made my ___!
A heart B hand C day
- 4 I try to ___ a good deed every day.
A do B give C make
- 5 Your story was lovely – it certainly put a ___ on my face!
A heart B deed C smile
- 6 You can't carry all those heavy bags, Mrs Ferguson. Shall I give you a ___?
A hand B face C heart

8.2 Grammar

The Passive

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- 0 YouTube was started (start) by an American, a Taiwanese and a Bangladeshi.
- 1 YouTube _____ (create) on Valentine's Day 2005.
- 2 The first video, called *Me at the Zoo*, _____ (not post) until April 2005.
- 3 Currently, around 100 hours of video _____ (upload) to YouTube every minute.
- 4 *Gangnam Style* by Psy _____ (watch) by billions of viewers since it was posted.
- 5 YouTube _____ (buy) by Google in 2006 for US\$1.65 billion.
- 6 A lot of money _____ (make) by people who have started successful YouTube channels.



2 ★ Choose the correct options to make passive sentences.

- 1 The crown jewels of England *have kept / have been kept* at the Tower of London since 1303.
- 2 *Will the student meeting be held / Will we hold the student meeting* in the cafeteria?
- 3 Until recently, prisoners in this jail *weren't being given / weren't giving* basic medical care.
- 4 Jennifer's dress *didn't design / wasn't designed* by Chanel. It's an Armani.
- 5 The plants are dying because they *aren't watering / aren't being watered* regularly.
- 6 *Are the school gates unlocked / Do they unlock the school gates* at eight every morning?

3 ★★ Read Kitty's message and complete the sentences with the correct passive forms.

Hi Henry,

Robin and I have finally organised everything for Nina's leaving party. We're not holding it at Big Mike's Burger Restaurant anymore because they are renovating the place that weekend. ☹️

Anyway, we have decided that we will hold it at Pizza Land instead (Nina's dad hasn't paid the deposit yet, but he promised to do it soon). Eatout.com recommends Pizza Land, so it should be OK. I invited James, but unfortunately, he can't make it. Everyone else has said yes, so there will be eleven of us. A mini-bus will pick everyone up from Robin's house at 6 p.m.

CU then. 😊

Kitty xx

- 0 Everything has been organised by Robin and Kitty.
- 1 The party _____ at Big Mike's Burger Restaurant.
- 2 Big Mike's Burger Restaurant _____ that weekend.
- 3 Instead, the party _____ at Pizza Land.
- 4 The deposit _____ by Nina's dad yet.
- 5 Pizza Land _____ by eatout.com.
- 6 James _____ by Kitty, but he can't make it.
- 7 Everyone _____ from Robin's house at 6 p.m.

4 ★★★ Rewrite the sentences in the passive. Change the verb form, then add a phrase with *by* + one of the phrases in the box.

the amateur theatre group the factory workers
the director and the editor the Kenyan runner
the nurse the Physics teacher

- 0 They produce 100 mobile phones per hour here.
100 mobile phones per hour are produced by the factory workers here.
- 1 We are performing *Les Miserables* this year.
_____ this year.
- 2 She injected me with a steroid.
_____ with a steroid _____.
- 3 They were editing the film at the studio.
_____ at the studio _____.
- 4 He has broken the marathon world record again.
_____ again.
- 5 She will give out the exam papers in five minutes.
_____ in five minutes.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Complete the notices with the correct passive form of the verbs in brackets.

- 1 **Tomorrow at 2 p.m. the water _____ (turn off) for half an hour.**
.....
- 2 The swimming pool _____ (clean) at the moment and will reopen in twenty minutes.
.....
- 3 My bike _____ (steal) from here last night.
Please call 409 709 if you saw or heard anything.
.....
- 4 **RUBBISH _____ (COLLECT) ONCE A WEEK ON A THURSDAY MORNING.**
.....
- 5 **This week's prize _____ (not collect) yet. Please check your ticket and contact us if you are the winner.**
.....
- 6 The council removed the recycling bins from this location as they _____ (use). Your nearest bins are now at the end of Pope Street.

8.3 Listening language practice

Interview with a young offender • Verb-noun collocations

- 1 Read the extract from an interview with an ex-offender and choose the correct verb patterns for the verbs in bold a–g.

Extract from Students' Book recording CD•3.39 MP3•128

- A: Is it true that some young offenders **a**like *be / being* in prison because they have a better life inside than outside?
- B: Yeah. That's definitely true. One of my mates was homeless **1**___ he came **2**___ prison. He was worried **3**___ being released – **4**___ prison he got food and clean clothes and a warm cell. Outside, he was living in a box **5**___ the street. The day he was released, he walked **6**___ the prison car park and smashed the windows on five cars in the car park. He was back here **7**___ a few days.
- A: Hm, well, that brings me to another point. The government **b**want *to improve / improving* conditions in young offenders' prisons. But some people say that this is wrong. They say that these are young people who have committed crimes and they **c**should *to be punished / be punished*. One prison guard said, 'They have education, they have a gym and television – it's like a holiday camp!' What do you say to that?
- B: But it's not a holiday camp – we can't see our friends or our family. Doors are locked. I don't want to go back there. If you want young people to change, you **d**can't *lock / to lock* them in a cell and **e**expect *them changing / to change*. You **f**have to *educate / educating* them and **g**make them *believe / to believe* that there is a better life in front of them. Simple as that.



- 2 Read the interview again and choose the correct answer, A, B or C, for gaps 1–7.

- | | | |
|-----------|----------|----------|
| 1 A after | B before | C during |
| 2 A onto | B by | C into |
| 3 A about | B for | C of |
| 4 A on | B to | C in |
| 5 A by | B on | C along |
| 6 A into | B in | C on |
| 7 A with | B before | C in |

- 3 Listen and check your answers to Exercises 1 and 2.

- 4 Use the prompts to complete the prisoners' words.

- 0 (should/be)
You should be very careful who you talk to. There are some very dangerous men in here.
- 1 (not want/leave)
I _____ prison because outside I'll be homeless, jobless and penniless.
- 2 (not expect/anyone/visit)
Well, I really _____ me now while I'm in here. I never had any friends and my family don't speak to me after what I did.
- 3 (have to/spend)
Most days, we _____ twenty-two hours in our cells. We only come out for meals and exercise.
- 4 (make/us/clean)
The prison guards _____ our cells every morning last week.
- 5 (like/share)
Nobody in here _____ a cell. One of the worst things about prison life is the lack of privacy.
- 6 (can't /remember)
I've been locked up for so long that I _____ what it feels like to be free.

WORD STORE 8D

Verb-noun collocations

- 5 Complete each pair of sentences with the correct form of one of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

[break commit make offer
release spend take]

- 0 a You broke the rules of the game, so you have to go back to the beginning.
b My mum says she has never broken the law in her life.
- 1 a The US government is _____ a reward of \$1,000,000 for information leading to the arrest of the head of the terrorist organisation.
b Joanne spent so much time at the ice rink that they _____ her a job during the holidays.
- 2 a An English mass murderer known as The Yorkshire Ripper _____ thirteen murders in five years before he was finally caught.
b Many people don't realise they are _____ a crime when they download music or films illegally.
- 3 a It is unlikely that this man will ever be _____ from prison. He is simply too dangerous.
b They are _____ my grandad from hospital this week, so we're going to visit next weekend.
- 4 a I seem to be very good at _____ a fool of myself in front of my girlfriend's parents.
b The judge gave the maximum prison sentence to Mr Barnes in order to _____ an example of him to other potential drunk-drivers.

8.4 Reading

The Shawshank Redemption • Definitions • Collocations with make

Glossary

- redemption** (n) = formal saving someone or being saved from evil
theatre company (n) = a group of actors, dancers or singers who work together
require (v) = need
commitment (n) = uncountable the hard work and loyalty someone gives to an organisation, activity, etc.

1 Read the article quickly and choose its aim.

- 1 to describe a film and give an update on its star's current work
- 2 to describe a film which shows what life is like in modern prisons
- 3 to describe a film in which prisoners were used as actors

2 Read the article again and choose from the sentences (A–E) the one which fits each gap (1–4). There is one extra sentence.

- A Now, more than twenty years later, Robbins is back in prison.
- B Since 2008, it has been the number one film on the well-known film review website IMDB (Internet Movie Database).
- C This is probably because the film was released at the same time as *Forrest Gump* and *Pulp Fiction*.
- D Robbins also described the success of the lessons, which have been taken by more than 300 prisoners.
- E It would ruin the film to give any more details of the story here.

Filmfocus.org

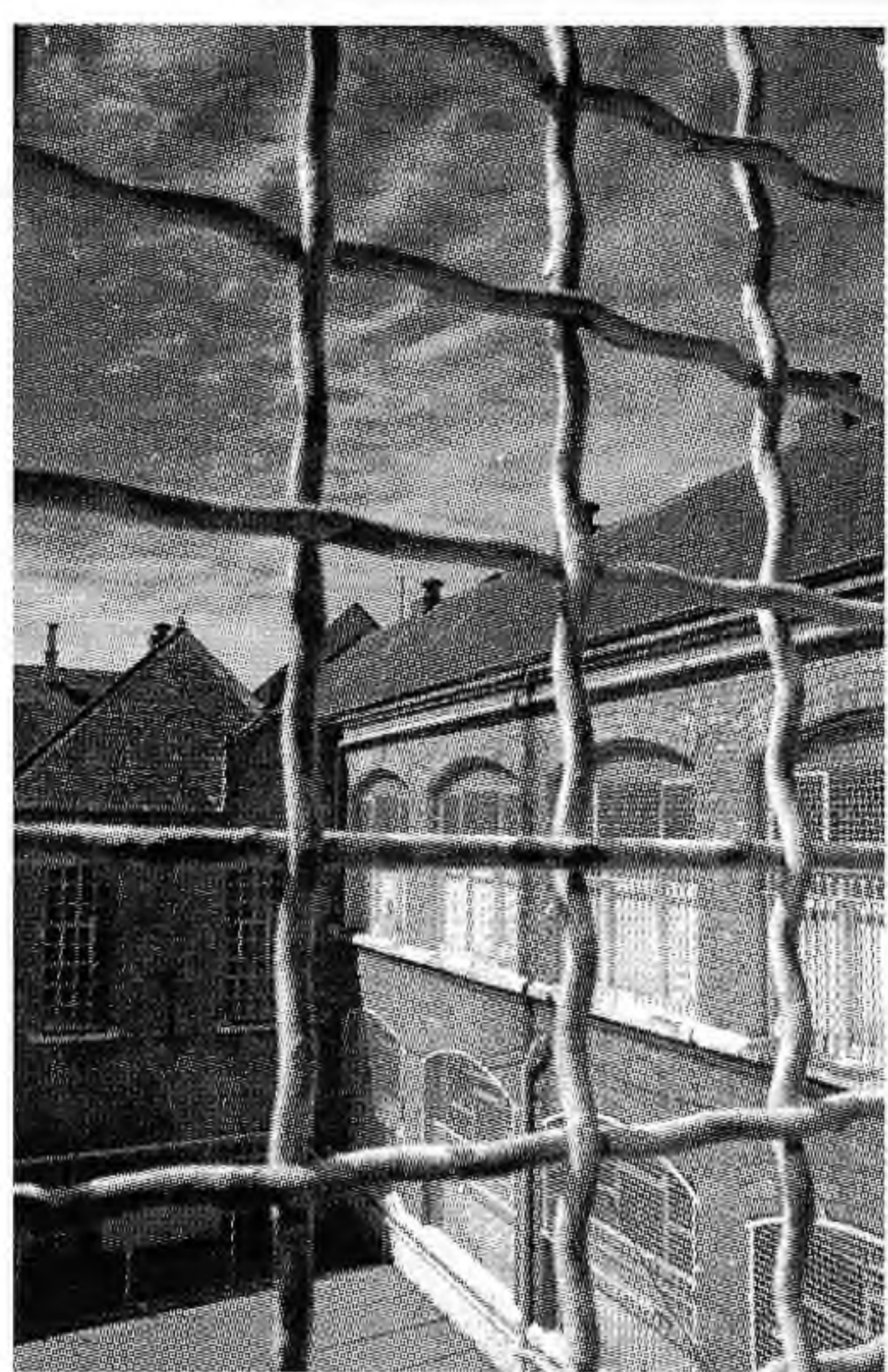
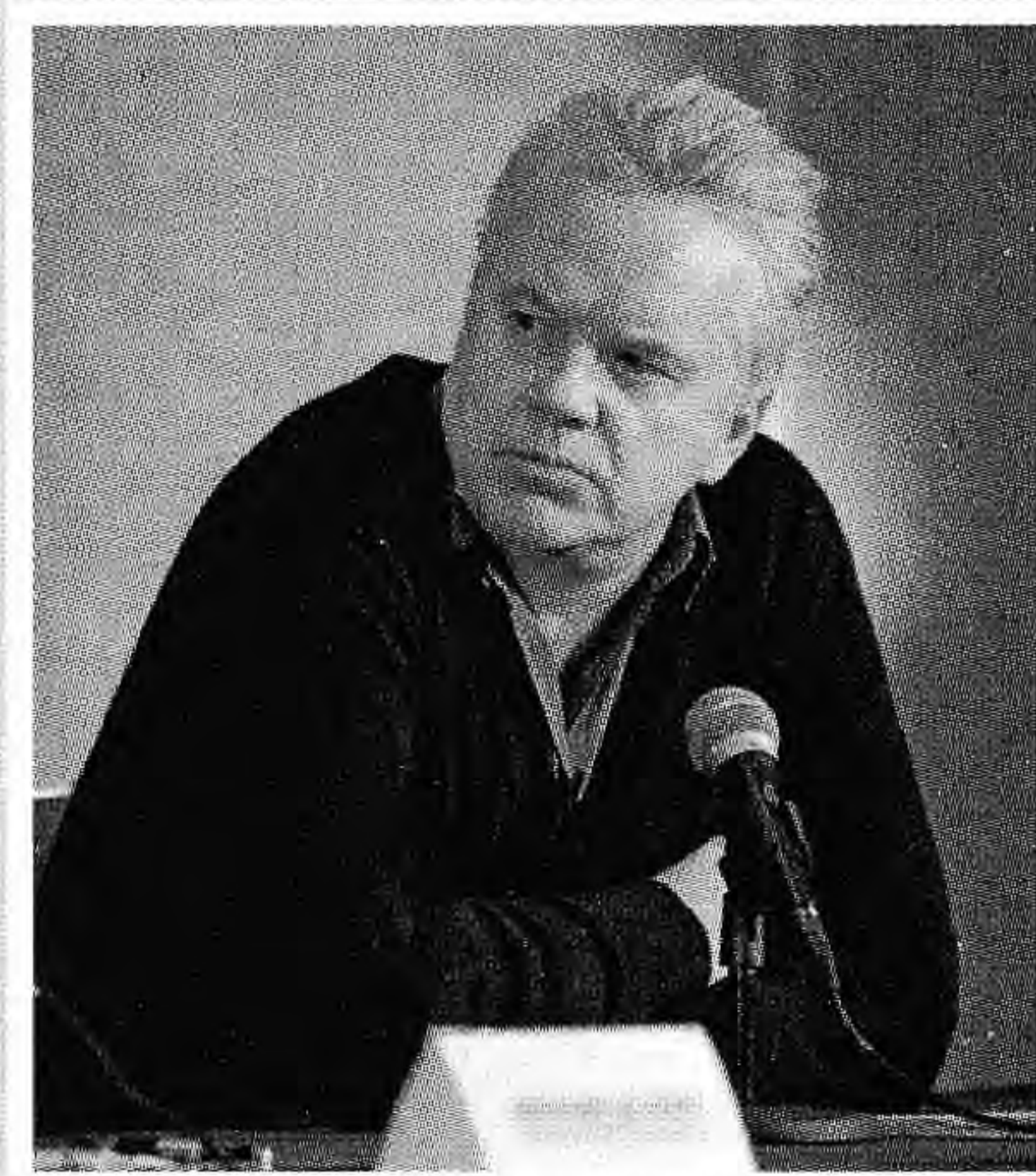
A portrait of life inside

According to many viewers and critics, *The Shawshank Redemption* is one of the greatest films ever made. It is a prison-drama adapted from a short story by Stephen King and in the mid-nineties it was nominated for seven Oscars, including Best Actor and Best Picture. Although it is set behind bars, it tells a heartwarming story. It did not make a lot of money when it was first shown in cinemas, but it is now loved by audiences around the world. ¹ ___ This puts it one place above Francis Ford Coppola's classic mafia movie *The Godfather*.

Set in the 1940s, *The Shawshank Redemption* tells the story of Andy Dufresne, a young and successful banker who is convicted of the murder of his wife and her lover and sentenced to life imprisonment in Shawshank Prison. Over the years, Andy, played by actor Tim Robbins, learns to adapt to life in prison with the help of his friend Red, an older convict, played by Morgan Freeman. ² ___ However, it won't spoil it to say that the plot shows the power of hope, courage and determination, even in situations that seem cruel and hopeless.

The Shawshank Redemption was filmed in the early nineties, and to prepare for his starring role, Tim Robbins spent time locked up alone in a real prison cell. ³ ___ Thankfully, he is not there as an inmate this time, but as a teacher who gives acting lessons to prisoners in a medium-security jail in California. The project has been running for several years with the help of a theatre company called The Actor's Gang, which was started by Robbins in the 1980s. In an interview with CBS news, Robbins explained that the opportunity to act provides prisoners with a break from the prison routine and a chance to explore new emotions and new realities.

When he was asked whether prisons should be offering such enjoyable activities to inmates who have been found guilty of serious crimes, Robbins replied, 'It's not a good time. It's tough work they're doing. It's physically demanding and it requires discipline. We want full commitment from them and it takes a lot of courage.' ⁴ ___ He said that none of the prisoners who completed the programme had reoffended and returned to prison after they were released.



3 Read the article again. Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 1 According to the article, *The Shawshank Redemption* is the greatest film ever made.
- 2 *The Shawshank Redemption* was directed by Francis Ford Coppola.
- 3 In the film, Andy is found guilty of an extremely serious crime.
- 4 *The Shawshank Redemption* is set in the 1990s.
- 5 Tim Robbins is a prisoner in a jail in California.
- 6 Robbins is now helping prisoners learn a new skill.
- 7 Robbins wants to help prisoners enjoy their time in prison.
- 8 The lessons have had a positive effect on prisoners after their release.

4 Match the underlined words in the article with their definitions.

- 0 two informal phrases meaning 'in prison'
inside, behind bars
- 1 two phrases meaning 'prisoner'

- 2 another word for 'prison' _____
- 3 found guilty of a crime _____
- 4 sent to prison for life by a judge

- 5 a small room in which prisoners are locked

- 6 let out of prison _____
- 7 committed another crime after leaving prison

REMEMBER BETTER

In addition to translations of useful words and phrases in your vocabulary notes, try to write simple definitions in English if you can. This will help you increase your range of vocabulary and encourage you to think in English, not your own language.

A Complete the definitions with the words in the box.

[allergy discuss earthquake flowing group
help money plants river wall wave]

- 0 tsunami a giant wave caused by an earthquake under the sea
- 1 panel a(n) _____ of people who _____ or judge something
- 2 dam a special _____ built across a(n) _____ or stream to stop the water _____
- 3 hay fever a(n) _____ caused by trees and other _____
- 4 donate give something, especially _____, to _____ other people

B Choose other words from the Word Stores in the Students' Book and write definitions in English.

WORD STORE 8E

Collocations with *make*

5 Put the words in the correct order to form sentences.

- 0 smell / made / cooking / Viola / the / of / bacon / hungry
The smell of bacon cooking made Viola hungry.
- 1 low-energy light bulbs / makes / company / my / dad's

- 2 easier / to predict / where and when / will strike / makes / it / hurricanes / modern meteorology

- 3 makes / the starting gun / a loud noise / and / begins / the race

- 4 his / the customs officer / bag / open / made / Matthew



6 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. There are four extra words.

[cough effort excuse faster
nervous pilots seats stay walk]

- 0 The new motorway may not be good for the environment, but it makes the journey to Grandma's house much faster.
- 1 Mr Jenkins made us _____ behind after class until we could manage three minutes without laughing. We were there for half an hour.
- 2 Emma was late again, so she made a(n) _____ – something about the roads being busy. No one really believed her, but she didn't care very much.
- 3 This factory is where they make the _____ for seventy-five percent of the world's aeroplanes.
- 4 Just the thought of the auditions for the school play made Harry _____.

8.5 Grammar

have something done

SHOW WHAT YOU KNOW

1 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

carry ~~cut~~ fix massage
pierce redecorate whiten

- 0 Dean cut his own hair. It looked terrible.
1 Gosia _____ her own teeth. After two weeks she couldn't see any difference.
2 Mike attempted to _____ his own back. He couldn't reach.
3 Marta wanted to _____ her own ears. She wasn't brave enough.
4 George tried to _____ his own computer. He made it worse.

2 ★ Read the sentences about the people in Exercise 1 and choose the correct options. Then complete the gaps with the words in the box. There are two extra words.

body piercer dentist doctor ~~hairstylist~~
masseurse mechanic technician

- 0 Now, Dean *cuts his hair / has his hair cut* by the hairstylist.
1 Next time, Gosia *is going to have her teeth whitened / is whitening her teeth* by the _____.
2 Mike *didn't have his back massaged / didn't massage his back* by the _____.
3 Why didn't Marta *pierce her ears / have her ears pierced* by the _____?
4 After he failed to do it himself, George *fixed his computer / had his computer fixed* by a _____.

3 ★★ Look at the list and complete the sentences with the correct form *have/get something done*.

Paris' beauty list

Every week:

- 0 hair washed and styled (get)
1 nails painted (get)

Last month:

- 2 eyebrows shaped (have)
3 legs waxed (get)

Next month:

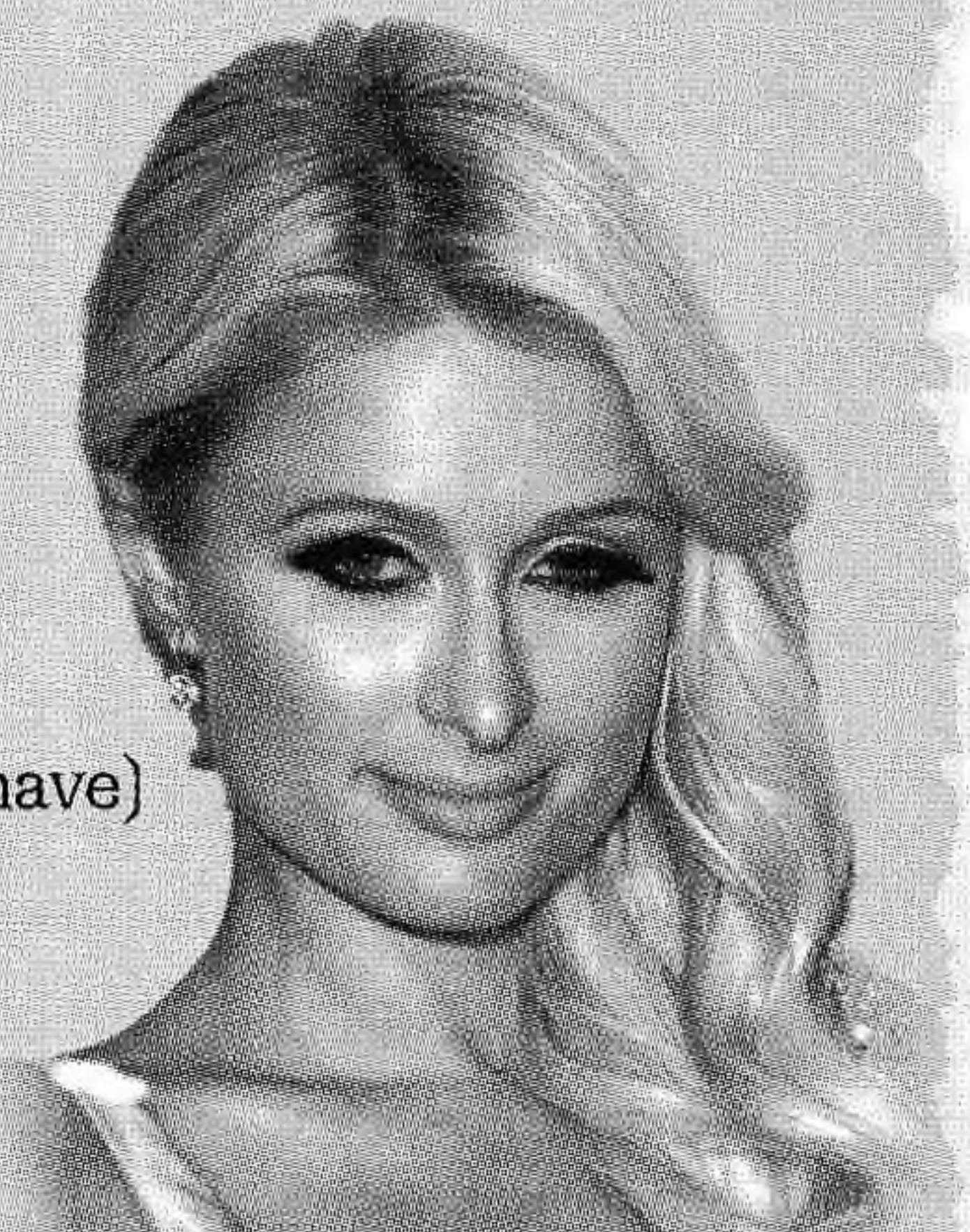
- 4 back massaged (have)

Already done this year:

- 5 tattoo removed (already/have)
6 skin treated (have)

Still to do:

- 7 teeth whitened (have)



- 0 Paris gets her hair washed and styled every week.
1 Paris _____ every week.
2 Last month she _____.
3 Did she _____ last month?
4 Next month she _____.
5 She _____ this year.
6 Has she _____ this year?
7 She _____ yet this year.

4 ★★ Complete the conversation with the correct form of *have something done*.

- A: Today in the studio we have teenage author Clara Dickens, whose book *Bringing up my Parents* became a bestseller. Clara, has success changed you?
B: Well, I guess I'm the same person. I have the same friends and go to the same school and still work hard. I mean I don't have my homework done (not do/ my homework) for me or anything, but yes, in some ways life is different now.
A: How is it different?
B: Well, I'm not like a big Hollywood celebrity or whatever, I mean I ¹ _____ (not have/plastic surgery) or anything, but I'm into fashion and stuff, so since my success, I ² _____ (make/some nice clothes). Oh, and I also have very big feet, so I used to find it difficult to find shoes that fit, but now I ³ _____ (design and fit/my shoes) especially for me.
A: Are your parents sharing in your success?
B: Well, I couldn't have done it without them, so I wanted to thank them, of course. At the moment, we ⁴ _____ (redecorate/our house), and Mum is going to the dentist regularly because she ⁵ _____ (completely redo/her teeth). Dad likes old motorbikes, so he ⁶ _____ (build/a new garage) for his bikes.
A: Great. So let's talk about your new book ...

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of *have something done*.

- 0 We changed the locks after the burglary.
We had the locks changed after the burglary.
1 Fiona colours her hair green every year for St Patrick's Day.
Fiona _____ every year for St Patrick's Day.
2 Isobel is piercing her nose on Friday.
Isobel _____ on Friday.
3 In the end, Scott didn't tattoo a picture of his mum on his back.
4 In the end, Scott _____ on his back.
Linda and Beth don't whiten their teeth.
Linda and Beth _____
5 Are your uncle and aunt redecorating their kitchen at the moment?
Are your uncle and aunt _____ at the moment?
6 Have you repaired your bike yet, Paul?
Have you _____ yet, Paul?

8.6 Speaking language practice

Opinions: talking about advantages and disadvantages

1 Put the words in A and B in the correct order to make phrases. Then choose the correct phrase to complete the conversations.

0 A thing / my / ... isn't / all / at ... isn't my thing at all

B is ... / I / what / mean what I mean is ...*

Mark: I want to lose some weight and get fit.

Molly: Why don't you start running? It's cheap and easy.

Mark: In this cold weather? Are you joking? Running in the winter A.

1 A benefit / another / that ... / is _____

B advantage / the / of ... / main _____

John: ___ learning to drive is the independence it gives you.

Sarah: Yes, but lessons and cars are both expensive!

2 A lot / there / drawbacks / too / are / a / of _____

B think ... / be / to / I / don't / honest, _____

Beth: It must be great living in the city centre, so close to all the shops and cafés and stuff.

Anne: Well yes, but I'm sure ___. For example, it's probably really noisy at night.

2 Complete the words in the conversation. The first letter of each word is given.

A: I've decided I want to ⁰do something to help other people, Leah. The thing is I don't know what I could do. Have you got any ideas?

B: Well, ¹y ___ ^r ___ ^g ___ ^a ___ making conversation. Why don't you volunteer to call on an elderly person and chat to them? You've always got something to say.

A: Are you saying I talk too much?

B: Ha ha! You? Talk too much? Of course not. Seriously though, I think you'd be really good at it. ²I ___ ⁿ ___ patient ^e ___ myself. It wouldn't be my thing. ³I ___ ^r ___ organise a sale to raise money for charity or something.

A: ⁴T ___ ^b ___ ^h ___ , I ^t ___ I'd prefer to do that too. We could do it together. We could cook something and sell it during lunch break at school.

B: Cool. Actually, I talked to Katy and Sally about this yesterday and they ⁵w ___ ^r ___ ⁱ ___ the idea too. The four of us could bake some cakes and organise a sale together.



3 Complete the sentences with the singular or plural form of *advantage*, *disadvantage*, *benefit* or *drawback*. In each group of sentences, use each word no more than twice.

1 One benefit of being an only child is that you get all your parents' time and attention.

One of the main _____ is that you don't have another young person to play with or talk to at home.

Another _____ is that your parents might be overprotective because they only have one child.

Another _____ though is that you don't have to share a room with your brother or sister.

2 There are _____ to single-sex schools. For example, teenagers are less distracted by the opposite sex while they are at school and tend to study more effectively as a result.

One of the main _____ of single-sex schools is that boys and girls don't learn about their differences and similarities.

Another _____ is that exam results are usually better in single-sex schools.

One _____ is that one of the joys and challenges of being young is interacting with the opposite sex.

4 Put the statements in the correct order.

a There are a lot of advantages to owning a dog.

b There are drawbacks too.

c Another drawback of owning a dog is that vet's bills can be very expensive.

d The main benefit is having company.

e One of the main disadvantages is that someone has to look after it if the owners go away.

f Another advantage is exercise from daily walks.

5 Read the conversation and choose the correct options.

Lena: In my ¹*opinion / meaning*, there are a lot of ²*drawbacks / benefits* to being a man. For example, one of the main ³*disadvantages / advantages* is that it is easier for men to get highly-paid jobs.

Joey: I guess so, though in ⁴*fact / honest*, I think that is slowly changing, isn't it? ⁵*How / What* I mean is there are more well-paid and high-powered women than there used to be.

Lena: Well, yes, but to be ⁶*true / honest*, I think there is still a long way to go.

Joey: I'm sure you're right, but it's not all great being a man, you know. There are ⁷*drawback / drawbacks* too.

Lena: For example?

Joey: Er ... well, we have to shave every morning.

Lena: Oh poor you! It must be awful. And you could cut yourself. How do you cope?

Joey: Are you being sarcastic, Lena?

Lena: Me? Never!

8.7 Writing

An opinion essay

1 Complete the linkers in the phrases. Some letters are given.

- 0 To **begin** with, I think it's wrong to suggest ...
- 1 I **w** ___ **d** like to **p** ___ **t** **o** ___ **t** that not everyone feels the same about ...
- 2 For **i** ___ **e**, there are currently several female Prime Ministers who ...
- 3 It **s** ___ **s** to me **t** ___ **t** we need to change our attitude towards ...
- 4 **L** ___ **y**, we must not forget that ...
- 5 In **s** ___ **y**, if we are really serious about saving the planet, then ...
- 6 **P** ___ **t** another **w** ___ **y**, it is not acceptable for children to ...
- 7 **M** ___ **r**, such changes would also benefit ...

2 Choose the correct options to complete the functions. Then match them with the linkers in Exercise 1.

- a give / introduce body paragraphs
- b give personal examples / opinions
- c give examples / paragraphs
- d add further support / point
- e emphasise / introduce a point by repeating it
- f introduce / repeat the conclusion

3 Read the essay quickly and decide which question the student has answered.

- 1 Are women better parents than men?
- 2 Do children really need both a mother and a father to bring them up?
- 3 Which of your parents had the biggest influence on you as a child?

Like many people, I was raised by both my parents. **As far as I'm concerned** ⁰ *it seems to me that* men and women may influence their children differently, but it is incorrect to suggest that women are better parents than men.

First of all ¹ ____, the physical connection between mother and child is often stronger than with the father. However, **in my view** ² ____, this does not mean she is a better parent. For instance, fathers who hold and bathe their babies also develop strong physical bonds with them. **In addition** ³ ____, many babies are bottle-fed meaning that a father can feed his child just as well as a mother.

Next, I would like to point out that although women often spend more time with young children, this does not necessarily make them better parents. **For example** ⁴ ____, if the father stayed at home, he could look after the child just as well as his partner.

Finally ⁵ ____, both parents can be good role models. Girls will probably learn more about being female from their mother, but the opposite is also true. **In other words** ⁶ ____, boys will probably

4 Read the essay again and replace the words in bold with linkers from Exercise 1. Sometimes more than one answer is possible.

SHOW WHAT YOU'VE LEARNT

5 In your English class you have been talking about parents' responsibility for their children. Now your teacher has asked you to write an essay. Write your essay using all the notes below and give reasons for your point of view.

Should parents be punished for their children's bad behaviour?

Notes

- unfair
- ineffective
- _____ (your own idea)

Write your essay in 140–190 words.

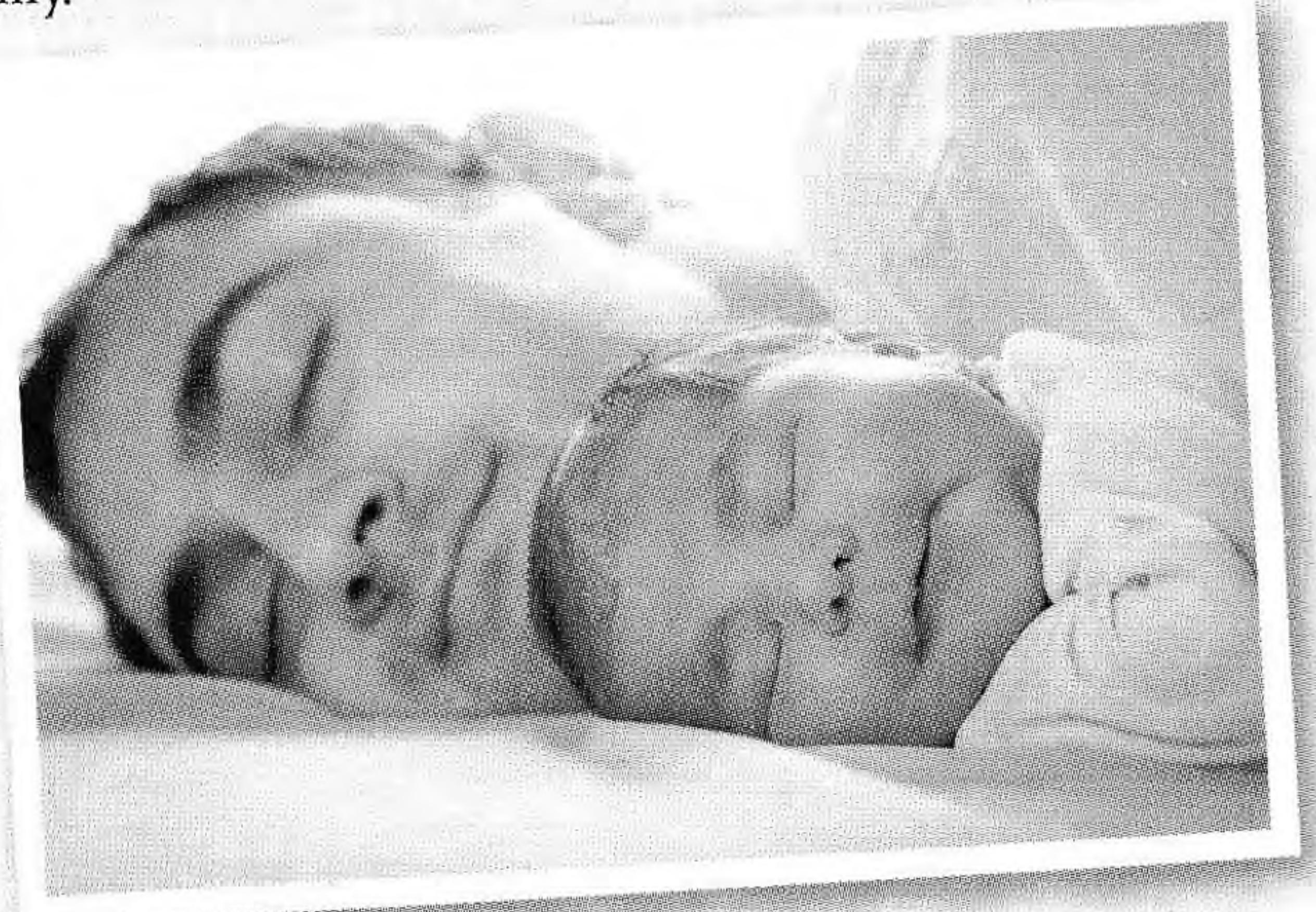
SHOW THAT YOU'VE CHECKED

In my opinion essay:

- I have introduced the topic and clearly stated my point of view in the opening paragraph.
- I have included two or three paragraphs with more detailed personal opinions and supported these with reasons and examples.
- I have included a summary of my main point of view in the concluding paragraph and used different words to the statement in the introduction.
- I have included a final comment which leaves the reader with something to think about.
- I have used a variety of linkers to help the reader to follow my essay.
- I have checked my spelling and punctuation.
- I have written at least 140 words.

learn more about being male from their father. In addition, it is important to teach children to be good people, regardless of their gender, and men and women are equally able to do this.

In summary ⁷ ____, I think men and women are equally good at being parents, and I also believe that the ideal approach for parents and children is for partners to share the responsibility for raising a family.



8.8 Use of English

Multiple-choice cloze

- 1 For questions 1–8, read the article below and decide which answer (A, B, C or D) best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Rules

A set of rules that people need to live by has been developed by ⁰___ society that has ever existed. But sometimes things just go ¹___ far! Here are some rules, past and present, that ²___ recently voted as the world's most ridiculous!

In England, you are ³___ the law if you die in the Houses of Parliament. We are not sure how the police would question the ⁴___ if this happened, however!

If you hear a knock on your door in Scotland and the

stranger outside needs to use your toilet, you must let them in. ⁵___ you let them enter your house, you will be punished!

In the UK ⁶___, it says that the head of any dead whale found anywhere along the British coast automatically belongs to the king. The tail, of course, goes to the queen. Let's hope they have a very good chef!

Finally, if you're travelling in the US state of Ohio, remember that you could receive a heavy ⁷___ or even be locked ⁸___ if you give alcohol to a fish. You have been warned!

- | | | | | |
|---|----------------|------------|------------|---------------|
| 0 | A some | B most | C all | D every |
| 1 | A too | B well | C quite | D so |
| 2 | A are | B have | C were | D did |
| 3 | A beating | B breaking | C crossing | D making |
| 4 | A sentence | B judge | C witness | D suspect |
| 5 | A until | B unless | C although | D before |
| 6 | A constitution | B rules | C police | D authorities |
| 7 | A fine | B price | C ticket | D charge |
| 8 | A to | B off | C up | D in |

Open cloze

- 2 For questions 1–10, read the article below and think of the word which best fits each gap. There is an example at the beginning.

Graffiti

Love it or hate it, graffiti has become a common sight in most ⁰ of the world's cities. But graffiti is not a modern invention. In reality, it has existed ¹ _____ ancient times. There are examples of it on buildings dating from Ancient Egypt, Greece and Rome, but back then, the term *graffiti* ² _____ used in a different way. The word, ³ _____ is an adaptation of the Italian word *graffiato*, literally means 'scratched'. Historical examples of graffiti ⁴ _____ drawings and writing scratched on the walls of ancient churches, temples and other buildings in ruined towns and cities all ⁵ _____ the world.

Nowadays many people now see graffiti as an emerging form of modern art. However, unlike other artists, graffiti artists usually have to hide their identities ⁶ _____ they paint their art in places where it isn't allowed – on public buildings, underground trains or bridges. In most countries, graffiti is ⁷ _____ the law. In fact, ⁸ _____ of the most well-known artists has ⁹ _____ arrested over twenty times! He has even served a six-month prison ¹⁰ _____ for criminal damage. At the same time, his works of art sell for millions of dollars. Funny old world!

8.9 Self-assessment

1 For each learning objective, tick the box that best matches your ability.

😊😊 = I understand and can help a friend.

😞 = I understand some, but have some questions.

😊 = I understand and can do it by myself.

😞😞 = I do not understand.

			😊😊	😊	😞	😞😞	Need help?
8.1	Vocabulary	I can talk about human qualities and acts of kindness.					Students' Book pages 96–97 Word Store page 17 Workbook pages 92–93
8.2	Grammar	I can understand and use the Passive.					Students' Book page 98 Workbook page 94
8.3	Listening	I can identify specific detail in an interview.					Students' Book page 99 Workbook page 95
8.4	Reading	I can understand the structure of a text.					Students' Book pages 100–101 Workbook pages 96–97
8.5	Grammar	I can understand and use the structure have something done.					Students' Book page 102 Workbook page 98
8.6	Speaking	I can give my opinion and identify advantages and disadvantages.					Students' Book page 103 Workbook page 99
8.7	Writing	I can present and support my personal point of view.					Students' Book pages 104–105 Workbook page 100

2 What can you remember from this unit?

New words I learned (the words you most want to remember from this unit)	Expressions and phrases I liked (any expressions or phrases you think sound nice, useful or funny)	English I heard or read outside class (e.g. from websites, books, adverts, films, music)

8.10 Self-check

1 Choose the correct options.

- 0 The owner of that factory made a big *prize* / *donation* / *present* to our school to help build a swimming pool.
- 1 Without Bella's *friendship* / *engagement* / *appreciation*, I'd be very lonely.
- 2 Why are you so *negative* / *stupid* / *materialistic*? Possessions are not important compared to love.
- 3 The news that the school would be closed put a *laugh* / *smile* / *happiness* on the students' faces.
- 4 He was released from *hospital* / *prison* / *university* after serving twenty years for murder.
- 5 I don't want to work in the service industry. I want to work for a company that actually makes a *noise* / *point* / *product* of some sort.

/5

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 0 I don't believe that you have never __ the law. Not even driving too fast or downloading something illegally?
A broken B committed C released
- 1 The missing boy's father __ a reward for any information about his son.
 A gave B asked C offered
- 2 Can you give me a __ with the cleaning? The guests will be here in an hour.
 A give B help C hand
- 3 The story of how the twin sisters eventually met again after all those years really warmed my __.
 A panic B heart C bottom
- 4 The fact that Charlotte remembered my birthday and gave me a call really __ my day.
 A made B gave C did
- 5 It was really __ of you to lend me your dress. Here's a little gift to say 'thank you'.
 A sort B type C kind

/5

3 Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

appreciate cruel hopeful neighbourhood
 sensitive stupidity

- 0 Phillip is a very sensitive young man. Soap operas make him cry.
- 1 We _____ your help with the charity event. You've raised a lot of money.
- 2 This is not a(n) _____ I would like to live in. It's dirty, noisy and dangerous at night.
- 3 Why would anyone be so _____ to an innocent animal? I just can't understand it.
- 4 We don't think there's much chance of our community centre staying open, but we remain _____.
- 5 I couldn't believe my own _____. I set my alarm for 7 p.m. instead of 7 a.m. and missed the exam.

/5

4 Complete the sentences with the correct passive form of the verbs in the box. There are two extra verbs.

burgle ~~find~~ finish hunt
 miss renovate think wash

- 0 Painite is one of the rarest minerals on Earth. It is found in Myanmar in South-East Asia.
- 1 The dodo, a large flightless bird, _____ until it disappeared completely in the seventeenth century.
- 2 Fiona's house _____ twice this year, poor thing.
- 3 The old school sports hall _____ at the moment, so all our PE lessons are held on the field.
- 4 Our car _____ when the accident happened. The handbrake failed and it rolled into the wall.
- 5 We're here to say goodbye to Mr Figg, who is retiring today. Mr Figg, you _____ by all your students.

/5

5 Complete the sentences using the prompts and the correct form of *have something done*.

- 0 (suit/dry-clean)
 Charlie had his suit dry-cleaned before the wedding.
- 1 (her phone/fix)
 Emma _____ twice this month and today she's having problems with it again.
- 2 (his health/check)
 Our dog _____ by the vet later today.
- 3 (her legs/wax)
 Leona _____ only _____ once in her life.
- 4 (you/your phone/take away)
 _____ ever _____ by the teacher?
- 5 (Helen/her tattoo/do)
 _____ by a professional? I can't tell what it says.

/5

6 Read the text and choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

School Charity Day is coming up next month. Anyone can give a(n) ⁰ __, but maybe you can think of something more ¹ __. Who can forget last year's big event, when the head teacher ² __ by the school nurse? Or when Year 7 got together and ³ __ a good deed by cleaning cars in the local village? They raised over £200 for the animal rescue centre. This year all the money raised ⁴ __ to the local orphanage. They are planning to ⁵ __ their children happy by using the money to help build a new playground. So, get thinking.

- 0 A reward **B donation** C offer
- 1 A imagine B imaginative C imagination
- 2 A shaved his hair off B was having his hair shaved off C had his hair shaved off
- 3 A did B made C had
- 4 A will give B will be giving C will be given
- 5 A make B show C give

/5

Total /30

Focus provides practice of the exam tasks found in upper secondary school leaving exams, as well as international exams like PET, Cambridge English: First (FCE), Trinity and PTE (Pearson Test of English). It includes exercises which will help you prepare for all parts of a typical exam – Listening, Reading, Grammar/Use of English, Speaking and Writing. In addition, in this section you will find some useful tips to help you confidently approach different types of exam tasks.

Listening

General guidelines

Do

- Before listening to a recording, read the instructions and questions in the task carefully. Try to predict what kind of information you're going to hear (e.g. how many speakers there could be, what words/expressions they might use).
- When listening for the first time, look at the questions in the task again and note down your answers.
- Before listening to the recording the second time, read all the questions again, especially those you didn't answer the first time. Note down your new answers and check your answers from the first listening.

Don't

- Don't worry if you don't understand some words. You don't need to understand all of the recording to do the task.
- If you don't understand part of the text at first, don't give up! Remember: there will be another chance to listen and your understanding of other parts of the recording will help you the second time.
- Don't spend too much time on the questions which you don't know how to answer. You'll be able to come back to them later. Move on to the next question.
- Don't leave any questions unanswered. If you are not sure, guess!

Multiple choice tasks

- Remember that the questions in the task are usually given in the same order as the information in the recording.
- When listening to the recording for the first time, note down your own answers to the questions. Then compare them to the options provided in the task and choose the ones which are closest in meaning to yours.
- Be careful of the answers which sound very similar to the information in the recording. They are often wrong. Pay attention to synonyms and antonyms.
- Sometimes the information needed to answer the question is not presented directly in the recording – you need to work it out based on what you've heard. If you're not sure which option to choose, use the method of elimination: start by crossing out the answers which are definitely wrong, then those which you think are probably wrong, until you are left with only one option.
- Sometimes when you're answering a question or questions about a conversation, you need to remember to listen for the right speaker. The other options may be mentioned, but not by the person you are asked about.

Sentence completion

- You may need to listen for information to complete some sentences. Usually this will require a maximum of a couple of words. You will definitely hear the words that you need to write in the recording, but the rest of the sentence on your exam sheet will not be identical. It will be rephrased.
- If you need to write a common word, you will be expected to spell it correctly.
- Read all the sentences carefully before you hear the recording for the first time so that you have an idea of what the recording is about. This helps when you are trying to identify the section that has the information you need.
- Try to predict from the sentences what sort of words or information you need to listen for. You might be able to guess that you need to listen for a date, a name, etc.
- Be careful about distraction in the recording. Sometimes if you think you need to listen for a date or year, there could be another date or year mentioned before or afterwards, but it will not fit the context of your sentence.

Matching tasks

- If you need to identify a speaker or place in the task, listen for typical expressions related to people or places. Sometimes one characteristic phrase can help you to choose the right answer.
- If your task is to match particular recordings or parts of a recording to topic sentences, try to summarise the main topic of each part yourself, then choose the answer which is most similar.
- Remember that other speakers might mention words or opinions connected to the point or comment you are looking for, but it will not be exactly right. Don't be distracted or misled.
- Sometimes it can help to listen to the recordings BEFORE you read through the options. Then you have an idea of what the speaker is saying without confusion or preconceptions. Think about the strategy that works best for you.

Reading

General guidelines

Do

- Before you start reading the text, read the instructions for the task carefully. The task will affect the way you read the text.
- Try to identify the kind of text which is used in the task. This can help you predict what sort of information to expect.
- Use the hints in the text to help you understand the context. The title and any photos or other visuals will help you identify the main topic, and the first sentences of paragraphs often summarise their content.
- *Read the text quickly to check if your predictions about its content were right. This will also help you later, to identify the parts of the text where the answers are.
- Underline parts of the text which contain language relevant to the questions (single words, phrases, sentences, paragraphs).

Don't

- Don't try to understand every word in a text. You don't need to know every single word to do the task. You can try to guess the meaning of unknown words using different techniques (e.g. guessing from the context or the grammatical form, noticing similarities to words in your own language).
- Don't leave any questions unanswered. If you are not sure, guess!
- Don't spend too much time on any one particular task. Remember that time in the exam is limited and you should try to do all of the tasks.

Multiple-choice tasks

- Identify parts of the text which the questions refer to. Remember that these could differ in length (between one word/phrase and a whole paragraph).
- Focus on the detail of a paragraph or sentence. An incorrect answer might only differ from the correct one in a detail such as the verb tense used or information given that only partly matches the text.
- Remember the words in the correct option will not be the same as those in the text. There will be synonyms and rephrasing.
- Don't be distracted by options that use similar wording. Only one option will be exactly what you need.
- Eliminate the answers which you feel sure are wrong, then make your final choice.

Matching tasks

- One type of matching task requires candidates to match missing sentences with gaps in a text. Remember that this type of task includes an extra sentence or option, so you will have to eliminate unnecessary items.
- When you match missing sentences with gaps in the text, skim the text first, ignoring the gaps, to get its general meaning. Then try to choose the missing information to complete the text, paying special attention to the words that come before and after the gaps.
- It can be useful to look at reference words in the missing sentence and those sentences before and after the gap. A pronoun in the option may refer back to a person in the previous sentence.
- Another type of matching task requires you to match items of information with the sections of a text in which they can be found. It is important to be able to scan the texts quickly to find the matching information.
- Remember that the information will be rephrased in the items, so don't look for the exact words.

Grammar/Use of English

General guidelines

Do

- Before you start reading the text, read the instructions carefully. The task will affect the way you read the text.
- When a text has a title, read it carefully as this can help you predict the main idea of the text.
- Where there are gaps in the text, read it through completely without worrying about the gaps to get the general idea.
- There will be an example for each task. Look at it carefully; it will help you understand what you need to do.

Don't

- Don't try to understand every word in a text. You don't need to know every single word to do the task. You can try to guess the meaning of unknown words using different techniques (e.g. guessing from the context or the grammatical form, noticing similarities to words in your own language).
- Don't leave any questions unanswered. If you are not sure, guess!
- Don't spend too much time on any one particular task. Remember that time in the exam is limited and you should try to do all of the tasks.

Multiple-choice cloze

- Read the text first to have an idea what each of its parts is about. Try to understand as much as you can while ignoring the gaps.
- Different types of words are tested in this exam task. For example, you may need to complete a phrasal verb, choose a correct linker or choose between words with similar meanings.
- Read the gap-fill options carefully before deciding which one to choose.
- When deciding which option to use to complete a gap, look at the words before and after the gap. They will give you clues about which option is correct (e.g. look for linkers, personal and object pronouns, adjectives and adverbs).
- Remember that the option you choose must fit grammatically into the sentence and must also have the correct meaning.
- When you've finished, always reread the text to see that it follows logically.

Open cloze

- Read the text first to have an idea what each of its parts is about. Try to understand as much as you can while ignoring the gaps.
- Different types of words are tested in this exam task. For example, you may need to complete a phrasal verb or find a correct linker, article, auxiliary verb, etc.
- When deciding which word to use to complete a gap, look at the words before and after the gap. They will give you clues about what sort of word you are looking for.
- Remember that the word you choose must fit grammatically into the sentence and must also have the correct meaning.
- When you've finished, always reread the text to see that it follows logically.

Word formation

- Read the text first to have an idea what each of its parts is about. Try to understand as much as you can while ignoring the gaps.
- You need to think carefully about how to change the word so that it fits grammatically into the sentence – is it an adjective, an adverb, etc.? You should also consider the meaning – for example, do you need a negative or positive meaning?
- Remember that as well as adding prefixes and suffixes to a word, you may also need to make other changes.
- When you've finished, always reread the text to see that it follows logically.

Key word transformations

- Make sure you read the first sentences carefully and understand the meaning. The second sentence must be as close to that meaning as possible.
- Read the parts of the second sentence which you have to complete carefully too, as parts of it will affect how you complete it. Look for any tense changes or whether you need a singular or plural verb, a negative or a question form, etc.
- Remember that there is a word limit. Always check your number of words as if you have too many, it may mean that you've gone wrong somewhere. A contraction (e.g. don't) counts as two words, not one.

Writing

General guidelines

In a typical exam at this level, you will be asked to write one or two short pieces of written English. Exam tasks include writing an article, a story, a review, a report, an essay, an informal letter or email. There is usually a word limit of between 140 and 190 words.

When writing any of the above mentioned texts, you will need to recognise the function of the type of text you have been asked to write and use appropriate and relevant key language in it. To help you do this, we have provided a reference section in this Workbook (FUNCTION PHRASE BANK, pages 107–111).

Do

- Analyse carefully what kind of writing task it is. Note down in bullet points the most characteristic features of the text type required in the task before you start writing.
- Read carefully all the information that needs to be included in your writing. Also, write down useful words, phrases or grammatical structures that might be relevant to the information.
- Write a plan detailing the information you want to include in each paragraph. If you have time, write some key sentences too.
- Check that you have included all the information required in your writing. Remember to use linkers so that your writing is coherent and easy to follow.
- Check the style of your writing and make sure it's appropriate to the task (e.g. have you used formal or informal language as required?).
- Check that you have an introduction, a main body and a conclusion in your writing, that your paragraphs are clearly defined and that you have written an appropriate number of words.
- Finally, check your grammar and spelling.

Don't

- Don't go over the word limit. It's better to estimate the number of words while you are writing, then shorten or extend your text, than to cross out half of the text when it's already finished. Think about the number of words you need for each paragraph when you write your plan.
- Try not to repeat the same information. By doing this you will waste time and a lot of words from the word count for the piece.

- Try not to use the same words and phrases more than once. Use a range of vocabulary and grammatical structures.
- Do not use incomplete sentences like notes. To write a coherent text, you need to use full sentences and include linkers and subordinate clauses.

Speaking

General guidelines

When preparing for the oral part of an exam, you will need to understand the function of the conversation you are being asked to take part in. The FUNCTION PHRASE BANK (pages 112–113), the VOCABULARY BANK (pages 114–126) and the related PRACTICE EXERCISES (pages 127–134) will help you prepare systematically for spoken interaction tasks.

Do

- Listen carefully to the examiner's questions. Often the questions will be written on your exam sheet.
- Try to stick to the aim of the task. Always keep the question in mind when answering.
- When you are not sure whether you have understood what the examiner has said, ask them to repeat the question.
- If you need more time to decide what to say, ask the examiner to repeat the question and then repeat or paraphrase it, then use 'filler' phrases giving you time to think (e.g. *Let me think ...*, *It's difficult to say ...*).
- Remember that the examiner has a time limit for each part of the test. If he/she stops you while you're speaking, it's because you have spoken for longer than necessary.
- Try to keep speaking rather than finish your one minute talk or discussion early. It is better to be interrupted because you're talking too much than to say too little.
- When you are asked to discuss something with your partner, make sure you interact by asking for his/her opinion. Don't take it in turns to give your ideas. It should be a real conversation.

Don't

- Try not to repeat the same phrases over and over. Show that you can use a range of vocabulary and grammatical structures.
- Don't ask the examiner to explain something. He/She can only repeat an instruction.
- If you cannot remember a word, don't panic! Try to use strategies that will help you communicate what you want to say (e.g. use a word with a similar meaning or describe the notion or idea you are trying to communicate).
- Don't try to learn whole sentences or detailed answers to things you think you might be asked about. Speak and respond as naturally as possible.
- Make sure you keep in mind that your partner needs to speak as well! Try not to speak too much so that you dominate the conversation or speak too little so that you don't give the examiner enough language to assess.

Accepting suggestions

That sounds fantastic!
I'd love to go.
Well, it's worth a try.
I suppose it'll work.

Agreeing

I (completely) agree that/with ...
I couldn't agree more that/with ...
That's fine with me.
I think so too.
It is true that ...
I am of the same/a similar opinion because ...

Apologising

Informal phrases

I'm really sorry (that) ...
Sorry for bothering you.
Sorry to bother you.
Sorry for any trouble.
Sorry I didn't write earlier, but I ...
Sorry I haven't written for so long./Sorry for not writing for so long.
I'm writing to tell you how sorry I am to/about ...
It will never happen again.

Formal phrases

I apologise for ...
Please accept my apology for ...

Asking for information

Could you tell me when the course starts?
Can you tell me how much it costs?
Could you tell me if there are any discounts?
I would like to know/ask if ...
I would like to know more details about ...
I would like to ask for further information about/ concerning ...
I would be (very) grateful if you could ...
I wonder if you could ...
I would like to ask if/when/where/why ...

Closing formulas: emails and letters

Informal phrases

Best wishes,
Bye for now,
See you!
Love,
Take care!
All the best,

Neutral phrases

Yours sincerely,
Regards,

Formal phrases

(Dear Sir or Madam/Editor) Yours faithfully,

Declining suggestions

It doesn't sound very good.
I don't think I fancy it.
I'm sorry, but I can't join you.
I'm not really into ...
I've got some doubts about it.
I don't see how it could work.
Actually, I would prefer not to.

Describing an event

I'll never forget ...
It was an unforgettable (day/occasion/event).
The celebration takes/took place on/in ...
The event is celebrated annually.
The festival originated ...

Describing lost property

I lost (my bag/passport/coat/dog).
I keep (all my files there).
It was something I borrowed/got as a birthday present.
It is of great value./It's a really precious thing.
It means a lot to me.

Describing possessions

It is/was ...
Size: huge/tiny/35cm x 25cm/big
Shape: round/rectangular/square/narrow
Colour: white/red and brown/light/dark green
Material: made of leather/plastic/linen
Age: new/young/old/six years old/modern/ancient
It has/had (two handles/a leather strap/a blue cover/two pockets/short sleeves/a black tail).

Describing a person

The first thing you notice about (him/her) is ...
(He/She) is special for a number of reasons.
(He/She) is the kind of person who ...
The most unusual/interesting person I've ever met is ...
(He/She) dresses casually/smartly/well/in black/fashionably.
(He/She) always wears scruffy/stylish clothes.
Height: of medium height/tall/fairly short/long-legged
Build: muscular/well-built/overweight/skinny/slim/thin
Age: in his teens/middle-aged/in her late forties/elderly
Facial features: round/oval/freckles/dimples/scar/mole/
wrinkled/almond-shaped eyes/pale/tanned/
a crooked nose/moustache/beard
Hair: balding/short/shoulder-length/long/wavy/curly/thick

Describing a place

The most fascinating/interesting/lively part of the city is ...
 The most famous attraction is ...
 The town is well-known for its ...
 It is the kind of place that/where ...
 The place I like best is ...
 It is situated in a quiet residential area.
 The place is surrounded by ...
 It lies in the north/south/east/west of Spain.
 It's the most thrilling/picturesque/fabulous place.
 The sights are worth seeing.

Disagreeing

I disagree that/with .../I don't agree that/with ...
 I am totally against ...
 I'm afraid I can't agree with ...
 I'm not convinced about ...
 I don't think it's the best solution ...
 I must say I do not agree/strongly disagree with ...
 I am of a different/the opposite opinion because ...
 Contrary to popular belief, ...

Encouraging people

Come on, don't be afraid/it's not difficult/it's easy!
 Why don't you come and meet interesting people/see great things?
 Come and tell us what you think.
 Come and have fun!

Ending an email/a letter

Informal phrases

It was good to hear from you.
 Email me soon.
 I'd better get going./I must go now./Got to go now./I must be going now...
 Bye for now.
 Looking forward to your news/to hearing from you again.
 Say hello to
 Give my love/my regards to (everyone at home).
 Have a nice (trip).
 See you (soon/in the summer).
 Write soon.
 Keep in touch!

Neutral phrases

I look forward to hearing from you/your reply.
 I hope to hear from you soon.

Formal phrases

I wonder what other readers think about ...
 I hope you will publish more articles about this problem.
 I would be grateful if you could publish my email/letter.

Expressing contrast

However, many people say that action should be taken straight away.
Even though/Although many residents support the mayor and his policy, he also has many enemies.
In spite of/Despite winning in the local election, his real ambition was to work for one of the EU institutions.

Expressing doubt

I have read the advert/about your services and/but I am not quite sure if ...
 I cannot understand if ...
 It is not clear to me if ...

Expressing interest

I am interested in/I have been looking for ...
 I am planning to ... and that is why I found this advertisement/offer/text interesting/important.
 I would like to thank you for/congratulate you on ...
 I was very interested in your (article/editorial/presentation).
 I was surprised/fascinated/shocked to ...

Expressing opinion

I (really) believe/think/feel (that) ...
 In my opinion/view, ...
 The way I see it, ...
 It seems/appears to me (that) ...
 To my mind, ...
 My opinion is that ...
 As far as I am concerned,
 It can be argued that ...

Expressing preferences

I really enjoy/like/love ... because ...
 I prefer ... to ...
 I'd like to/I hope to ...
 ... is great because ...
 I find ... boring/dull.
 I don't like/I can't stand/I really hate ...
 It's not really my thing.

Expressing purpose/result/reason

He worked as a volunteer in the Philippines to/in order to help local people organise their life anew after the tsunami.
 The man committed the crime and therefore/consequently was sentenced to life imprisonment.
 The team missed their deadline because of/as a result of numerous mistakes they had made right at the start.

Getting in touch with people

Ways to contact people

If you have any information, please contact/call/leave a message for Alison on (0961224466).

If you are interested in ..., call (John/Ms White) on (0961224466).

To join us, call ...

If you have seen it, please ...

Call me/us on ... for more details.

Maintaining contact

Drop me a line sometime.

I hope to hear from you soon.

Give me a call later.

Let me know if you can make it or not.

I was glad to hear about ...

Let me know as soon as possible.

Giving advice

You should/ought to ...

You'd better ...

If I were you, I would ...

It might be a good idea (for you) to ...

Why don't you ... ?

Have you thought of/about ... ?

Giving examples

for example/for instance

like/such as

especially/in particular/particularly

Giving reasons for opinions

I think so because ...

In fact,/Actually, ...

The reason why I believe so is ...

Introducing points in a 'for and against' essay

What are the arguments for and against this idea?

What are the benefits and drawbacks of such a step?

This approach has both advantages and disadvantages.

Inviting

I'd like to invite you to ...

I'd like you to come ...

Would you come to ... ?

I'm writing to invite you to (Warsaw/my party).

I'm having (a party).

I hope you'll be able to join us/to make it.

If you want, you can bring a friend.

You are welcome to ...

Join us today!

Come and meet me ...

Why don't you come ... ?

Listing arguments

First argument

First of all, ...

First/Firstly, ...

To begin with, ...

One (dis)advantage is that ...

The main/major argument in support of ... is that ...

On the one hand/On the other hand, ...

One argument in favour is that ...

Successive arguments

Secondly, ...

Thirdly, ...

Another (dis)advantage is that ...

It is also important/vital to consider ...

In addition/Additionally, ...

Apart from this/that, ...

Moreover/What is more,

Last argument

Finally, ...

Last but not least, ...

Making recommendations

Positive opinion

You'll love it!

I recommend it to everyone.

If you like modern art, you should definitely see it.

It's a must.

I think it's worth seeing because ...

I was impressed by ...

I couldn't put it down.

It's a classic./It's a masterpiece of its kind.

The plot is believable/entertaining/thought-provoking.

It will change the way you see ...

If I were you, I wouldn't hesitate to take part in ...

I highly recommend (joining) ...

Negative opinion

One weakness (of the book/film/workshops) is that ...

It is rather long/boring/confusing/slow.

The cast is awful/unconvincing.

The script is dull.

It is poorly/badly written.

Adjectives

Positive: brilliant/spectacular/striking/impressive/powerful/
convincing

Negative: violent/predictable/unconvincing/far-fetched/
dull/bland/disappointing

Neutral: slow/sentimental/serious

Making requests

Informal phrases

Can you ..., please?/Could you ... ?
Do you think you could ... ?
Let me know if you can ...
Could you tell me ... ?

Formal phrases

Would it be possible for you to ... ?
I would be grateful if you could ...
I wonder if I could ask you to/for ...
I am writing to ask for your help/advice ...

Making suggestions

I think I/you/we should (go to) ...
Perhaps I/you/we could (go to) ...
What do you think about (going to) ...?
What/How about (going to) ... ?
How do you feel about (going to) ... ?
Would you like me to ... ?
Why don't we (go to) ... ?
Let's (go to) ...
Shall we (go to) ... ?
Do you fancy (going to) ... ?

Narrating a story

It all happened some time ago.
It was three years ago.
While I (was playing), ...
First, ...
Then, ...
Suddenly, ...
Unfortunately, ...
Fortunately, ...
It was the best/worst time ever.
We had a great/awful time when we were ...

Opening formulas: emails and letters

Informal phrases

Dear Margaret,
Hi Anne,

Neutral phrases

Dear Mr and Mrs Edwards,
Dear Ms Brennon,

Formal phrases

Dear Sir or Madam,
Dear Editor,

Starting an email/letter

Informal phrases

It was good to hear from you.
I hope you're doing well/you're fine/you're OK.
How are you (doing)?
I'm writing to tell you ...
Thanks for your email/letter.
I wonder if you remember/have heard ...
I wanted to tell you about ...
I just wanted to ask/remind/thank you ...
Just a quick email to tell you ...

Formal phrases

I am writing to thank you for ...
I would like to express my ...
I am writing in connection with (the article/report/editorial) ...
I have just read (the article) entitled ... in Saturday's paper/
this month's edition of ...
I am writing to ask/enquire about ...
I read/found your advertisement in ... and would like to ...

Suggesting solutions

Steps must/should be taken to solve the problem of ...
One (possible) way to solve/overcome this problem is to ...
An alternative solution to this issue is ...

Summing up

All in all/On balance/On the whole/To sum up/In
conclusion, ...
All things considered/Taking everything into account, ...

Thanking someone

Informal phrases

I'm writing to thank you for ...
Thank you so much.
It was so/really/very kind of you to ...

Formal phrases

I really appreciate your help.
Thank you for sending it back to me.
I am really grateful for your help.
It was very kind of you.
I hope it is not too much trouble for you.
Thank you for doing me a favour.

Writing about films/books

Introduction

- The film/book tells the story of ...
- The film/story is set in ...
- The book/novel was written by ...
- The film is directed by ...
- It is a comedy/horror film/love story.
- This well-written/informative/fascinating book ...
- It is based on real events/a true story/a book.
- It has been made into a film.

Plot description

- The story concerns/begins/is about ...
- The plot is (rather) boring/thrilling.
- The plot has an unexpected twist.
- The plot focuses on ...
- The film reaches a dramatic climax ...

Writing about future plans

- I might ...
- It is my dream to ...
- My ambition/goal is to ...
- I hope that/to ...
- I am thinking of ...

Accepting advice

Good idea!
 Good thinking!
 That's really helpful.
 Oh, I didn't think of that!

Agreeing

I agree.
 That's true.
 Absolutely!

Asking for advice

Can you do me a (big) favour?
 Can you give me some advice?
 Do you think I need ... ?
 What do you think I should (do)?

Asking for an opinion

What do you think about ... ?

Asking for information

Could you tell me what the soup is?
 Can you tell me what the Mario Special Salad is?
 Do you know what the pasta sauce is?
 I'd like to know if there are onions in it.

Asking for permission

Can/Could I/we ... ?
 Is it OK if I/we ... ?
 We were wondering if I/we could ...
 Do you mind if I/we ... ?

Comparing and contrasting pictures

The three pictures show/focus on/illustrate ...
 Picture X is/looks interesting/attractive, but ...
 Picture X is more ... than the other pictures.
 Picture X isn't as ... as the other pictures.

Describing pictures

The picture shows ...
 In this picture I can see/there is/there are ...
 in the background/in the middle/in the foreground
 on the left/on the right/in front of/behind/next to

Describing physical symptoms

I've got a pain in my chest/back/leg.
 I've got a headache/a stomachache/a sore throat/
 a temperature/a cough/a runny nose/a rash.
 I feel ill/dizzy/sick/very weak.
 My stomach/arm/neck hurts.
 My ankle/thumb/toe is swollen.

Disagreeing

That's not true.
 I'm sorry, I don't agree with you.
 I'm not so sure about that.
 I'm not convinced.

Disagreeing strongly

No way! (informal)
 Are you kidding? (informal)
 I'm afraid I completely disagree. (more polite)

Examining/Giving a diagnosis

When did the pain start?
 I'm going to examine you.
 I'm going to take your temperature.
 I'm going to do a blood test.
 Breathe in and out.
 Open wide.
 Lie down, please.
 I think you've got indigestion/flu/an infection/a virus.
 You're probably allergic to ...
 If I push here, does it hurt?

Expressing uncertainty

It's hard to say/make out what ..., but ...
 I'm not sure ..., but ...

Giving advice

The first thing you should do is ...
 If I were you, I would/wouldn't ...
 I (don't) think you should ...
 You (don't) need to ...
 You (really) ought to ...
 You must/mustn't ...
 The best thing would be to ...
 It's a good idea to ...
 Why don't you ... ?

Giving an opinion

I (don't) think ...
 I prefer ...
 In my opinion, ...
 Personally, ...
 What I mean is ...
 In fact, ...
 If you ask me, ...
 The thing is ...
 To be honest, ...

Giving permission

Well, OK, I suppose so.
 Yes that's fine. No problem.
 Sure, I don't see why not.
 No, not at all, go ahead.

Justifying your choice

I think the best option would be ... because ...
I prefer/I'd go for/I'd (definitely) choose ... because ...
I like ... best for two reasons. Firstly, because ... and
secondly, because ...
Out of these three (pictures), I'd choose ... because ...

Ordering food

Can I order, please?
Do you have any vegetarian dishes?
Can I have chips with that?
Could I have the bill, please?

Recommending treatment

You should eat more slowly/go on a diet.
You need to drink more water.
I'm going to give you a prescription.
I'm going to make an appointment for you.
Take one tablet after each meal.

Refusing permission

I'm sorry, but ...
I'd like to help, but ...
I'm afraid ...
(Do you mind ... ?) Yes, I do, actually.

Rejecting other options

The problem with ... is that ...
Personally, I wouldn't go for ... because ...
I don't like ... because ...
I wouldn't choose ... because ...
The reason I don't like ... is because ...

Speculating

He/She/It looks (tired).
He/She/It looks as if/as though/like ...
It seems to be/Perhaps it's/Maybe it's ...
I imagine they're/They're probably ...

Talking about advantages and disadvantages

There are a lot of advantages/disadvantages ...
One/Another benefit/drawback is that ...
The main advantage/disadvantage of ... is that ...
There are benefits/drawbacks too.
One of the main advantages/disadvantages of ... is that ...
Another advantage/disadvantage of ... is that ...

Talking about your skills and interests

(Cooking) isn't my thing at all.
I'm (really) good at (Maths/swimming).
I'm not (patient) enough.
I'd rather (visit an elderly person).
I'm really into (vintage clothes).

Translate the words and phrases.

People

Personality

adventurous _____
 aggressive _____
 arrogant _____
 bad-tempered _____
 boring _____
 brave _____
 caring _____
 charming _____
 cheeky _____
 childish _____
 courage _____
 courageous _____
 creative _____
 cruel _____
 cruelty _____
 determination _____
 determined _____
 dynamic _____
 easy-going _____
 enthusiasm _____
 enthusiastic _____
 fascinating _____
 friendly _____
 fussy _____
 generosity _____
 generous _____
 grumpy _____
 hard-working _____
 helpful _____
 helpfulness _____
 honest _____
 honesty _____
 honourable _____
 imaginative _____
 immature _____
 inspiration _____
 inspiring _____

kind _____
 kindness _____
 lazy _____
 likeable _____
 loyal _____
 loyalty _____
 materialistic _____
 mature _____
 mean _____
 mischievous _____
 modest _____
 modesty _____
 nervous _____
 open to sth _____
 optimism _____
 optimistic _____
 outgoing _____
 passion _____
 passionate _____
 patient _____
 polite _____
 popular _____
 positive _____
 positive attitude _____

 qualities _____
 realistic _____
 relaxed _____
 reliable _____
 role model _____
 rude _____
 selfish _____
 sense of humour _____
 sensitive _____
 shy _____
 sophisticated _____
 stupid _____
 stupidity _____
 tolerant _____
 unfriendly _____
 well-mannered _____

Feelings and emotions

admire _____
 amazed _____
 be impressed by sth _____
 calm down _____
 cheer up _____
 confident _____
 confused _____
 devastated _____
 embarrassment _____
 excited _____
 exhausted _____
 good/bad mood _____
 helpless _____
 hopeful _____
 impressed _____
 jealous _____
 laugh your head off _____
 lonely _____
 make sb happy/sad/angry _____

 negative thoughts _____
 nervous _____
 positive thinking _____
 proud (of sth) _____
 reassure sb _____
 stressed _____
 sympathetic _____
 sympathy _____
 uncomfortable _____
 unhappy _____
 upset (about sth) _____
 wear a smile _____
 worried _____
 worries _____
 worry _____
 Age
 adult _____
 childhood _____
 elderly _____
 grow up _____

in your early/mid/late twenties _____

 in your teens _____
 middle-aged _____
 sb is your age _____
 youngster _____
 youth _____

Appearance

baldness _____
 beard _____
 cheek _____
 chin _____
 dimples _____
 do your hair _____
 facial features _____
 freckles _____
 go to the hairdresser's _____
 hairstyle _____
 have your ears pierced _____
 put make-up on _____
 resemble sb _____

Clothes and accessories

bangle _____
 baseball cap _____
 boots _____
 bracelet _____
 coat _____
 cotton _____
 designer dress _____
 flared jeans _____
 fleece _____
 flying jacket _____
 glasses _____
 gloves _____
 hat _____
 high heels _____
 jeans _____
 jumper/pullover _____
 look _____
 mittens _____
 scarf _____

shirt _____
 shorts _____
 silver ring _____
 skinny jeans _____
 snow boots _____
 suit _____
 sunglasses _____
 sweatpants _____
 sweatshirt _____
 T-shirt _____
 tie _____
 tights _____
 top _____
 trainers _____
 trousers _____
 waistcoat _____

Adjectives describing appearance and clothes

adorable _____
 attractive _____
 bald _____
 blond _____
 blue-/brown-eyed _____
 casual _____
 cool _____
 curly/straight/dark/short/long (hair) _____

 cute _____
 dark-/fair-/long-/short-haired _____

 dark-/lighter-/pale-skinned _____

 elegant/smart/formal _____
 fashionable _____
 fat _____
 good-looking _____
 gorgeous _____
 leather _____
 medium height _____
 mysterious _____
 overweight _____

patterned _____
 red-headed _____
 scruffy _____
 short _____
 short-sighted _____
 skinny _____
 slim _____
 striped _____
 stylish _____
 tall _____
 vintage _____
 well-built _____
 well-dressed _____
 woollen _____

Clothes and appearance – verbs and phrases

dress casually/smartly/fashionably/
 well/in black _____
 fit _____
 get changed _____
 get dressed/undressed _____

 look _____
 look like sb _____
 match _____
 suit _____
 try on _____
 wear _____

Challenges

achieve _____
 be the inspiration behind sth _____

 challenging _____
 copy _____
 fulfil your ambitions _____
 give (sth) up _____
 inspire _____
 keep up with _____
 make a list of pluses and minuses _____

 make up _____

make sth easier/harder _____

 make up your mind _____
 manage to do sth _____
 miss the chance _____
 set out on sth _____
 stressful _____
 take risks _____
 triumph _____
 visualise _____

Expressing opinions

approve of sth _____
 be in favour of/opposed to sth _____

 claim _____
 clarify _____
 come up with _____
 confirm _____
 consider _____
 disapprove of _____
 explain _____
 express your support for/disapproval of sth _____
 insist on (doing sth) _____
 make a point _____
 make an excuse _____
 on the tip of my tongue _____

 point out _____
 point of view _____
 refuse _____
 reply/respond _____
 suggest _____

Home

Location

capital city _____
 current address _____
 halfway down a street _____
 home town _____
 industrial area _____

in the countryside _____
 local community _____
 neighbour _____
 neighbourhood _____
 megacity _____
 suburbs _____

Types of houses

detached house _____
 flat _____
 modern _____
 semi-detached house _____
 terraced house _____

At home

bill _____
 burglar alarm _____
 cut the grass _____
 do the gardening/cooking _____

 electricity _____
 front door _____
 gate _____
 lawn mower _____
 lock _____
 make your bed _____
 tidy your bedroom _____
 redecorate _____
 running water _____
 wall _____

School

after-school club _____
 attend lessons _____
 basic skills _____
 canteen _____
 college _____
 copy sb's homework _____
 do a course (in) _____
 do a degree (in) _____
 do a test _____
 do some revision _____

do your homework _____
 drop a subject _____
 exclude sb from school _____
 get a place at university _____
 get better marks _____
 gym _____
 head teacher _____
 learn new skills _____
 pass your exams _____
 school grounds _____
 school uniform _____
 single-sex school _____
 skip a lesson _____
 spelling _____
 subject _____
 textbook _____
 tutor _____

Work

Jobs

artist _____
 builder _____
 bus driver _____
 carpenter _____
 chef _____
 cook _____
 curator _____
 decorator _____
 dentist _____
 director _____
 doctor _____
 editor _____
 electrician _____
 entertainer _____
 farmer _____
 fashion designer _____
 forecaster _____
 jeweller _____
 judge _____
 model _____
 musician _____

nurse _____
 nutritionist _____
 pilot _____
 policeman/policewoman/police officer

 politician _____
 prison guard _____
 producer _____
 psychologist _____
 ranger _____
 reporter _____
 scientist _____
 surgeon _____
 tour guide _____
 tour leader _____
 travel agent _____
 waiter/waitress _____

Employment

contract _____
 employ _____
 employee _____
 (full-time/part-time) job/employment

 long hours _____
 overtime _____
 salary _____

Business and industry

business skills _____
 company _____
 cooperative _____
 entrepreneur _____
 food industry _____
 headquarters _____
 make a living from sth _____

 make money through sth _____

 start your own business _____

 successful _____

Family and social life

Family members

ancestor _____
 ex (n) _____
 ex-husband/ex-wife _____
 father-in-law/mother-in-law _____

 great-grandfather/great-grandmother

 great-great-grandfather/great-great-
 grandmother _____
 great-great-grandson/great-great-
 granddaughter _____
 half-brother/half-sister _____
 nephew _____
 niece _____
 only child _____
 relative _____
 second husband/wife _____
 sibling _____
 son-in-law/daughter-in-law _____
 stepbrother/sister _____
 stepfather/stepmother _____
 stepson/stepdaughter _____
 uncle/aunt _____

Love and marriage

break sb's heart _____
 couple _____
 date (v, n) _____
 end a relationship _____
 engagement _____
 engagement ring _____
 fall in love _____
 fiancé/fiancée _____
 get married _____
 go out with sb _____
 kiss _____
 opposite sex _____
 split up with sb _____
 stop seeing each other _____
 wedding _____

Human relations

agree to do sth _____
 appreciate _____
 be there for sb _____
 be reunited with one's family _____
 blow a kiss _____
 call on sb _____
 close friend _____
 encourage sb to do sth _____
 fall out with sb _____
 force sb to do sth _____
 friendship _____
 get on well with sb _____
 give sb a hand _____
 have a good relationship with sb _____

 have a lot in common with sb _____

 have an argument _____
 have similar interests _____
 help sb out _____
 live up to/match sb's expectations _____

 look after sb _____
 look up to sb _____
 lose touch with sb _____
 make a fool of sb _____
 make sb do sth _____
 make sb's day _____
 online friend _____
 pull sb's leg _____
 put a smile on sb's face _____
 put up with sb/sth _____
 put your arms round sb _____
 show respect _____
 show your appreciation _____
 socialise with _____
 warm sb's heart _____

Free time

become interested in sth _____
 be into sth _____

cookery course/lessons _____
 get into sth _____
 go clubbing _____
 hang around in the streets _____
 hang out with sb _____
 join a club/become a member of a club

 learn the piano _____
 relax _____
 sing in a band _____
 take sth up _____
 youth centre _____

Food

Meat, fish and seafood

bacon _____
 beef _____
 chicken _____
 cod _____
 ham _____
 lamb _____
 prawns _____
 red meat _____
 salmon _____
 sardines _____
 sausage _____
 shellfish _____
 tuna _____

Fruit

apple _____
 avocado _____
 banana _____
 grapefruit _____
 grape _____
 kiwi _____
 mango _____
 melon _____
 orange _____

Vegetables

beetroot _____
 broccoli _____

Brussels sprouts _____
 cabbage _____
 carrot _____
 cauliflower _____
 celery _____
 chilli _____
 corn _____
 garlic _____
 green beans _____
 lettuce _____
 olive _____
 onion _____
 potato _____
 red pepper _____
 soya _____
 spinach _____
 tomato _____

Dairy products

butter _____
 cheese _____
 cream _____
 egg _____
 milk _____

Drinks

coffee _____
 coke _____
 fizzy drink _____
 juice _____
 tea _____
 water _____

Dishes

barbequed steak _____
 cheeseburger _____
 chips _____
 fast food _____
 fried eggs _____
 (green) salad _____
 (Indian) curry _____
 meat pie _____
 omelette _____

pancake _____
 pasta sauce _____
 pizza _____
 pudding _____
 risotto _____
 sandwich _____
 scrambled eggs _____
 steak _____
 stew _____
 sushi _____
 (vegetable) soup _____

Sweets and desserts

apple pie _____
 biscuit _____
 cake _____
 chocolate mousse _____
 (dark) chocolate _____
 fruit salad _____
 ice cream _____

Other

(brown) sugar _____
 cereal _____
 crisps _____
 crust _____
 jam _____
 leftovers _____
 mushroom _____
 olive oil _____
 popcorn _____
 rice _____
 salt _____
 (white) bread _____

Meals

breakfast _____
 dinner _____
 lunch _____
 main course _____
 snack _____
 starter _____
 supper _____

Adjectives describing food

bitter _____
 boiled _____
 cold _____
 cooked _____
 crispy _____
 delicious/yummy _____
 disgusting _____
 dried _____
 edible _____
 fattening _____
 firm _____
 fresh _____
 fried _____
 frozen _____
 greasy _____
 healthy _____
 hot/spicy _____
 juicy _____
 mild _____
 raw _____
 ripe _____
 roast _____
 rotten _____
 salty _____
 smelly _____
 sour _____
 strong _____
 sweet _____
 tasty _____
 stale _____
 tinned _____
 ugly _____
 unripe _____
 warm _____

Cooking

add _____
 boil _____
 chop (up) _____
 cook _____
 cup _____

cut up _____
 eat up _____
 feed _____
 flavour _____
 freeze _____
 fry _____
 heat _____
 ingredient _____
 jar _____
 loaf _____
 mash (up) _____
 mix _____
 mixture _____
 oven _____
 packet _____
 pan/saucepan _____
 peel _____
 plate _____
 portion _____
 pour _____
 press _____
 recipe _____
 roast _____
 serve _____
 slice (v, n) _____
 smell _____
 spoon _____
 taste (v, n) _____
 texture _____
 tin _____

Food and health

animal products _____
 balanced diet _____
 be allergic to sth _____
 eating habits _____
 energy boost _____
 fresh produce _____
 grease _____
 heavy/light meal _____
 (healthy) lifestyle _____
 lose weight _____

nutritionist _____
 protein _____
 vegan _____
 vegetarian _____
 vitamin _____

In a restaurant

bill _____
 chef _____
 cook _____
 cuisine _____
 menu _____
 order (v, n) _____
 waiter/waitress _____

Shopping and services

advertiser _____
 advertising _____
 bank account _____
 changing room _____
 consumer _____
 reduce _____
 reduction _____
 shop online _____
 shopping bag _____
 shopping mall _____
 size _____
 queue/stand in a queue _____
 try (sth) on _____

Travelling and tourism

Means of transport

canoe _____
 car _____
 (cargo) ship _____
 double-decker (bus) _____
 (express) train _____
 ferry _____
 (fishing) boat _____

helicopter _____
 jeep _____
 plane _____

Air/Road/Sea travel

airport _____
 arrive _____
 baggage reclaim _____
 board a ship/a plane/a ferry _____
 boarding pass _____
 book a ticket/a flight/a hotel room _____

car journey _____
 catch a train/a bus/a plane _____
 check-in desk _____
 collect your luggage _____
 cross a sea/a river _____
 cross Europe _____
 go away _____
 departure lounge _____
 destination _____
 fasten your seat belt _____
 fly _____
 gate _____
 get off _____
 go abroad _____
 go through passport control/security _____

GPS _____
 land _____
 map _____
 miss a train/a bus/a flight _____
 overhead locker _____
 passenger _____
 pilot _____
 reach your destination _____
 reservation _____
 return journey _____
 route _____
 sail _____
 security check _____
 set off (on a journey) _____

stop over _____
 take off _____
 terminal _____
 ticket _____
 traffic jam _____
 travel agent _____
 travel by train/bus _____
 travel company _____
 travel insurance _____
 traveller _____

Types of trips

beach/seaside holiday _____
 bus trip _____
 business trip _____
 city break _____
 cruise _____
 go backpacking _____
 holiday camp _____
 overland tour _____
 safari _____
 school holiday _____
 school trip _____
 skiing holiday _____
 trekking _____

Accommodation

camp _____
 campsite _____
 (three-star) hotel _____
 put up a tent _____
 seaside/beach resort _____
 single room _____
 ski resort _____
 stay in/at _____
 stay over _____
 youth hostel _____

On holiday

embassy _____
 get on (your bike) _____
 guide book _____
 hike _____

holidaymaker _____
 location _____
 main square _____
 move on to _____
 outdoor activities _____
 overcrowded _____
 ride (a horse) _____
 row _____
 see the sights _____
 tour guide _____
 tour leader _____
 tourism _____
 travel arrangements _____
 tropical island _____

Adventure and danger

base camp _____
 cliff _____
 climb _____
 climber _____
 come down the mountain _____
 crash _____
 crash into sth _____
 disaster _____
 emergency call _____
 explore _____
 knock _____
 penknife _____
 rescue team _____
 risk _____
 rope _____
 safety _____
 survive _____
 survivor _____
 trap _____
 unexpected event _____

Culture

Art

art critic _____
 curator _____
 gallery _____

painting _____
 sculpture _____
 work of art _____

Literature

author _____
 autobiographical _____
 cover _____
 describe _____
 detective novel _____
 extract _____
 main character _____
 narrator _____
 novel _____
 poem _____
 tell a story _____

Types of TV and TV programmes

cable television _____
 chat show _____
 documentary _____
 music programme _____
 quiz/game show _____
 reality TV/reality show _____
 satellite television _____
 sitcom _____
 soap opera _____
 sports programme _____
 talent/music competition _____
 the news/current affairs _____
 TV channel _____
 TV network _____
 TV series/serial _____

Television, film, music

action film _____
 adaptation _____
 advert _____
 audience _____
 audition (v, n) _____
 band _____
 be nominated for an Oscar _____

broadcast _____
 celebrity _____
 challenge _____
 chance of winning _____
 coach _____
 compete _____
 competition _____
 competitor _____
 contest _____
 contestant _____
 direct _____
 director _____
 edit _____
 edition _____
 editor _____
 eliminate _____
 enter a competition _____
 entertain _____
 entertainer _____
 entertainment _____
 episode _____
 fail _____
 female/male artist _____
 festival-goer _____
 hidden camera _____
 in the spotlight _____
 interview sb _____
 judge (v, n) _____
 live _____
 movie _____
 movie business _____
 music label _____
 Oscar ceremony _____
 panel _____
 perform _____
 performance _____
 performer _____
 photo session _____
 play a role _____
 pop singer _____
 present _____
 presentation _____

presenter _____
 produce _____
 producer _____
 production _____
 professional _____
 recording contract _____
 rehearsal _____
 reunion show _____
 royalty _____
 scene _____
 screenplay _____
 script _____
 solo artist _____
 song lyrics _____
 stunt _____
 television personality _____
 video clip _____
 viewer _____
 vote off _____
 vote online/by telephone/by text _____
 win the title/prize _____
 winner _____

Sport

Types of sport

aerobics _____
 archery _____
 athletics _____
 badminton _____
 baseball _____
 basketball _____
 boxing _____
 canoeing _____
 competitive sport _____
 cricket _____
 cycling _____
 extreme sport _____
 football _____
 golf _____
 hockey _____

ice hockey _____
 individual/team sport _____
 indoor/outdoor sport _____
 jogging _____
 judo _____
 karate _____
 long jump _____
 martial arts _____
 motor racing _____
 rugby _____
 sailing _____
 skating _____
 skiing _____
 snowboarding _____
 squash _____
 summer/winter sport _____
 swimming _____
 (table) tennis _____
 volleyball _____
 wind-surfing _____
 wrestling _____

Places where you do sport

athletics track _____
 basketball/volleyball court _____
 boxing/wrestling ring _____
 cricket/football/rugby/hockey pitch _____

 cycle/motor racing track _____
 golf course _____
 gym _____
 ice rink _____
 (Olympic) swimming pool _____
 sailing club _____
 ski resort _____
 (ski) slope _____
 squash/tennis court _____
 stadium _____

Sports equipment

badminton/squash/tennis racket _____

 baseball/cricket bat _____

boots _____
 golf club _____
 helmet _____
 hockey stick _____
 kit _____
 red/yellow card _____
 snowboard _____
 surfboard _____
 table tennis bat _____
 trainers _____

People in sport

athlete _____
 captain _____
 coach/trainer _____
 fan _____
 footballer _____
 goalkeeper _____
 opponent _____
 opposing team _____
 player _____
 referee _____
 rival _____
 runner _____
 spectator _____
 surfer _____
 team-mate _____

Types of sports competitions

cycle race _____
 FA Cup _____
 final _____
 league _____
 (long-distance) race _____

 marathon _____
 match _____
 Paralympics/Paralympic Games _____

 sporting/sports event _____
 tournament _____
 walking race _____
 yacht race _____

Competing in sports

beat an opponent/the champion _____

 blow a whistle _____
 bounce/catch/hit/kick/pass/throw
 a ball _____
 break a world record _____
 chase after sb _____
 come first/second/last _____
 compete _____
 dive for the ball _____
 do sport _____
 enter a competition _____
 gold/silver/bronze medal _____
 keep/stay fit, keep/stay in shape _____

 lead _____
 lose a match/a game _____
 lose a point _____
 overtake _____
 position _____
 qualify for _____
 score _____
 score a goal/a point _____
 set a new (world) record _____
 speed _____
 speed up _____
 take part in _____
 training session _____
 win a point _____
 win a prize/a match/a game _____

Health

Parts of the body

ankle _____
 arm _____
 back _____
 bone _____
 bottom _____
 calf _____
 cheek _____

chest _____
 elbow _____
 eyebrows _____
 finger _____
 fingernail _____
 foot _____
 forehead _____
 heel _____
 jaw _____
 knee _____
 lips _____
 neck _____
 rib _____
 shoulder _____
 stomach _____
 thigh _____
 thumb _____
 toe _____
 tongue _____
 tooth _____
 waist _____
 wrist _____

Injuries and disabilities

black eye _____
 bleed _____
 break _____
 break your leg/your arm/a rib _____

 break your neck _____
 broken leg/bone _____
 bruise (v, n) _____
 bruised elbow _____
 burn (n) _____
 burn your tongue/finger _____
 burnt finger _____
 cut (n) _____
 cut finger/hand/lip _____
 cut your finger/ hand/lip _____
 disabled _____
 dislocate your shoulder/thumb _____

dislocated shoulder/thumb _____
 dislocation _____
 fall over/have a fall _____
 get a few cuts/bruises/scratches _____

 get injured * _____
 hurt yourself _____
 overcome your disability _____
 prosthetic leg _____
 scratch your knees/neck _____
 scratches on your legs _____
 (spinal) injury _____
 sprain (n) _____
 sprain/twist your ankle/wrist/knee _____

 sprained ankle _____
 sting (v, n) _____
 swollen _____
 the blind _____
 the deaf _____
 tragedy _____
 unconscious _____
 wheelchair _____

Illnesses and symptoms

ache _____
 asthma _____
 be sick (with) _____
 catch (a disease) _____
 cold _____
 condition _____
 contagious _____
 cough _____
 deadly _____
 develop/get symptoms _____
 die _____
 fall/get ill (with sth) _____
 feel dizzy/sick _____
 feel well/weak _____
 fever _____
 flu _____
 get (malaria) _____

get worse _____
 have a pain in your back/leg/chest _____

 have a temperature _____
 have no appetite _____
 hay fever _____
 headache _____
 heart attack _____
 hurt _____
 (seriously) ill _____
 indigestion _____
 infection _____
 kill _____
 lose your voice _____
 malaria _____
 nosebleed _____
 poison _____
 put on weight _____
 rash _____
 runny nose _____
 sickness _____
 (have a) sore throat _____
 stomachache _____
 sunburn _____
 virus _____
 vomit _____
 vomiting _____
 weight problems _____

Treatment

be on a diet _____
 breathe in/out _____
 cure (v, n) _____
 diagnose _____
 diagnosis _____
 do a blood test _____
 examine _____
 eye drops _____
 eyesight _____
 first aid _____
 get better _____
 give sb an injection _____

go on a diet _____
 have your eyes tested _____
 (herbal) medicine _____
 hospital _____
 inject _____
 make a complete recovery _____
 make an appointment _____
 nurse _____
 open wide _____
 operation _____
 patient _____
 prescribe _____
 prescription _____
 prevent _____
 prevention _____
 put a plaster on sth _____
 put ice on sth _____
 recover (from a disease) _____
 recovery _____
 release sb from hospital _____
 save lives _____
 see a doctor _____
 stop the blood flowing _____
 surgeon _____
 take (antihistamine) tablets _____
 take sb's temperature _____
 treat _____

Science and technology

The Internet and modern technology

app (application) _____
 blog _____
 blog entry _____
 blogger _____
 blogging _____
 bring alive _____
 broadband connection _____
 charge your phone _____
 chat online _____

connected to _____
 device _____
 download _____
 earphones _____
 feedback _____
 file _____
 film _____
 follow a vlog _____
 gadget _____
 go viral _____
 hit _____
 innovation _____
 instant communication _____
 interact _____
 interactive map _____
 Internet connection _____
 Internet superstar _____
 link _____
 log on to (Facebook) _____
 password _____
 phone charger _____
 post (v, n) _____
 print a document _____
 profile photo _____
 publicise _____
 satellite technology _____
 screen _____
 set up a webpage _____
 share sth with sb _____
 smartphone _____
 social networking site _____
 subscriber _____
 switch on _____
 switch off _____
 text _____
 the battery is flat _____
 topic _____
 tune a radio _____
 turn up the volume _____
 type in _____
 update (v, n) _____
 upload (v, n) _____

video _____
 video camera _____
 view (v, n) _____
 viral _____
 viral video _____
 virtual _____
 visit a website _____
 vlog (video blog) _____
 vlogger (video blogger) _____
 webcam _____
 white noise _____
 YouTube channel _____

Genetics

ancestor _____
 be the image of _____
 evolution _____
 determine _____
 (dominant) gene _____
 identical twins _____
 inherit sth from sb _____
 pass sth on _____
 resemble _____
 scientist _____
 take after sb _____
 unique _____

The natural world

Landscape

bay _____
 blood-red sunset _____
 bush _____ ; the bush _____
 calm _____
 canyon _____
 cascade _____
 coast _____
 continent _____
 country _____
 dam _____
 dense/thick forest _____
 desert _____
 flow _____

foothills _____
 glacier _____
 hillside _____
 island _____
 lake _____
 locate _____
 location _____
 mountain _____
 mountain range _____
 ocean _____
 overlook _____
 overlooking _____
 peninsula _____
 rainforest _____
 river bank _____
 sea _____
 sky _____
 sparkling lights _____
 steep hill _____
 stunning/amazing/perfect view of/over
 sth _____
 unspoilt _____
 valley _____
 volcano _____
 waterfall _____

Weather and natural disasters

climate _____
 crack _____
 destroy _____
 destruction _____
 drought _____
 erupt _____
 evacuate _____
 evacuation _____
 explode _____
 (extinct/active) volcano _____
 extreme weather _____
 flood (v, n) _____
 flooding _____
 forecaster _____
 ground _____
 hurricane _____

(major) earthquake _____
 meteorology _____
 predict _____
 prediction _____
 rain (v, n) _____
 snow (v, n) _____
 rescuer _____
 river burst its banks _____
 send out hot rocks _____
 shake _____
 storm _____
 strike _____
 (strong) wind _____
 tornado _____
 tsunami _____
 tsunami zone _____
 volcanic eruption _____
 wave _____
 weather centre _____
 weather forecast _____

Animals

bear _____
 bite _____
 buffalo _____
 cage _____
 cattle _____
 cheetah _____
 dolphin _____
 domestic animal _____
 eagle _____
 elephant _____
 feed _____
 female elephant/gorilla _____
 giraffe _____
 goat _____
 herd _____
 leopard _____
 lion _____
 on the loose _____
 ostrich _____
 penguin _____

pet _____
 puma _____
 rhinoceros _____
 roar (v, n) _____
 shark _____
 tiger _____
 trunk _____
 whale _____
 wolf _____
 zebra _____
 zoo _____

Environmental issues

(air) pollution _____
 air quality _____
 climate change _____
 damage the environment _____
 deforestation _____
 endangered (plants/species/wildlife)

 environment _____
 environmental protection _____

 global warming _____
 illegal logging _____
 low-energy light bulb _____
 melt _____
 natural resources _____
 on a global scale _____
 organic _____
 produce crops _____
 public transport _____
 recreate _____
 recycle _____
 recycling bin _____
 renewable energy _____
 rubbish _____
 save energy/electricity _____
 solar panel _____
 solar power _____
 traffic pollution _____
 waste (v, n) _____

State and society

Poverty

barefoot _____
 be fortunate/less fortunate _____

 beg _____
 beggar _____
 collection cup _____
 homeless _____
 jobless _____
 poverty _____
 shelter _____
 sleep rough _____
 the poor _____

Charity

benefit _____
 charity event _____
 collect money _____
 collection _____
 cycle/cycle race _____
 do a good deed _____
 donate _____
 donation _____
 foundation _____
 in memory of sb _____
 offer sb a reward/a job _____

 organise a sale _____
 participant _____
 raise money for (charity) _____
 second-hand clothes _____
 sponsor _____
 take part in _____
 voluntary work _____

State and economy

abolish _____
 aristocracy _____
 authorities _____
 community _____

citizen _____
 city council _____
 constitution _____
 demonstration _____
 economic growth _____
 elect _____
 export _____
 get access to _____
 government _____
 health care _____
 immigrant _____
 inhabitant _____
 leader _____
 majority _____
 organisation _____
 overpopulation _____
 politician _____
 population _____
 press conference _____
 production _____
 provide _____
 public institution _____
 raise awareness of sth _____

 revolutionary _____
 revolution _____
 standard of living _____
 statistics _____

Crime

arrest _____
 break the rules/the law _____

 burglar alarm _____
 burglary _____
 burgle _____
 case _____
 cell _____
 commit murder/a crime _____

 criminal damage _____
 death penalty _____

dig a tunnel _____
 escape (v) _____
 escape attempt/attempted escape _____

 fake _____
 follow _____
 imprison _____
 investigate _____
 judge _____
 kill _____
 lock (n) _____
 lock sb (up) _____
 make an example of sb _____

 murderer _____
 policeman/policewoman/police officer _____

 prison guard _____
 prisoner _____
 punish _____
 question _____
 release sb from prison _____

 robbery _____
 security firm _____
 security lights _____
 sentence (n) _____
 sentence sb to (death) _____

 steal _____
 suspect (v, n) _____
 theft _____
 uniform _____
 violence _____
 young offender _____

People

1 Complete the tips with the words in the box.

beard bracelet curly flared jeans freckles
leather silver ring sunglasses sweatpants

BE TRENDY THIS SUMMER

IN ...

- 0 It's summer, so sunglasses are a must in sunny weather. Don't leave home without them!
- 1 A pale complexion is in – stay out of the sun. A few _____ are cool though!
- 2 _____ hair is in – go for a natural hairstyle for the beach this summer.
- 3 _____ are definitely in. Wear them with sandals or high-heels in the evening.
- 4 Stylish, handmade jewellery is in – go for a _____ or a pair of earrings to look original.

OUT ...

- 5 Don't grow a goatee _____ – they're out and you don't want to look like your uncle this summer.
- 6 _____ clothes are definitely out – we are not going to kill animals for the sake of fashion!
- 7 Remember to wear _____ only when doing sports. Mind you they should be close-fitting, not baggy!
- 8 Heavy gold jewellery is out – if you want to look trendy, wear a delicate _____.

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 She is easily hurt by what other people say. She's _____.
A sensitive B honest C polite D insensitive
- 1 Tom is relaxed – he is _____.
A friendly B easy-going C outgoing D optimistic
- 2 Which adjective *cannot* be used to describe a bad student?
A immature B rude C hard-working D lazy
- 3 Andy has never been afraid of trying new things or taking risks – he is definitely _____.
A adventurous B shy C nervous D stupid
- 4 It's incredible how my grandparents have been so loving and _____ towards each other for over fifty years!
A mean B cruel C caring D dynamic
- 5 As a successful businesswoman, she is a(n) _____ role model for all of us.
A sophisticated B inspiring C loyal D modest
- 6 Matt always complains about everything – he is so _____.
A grumpy B childish C arrogant D cheeky

Home

1 Match the words with their meanings.

- 0 current address
- 1 neighbourhood
- 2 industrial area
- 3 suburbs
- 4 local community

- a the area on the edge of a city where most people live
- b an area with factories rather than houses and flats
- c an area of a town/city
- d the people living in one area
- e the place where you live at the moment

e
□
□
□
□

2 Complete the texts with the words in the boxes.

countryside detached flat front door
home town modern neighbours redecorate

They didn't go to Hawaii or the Caribbean on honeymoon. In fact, they didn't go anywhere as they had spent all their money on buying their first house.

When the wedding reception was over, they immediately got into their old Mini and dashed to the ⁰countryside, leaving behind the noise of their ¹_____. Although the house didn't look attractive at first sight, they couldn't wait to see it. Finally, they arrived at a ²_____ building with a grey façade. It was a ³_____ house, as Mary didn't like the idea of having noisy ⁴_____ on the other side of the wall. They were both excited because they had never lived in a house before – only a ⁵_____ – and couldn't wait to ⁶_____ their new home. There was only one problem: they had forgotten the key to the ⁷_____!

bill burglar cut gardening gate
make mower running tidy wall

We need to set some house rules. The garden ⁸_____ must always be closed – the Smiths have a horrible dog. Good thing our ⁹_____ is so tall! You will have to turn on the ¹⁰_____ alarm when you go out, but it's easy to use. We ¹¹_____ our beds in the morning and ¹²_____ the bedrooms every other day. I'll pay the ¹³_____ for electricity if you pay the one for heating. Of course, we've got ¹⁴_____ water in the bathroom and kitchen – we don't have to get it from the river! By the way, I can do the cooking if you do the ¹⁵_____ – I'm allergic and can't ¹⁶_____ the grass. Yes, we do have a lawn ¹⁷_____ you can use.

School

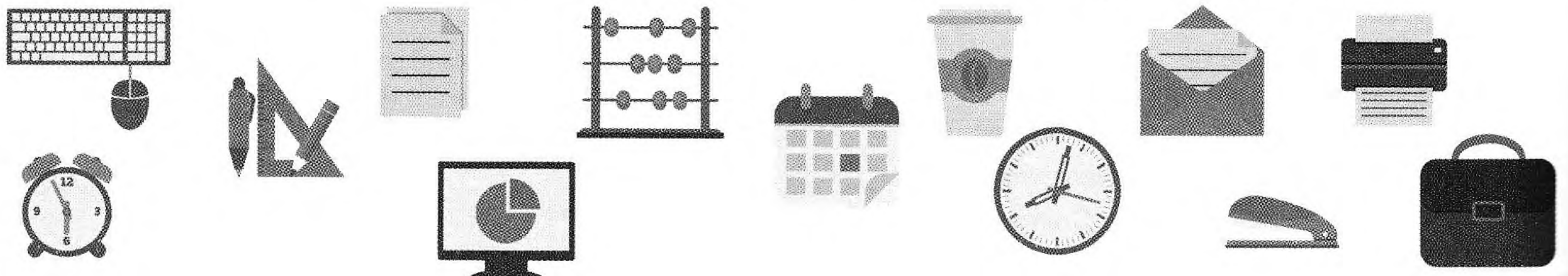
1 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 She was excluded ___ school for her behaviour.
 - A of
 - B out
 - C from**
 - D on
- 1 An after-school club is something ___.
 - A all school pupils attend
 - B all teachers attend
 - C some school pupils attend
 - D parents attend
- 2 Before an exam, you usually ___.
 - A do some revision
 - B do a degree
 - B copy somebody's homework**
 - D drop a subject
- 3 You usually eat lunch in the school's ___.
 - A canteen
 - B gym
 - C classrooms
 - D grounds
- 4 A tutor is ___.
 - A a friend from school
 - B a school teacher
 - C the head teacher
 - D a person who gives private lessons
- 5 A single-sex school is a school ___.
 - A only for boys
 - B only for girls
 - C either for boys or girls
 - D for both boys and girls

2 Complete the text with the words in the box.

college do a course ~~get a place~~
 get better marks learn new skills
 pass your exams skip lessons

Do you want to ⁰get a place at university or ¹_____ in the future? If you do, you need to remember that you have to ²_____ first. If you want to do that, don't ³_____ – regular class attendance will help you ⁴_____ in your exams. Once you get a place at university and ⁵_____ there, you will ⁶_____, which will help you get a dream job later.



Work

1 Complete the names of the jobs in the text. The first letter of each word is given.

MY CLASS

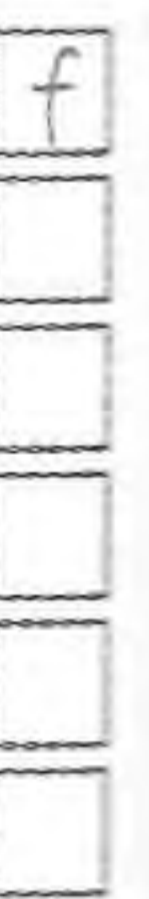
They all used to be in the same class and I used to be their class master. However, each of them had totally different ambitions. For example, Fiona always liked dressing up and made her own clothes. No wonder she became a ⁰fashion designer. Sophie was called the most beautiful girl in school and, since she became a ¹m_____, you can now see her face on the covers of magazines. Tom was very good at Geography and always wanted to travel – now he's a ²t_____ ^l_____ in Africa! Liz, on the other hand, preferred Biology and was good at lab experiments. She is now a well-known ³s_____. Then there's Pete, who would often read crime stories under his desk. Now I hear he's the best ⁴p_____ ^{o_____ in the whole town! His best school friend, Tim, works as a ⁵j_____, and I hear they often meet in court. David, who claimed he was not interested in current affairs, studied Politics at university and is now a ⁶p_____. As for Lucy, I always knew she would make a wonderful ⁷d_____. I wonder how many hospital patients she has treated successfully. Brenda, another of my students, works in the same hospital as a ⁸n_____. She always liked caring for others.}

The jobs of my former pupils vary so much. There is a ⁹c_____ who works in a well-known London restaurant and a ¹⁰r_____ who appears on the TV news. You may wonder how I know all this. Well, of course, from Tina, the ¹¹d_____ who takes care of my teeth!

2 Match the words with their meanings.

- 0 headquarters
- 1 full-time job
- 2 part-time job
- 3 salary
- 4 contract
- 5 employee

- a a job for eight hours a day and five times a week
- b money you get from your company once a month for doing a job
- c a job, for example, for four hours a day
- d a document you sign before you start a job
- e a person who works in a company
- f the main building used by a company



Family and social life

1 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 He was reunited __ his family.
A on B in C at **D with**
- 1 We have a lot __ common.
A with B in C on D -
- 2 If you get into something, you __ .
A are interested in it
B aren't interested in it
C hate it
D have to do it
- 3 Your nephew is __ .
A your sister's son-in-law
B your sister's son
C your sister's husband
D your sister's daughter
- 4 When you split up with somebody, you __ .
A fall in love
B go out with him/her
C end a relationship
D date him/her
- 5 The news about his wedding really __ my day.
A made B did C took D had
- 6 They used to be close friends, but they lost __ after college.
A communication
B friendship
C touch
D interests

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the phrasal verbs in the box.

call on fall out ~~live up~~ look after
look up put up take up

- 0 The new *Hobbit* movie didn't live up to my expectations – I was disappointed.
- 1 You look depressed! Did you _____ with your parents again?
- 2 When John's parents are away for business, he _____ his grandma, does the shopping for her and walks her dog.
- 3 She'd like to live on her own; she can't _____ with her parents.
- 4 Mary really _____ to her older sister – she wants to be just like her.
- 5 Why don't you _____ Ann this afternoon and see if she needs any help with the decorations?
- 6 After the divorce he _____ diving and sailing. His ex-wife hated water sports.

Food

1 Complete the words in the advertisements. Some letters are given.

If you want to stay fit, drink our juices! Try the ⁰grapefruit juice, a great source of vitamin C.

Forgotten your school ¹l _____ ? Don't worry! Buy our freshly made ²s _____ s. We have dozens of them on offer: cheese, ham, egg – you name it, we have it! They are ³d _____ too!

Brighten up your dinner with our ⁴t _____ food. All you have to do at home is open the packaging and ⁵h _____ it up! On our menu we have ⁶v _____ soup, Indian ⁷c _____ and also pasta ⁸s _____ !

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 I always eat __ vegetables – I never cook them.
A unripe C crispy
B raw D cold
- 1 First, __ the potatoes and then __ them.
A mash up, peel C roast, cook
B peel, slice D cook, press
- 2 If you don't cover the bread, it will go __ .
A stale C ripe
B rotten D smelly
- 3 White __ with butter and honey is good for breakfast, but don't eat too much of it.
A shellfish C bread
B lettuce D mango
- 4 Before our main course we all had a __ .
A breakfast C supper
B snack D starter
- 5 She opened a __ of crisps and ate them all.
A jar C packet
B pan D tin
- 6 Mild food doesn't have any __ spices in it.
A hot C salty
B sweet D sour
- 7 Which of these is usually made of fish?
A sushi C bacon
B ham D sausage
- 8 For most people, the __ of food is more important than its appearance.
A mixture C flavour
B vitamin D balanced diet

Shopping and services

1 Complete the words in the text. Some letters are given.

I hate going shopping. Why? Well, first of all, I hate standing in a ⁰queue – it takes so long! Then I always have problems finding my ¹s_____ – everything is too small or too big. Usually the right one is in a colour I hate. If I find something (which is not easy, as you can see!), then I need to go to the ²c_____ room to ³t_____ it on, and it's always so hot in there. The mirrors make you look fat! If I finally buy something, they always ⁴r_____ the price just a few days later and, of course, I can't return the clothes because I've already worn them.

Shopping for food is also bad. I always leave my shopping ⁵b_____ at home and have to buy one in the store. I can never find anything quickly because they keep changing the location of the products – bread is where the drinks were last month and so on. Oh, and I also get lost in those huge shopping ⁶m_____s.

That's why I shop ⁷o_____ whenever I can – it's easy, fast and I don't have to leave home! The stores also have great special offers and seasonal price ⁸r_____. It's even easier now I've opened a bank ⁹a_____ in an Internet bank. ¹⁰c_____ of Internet shops definitely need to have a credit card! Another thing is, there isn't so much ¹¹a_____ online – or if there is, you can easily block it, and you can't do that with posters or TV ads (which is why ¹²a_____ prefer to use these media – more people see them, whether they want to or not!).



Traveling and tourism

1 Complete the sentences with the words in the box. Then put the sentences in the correct order.

[booked boarded control gate locker
luggage pass seat belt security took]

- a I booked the flight.
- b I looked for my _____.
- c I fastened my _____.
- d The plane _____ off.
- e I _____ the plane.
- f I checked in my _____.
- g I put my luggage in the overhead _____.
- h I went through the _____ check and passport _____.
- i I received my boarding _____.

1



2 Are the statements true (T) or false (F)?

- 0 If you want to go trekking, you go on a cruise.
- 1 Before boarding, you wait in the departure lounge.
- 2 You check in on the plane.
- 3 You need a single room if you travel alone.
- 4 A resort is a place at the airport.
- 5 Double-deckers are usually seen in cities.
- 6 You take a ferry on an overland tour.
- 7 You move very fast in a traffic jam.
- 8 A holiday camp is usually for children or teenagers.
- 9 If you stay at a campsite, you often sleep in a tent.
- 10 When you want to cross the sea, it's best to use a canoe.
- 11 GPS is a technology that helps you find your destination when you're travelling, e.g. by car.
- 12 Youth hostels are only for families with small children.

F

Culture

1 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 I love watching __ shows. You can learn a lot. And some of those contestants know everything!
A quiz C reality
 B chat D soap
- 1 He found his live __ in front of the judges so stressful that he forgot the lyrics to the song.
 A game C drama
 B audition D audience
- 2 The band has a(n) __ very early in the morning, to practise new pieces.
 A performance C rehearsal
 B audition D cover
- 3 A(n) __ does not work in the film industry.
 A director C producer
 B editor D curator
- 4 Who wrote the __ for this film?
 A image C royalty
 B work of art D screenplay
- 5 This actor played the main __ in my favourite comedy.
 A group C script
 B character D scene
- 6 She sang so fast I couldn't understand the song __ at all.
 A lyrics C story
 B episode D poem

2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 0 Film production started only yesterday and already there are problems. **PRODUCE**
- 1 Their _____ at the Royal Theatre was spectacular. **PERFORM**
- 2 The _____ took place in London. The winner got a job on TV. **COMPETE**
- 3 She's an excellent _____. I watch all her shows, even the ones about politics! **PRESENT**
- 4 He works as an _____ – you know, singing, dancing and telling jokes on stage. **ENTERTAIN**
- 5 Everything that goes on in the house is filmed by _____ cameras, but it's not really a secret – all the people know about it. **HIDE**
- 6 Tim and his friends are so excited – they're going to New York to sign a _____ contract for their band! **RECORD**
- 7 The film is an _____ of a Jane Austen novel. **ADAPT**
- 8 There are too many talented _____. I don't know who to vote for. **CONTEST**
- 9 Here is a copy of the latest _____ of our magazine. **EDIT**
- 10 The _____ is a young girl growing up in Italy in the 1950s. **NARRATE**

Sport

1 Complete the text with the words in the box.

[extreme golf helmet martial arts
 motor racing trainer windsurfing wrestling]

My grandson is keen on sports and that's OK. What worries me though is that whenever he talks about the sports, I feel as if he's speaking to me in a foreign language. For example, he says he prefers ⁰wrestling to judo because it's more exciting. Every second weekend he goes out with his friends to watch special ¹ _____ tournaments. Now he's packing for a sports camp where he's going to try ² _____. Of course, I mustn't tell his parents about that! He's trying on his new ³ _____ for biking. He says it will protect his head whatever happens! You know what? This very moment he's surfing on my carefully polished shiny floor in the corridor. But my flat is not an ocean and he is not ⁴ _____. Well, I'm proud of my grandson, but I wish he would take up ⁵ _____ and play it on my nicely trimmed lawn. It would be a lot safer than all these ⁶ _____ sports. Anyway, I must finish now. I'd tell you more about my grandson, but my ⁷ _____ is giving me another archery lesson today, so I must be going! Take care, everybody!

2 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 Which of these is not a winter sport?
 A skiing C windsurfing
 B snowboarding D skating
- 1 You play table tennis with a __.
 A bat C racket
 B club D stick
- 2 He skied down the __.
 A course C ice rink
 B court D slope
- 3 Which of these is not a martial art?
 A judo C rugby
 B karate D kung-fu
- 4 Which of these is not a team sport?
 A cricket C volleyball
 B baseball D the long jump
- 5 Which sport is not played indoors?
 A badminton C basketball
 B canoeing D hockey
- 6 All the __ shouted happily when he scored the last goal.
 A opponents C fans
 B goalkeepers D coaches

Health

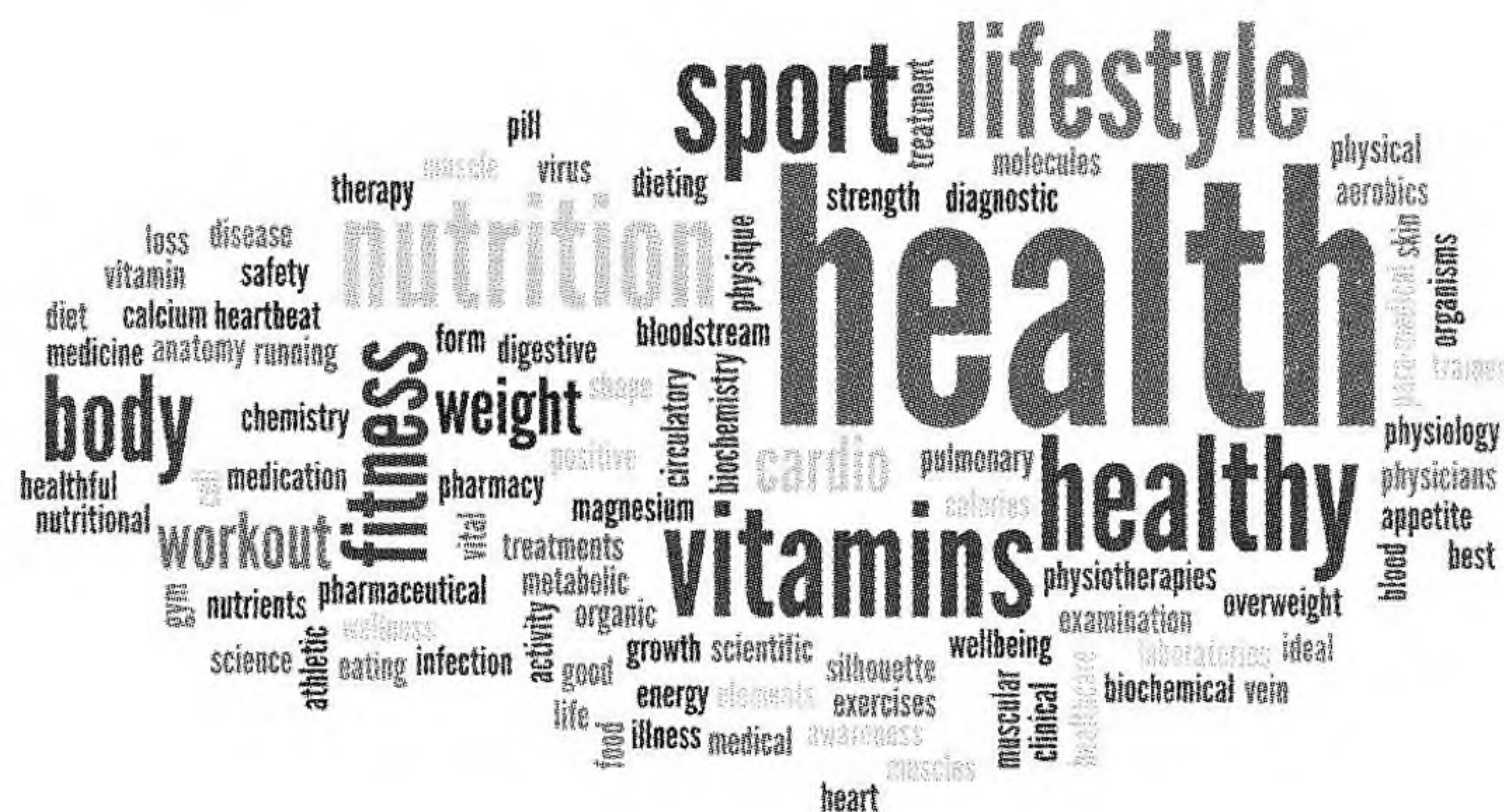
1 Read the definitions and complete the words. Some letters are given.

- 0 It's when you have a pain in your stomach.
s o m a c h a c h e
- 1 You probably have it if you sneeze or cough when certain plants blossom. h _ _ f _ _ _ r
- 2 It's a disease that affects a particular part of your body and is caused by a virus or bacteria. i _ _ _ _ _ n
- 3 If you're allergic to something you eat, you may get this on your skin. r _ _ _
- 4 It's a tropical disease transmitted by mosquitoes. m _ _ _ _ _
- 5 You stick it on your skin when you have a small wound. p _ _ _ _ _
- 6 It's like a finger, but on your foot. t _ _ _
- 7 You wear your watch on it. w _ _ _ _ _
- 8 You get this if you spend too much time in the sun. s _ _ _ _ _

2 Complete the text with the words in the box.

asthma coughing fall feel sick
injured lose nosebleed pain
sore stomachache symptoms

Doctor, I'm lucky to be alive. When I watch TV for only four hours, my eyes get ⁰ sore. Surfing the Internet for ten hours gives me a terrible ¹ _____ in my back. When I'm on the phone for only two or three hours, I ² _____ my voice. What's more, I've started to get ³ _____ of allergy to the crisps I munch on when playing computer games. I keep ⁴ _____ all the time (could it be the beginning of ⁵ _____ ?) after eating only three or four packets, and my skin gets itchy. Next, when I eat out in my favourite fast food restaurant, which I only do on Tuesdays and Fridays, I get a terrible ⁶ _____. Sometimes I even ⁷ _____ and can't drink any fizzy drinks. When I have PE lessons, I sweat doing even the simplest exercise and ⁸ _____ over a lot, especially when we play team sports. Last week I even had a(n) ⁹ _____, which was really embarrassing because it caused so much fuss. As I am obviously seriously ill, please exempt me from my PE lessons. I am afraid I will get ¹⁰ _____ otherwise.



Science and technology

1 Read the definitions and complete the words. Some letters are given.

- 0 an online camera
w e b c a m
- 1 an Internet diary
b _ _ _
- 2 when you send a short message on your mobile phone
t _ _ _
- 3 a word you use to, e.g. access your computer
p _ _ _ _ _
- 4 documents or photos kept on a computer or phone
f _ _ _ s
- 5 you do this when you need a paper copy of an electronic document
p _ _ _ _
- 6 you use them to listen to music, e.g. on a bus
e _ _ _ _ _ s
- 7 a program on your mobile phone or computer
a _ _ _
- 8 something you use when your phone battery is flat
c _ _ _ _ _
- 9 when you send files or music online
u _ _ _ _ _
- 10 somebody who keeps a video blog
v _ _ _ _ _
- 11 a website where you can connect with your friends or people with similar interests
s _ _ _ _ _ n _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _

2 Complete the words in the sentences. Some letters are given.

- 0 Mary r e s e m b l e s her mother so much – they have the same eyes, nose and mouth.
- 1 Anthropologists have found the last common a _ _ _ _ _ of chimpanzees and humans, which was humans' closest relative.
- 2 Some s _ _ _ _ _ s believe that it is possible that worms exist deep beneath the surface of other planets.
- 3 We i _ _ _ _ _ both our looks and illnesses from our parents and grandparents.
- 4 Tim and Tom are i _ _ _ _ _ twins – nobody can tell them apart.
- 5 The theory of e _ _ _ _ _ says that all species evolved from a single original form of life.
- 6 At school, children learn basic information about g _ _ _ _ s and what they determine.
- 7 Queen Victoria p _ _ _ _ _ on the illness to her children.
- 8 Have you seen Tom's new girlfriend? She's the i _ _ _ _ of Jennifer Lawrence!

The natural world

- 1 Complete the words in the text. Some letters are given.

The long-awaited sequel of the famous 1998 disaster movie stars the brilliant Brian Hurrey and Lilian Dress. Hurrey plays Professor Killian, whose aim is to save humanity. The stunning Lilian Dress helps the professor to save the world. And the world has to face not one disaster, but many. First, the air ⁰quality on Earth is so bad that it causes climate ¹c_____. Heavy rains cause ²f_____. ³F_____s predict other disasters to come: strong winds leading to ⁴t_____s and ⁵h_____s. People have been ⁶ev_____ from all major cities. Is this all a result of global ⁷w_____g? Will Professor Killian save the planet before humans ⁸d_____e the environment even more and find a new source of renewable ⁹e_____y? You simply must see for yourselves. We can only add that the most exciting scene takes place on a ¹⁰g_____r in the Antarctic. Animal lovers won't be disappointed either: the ocean scenes include ¹¹w_____s and ¹²d_____s!

- 2 Complete the sentences with the correct form of the words in capitals.

- 0 The giant panda is an endangered species. **DANGER**
 1 The most deadly _____, which killed three million people, was in 1928 in China. **DRY**
 2 Pompeii was destroyed by a _____ eruption. **VOLCANO**
 3 If we believed all the natural disaster _____, we'd have moved to another continent ages ago. **PREDICT**
 4 It's marvellous to see such _____ nature. **SPOIL**
 5 Air _____ in Asian cities is horrible. **POLLUTE**
 6 Remember to put all the tins and cans in the _____ bin. **RECYCLE**
 7 The village's _____ is what makes it so attractive to tourists. **LOCATE**
 8 We stayed in a small hotel _____ the mountains. **OVERLOOK**
 9 Basically, _____ means there are fewer and fewer trees. **FOREST**
 10 We have to find a way to save the planet's _____ resources. **NATURE**

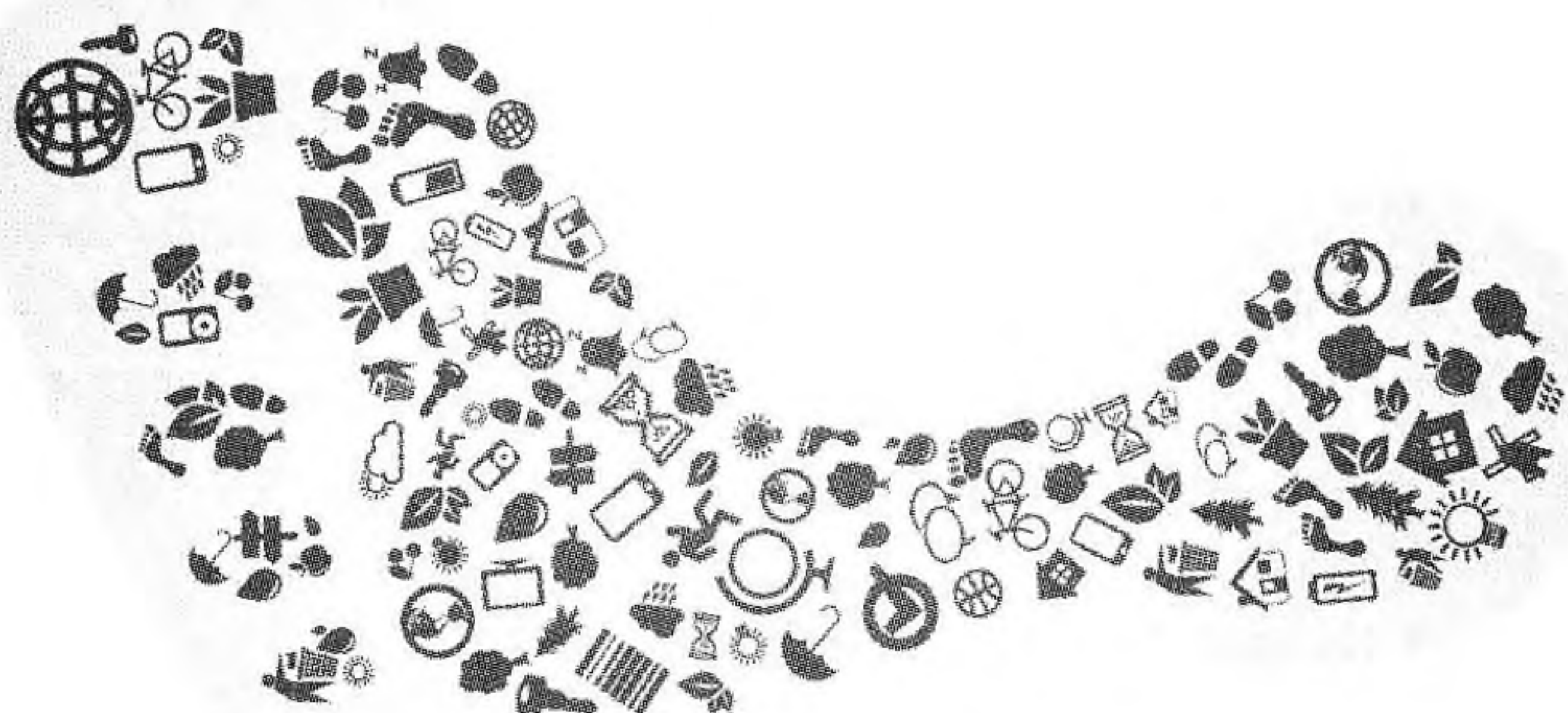
State and society

- 1 Read the definitions and complete the words. The first letter of each word is given.

- 0 the state of not having a job
jo bl es s
- 1 people getting together and protesting against something, e.g. in the street
d_____
- 2 too many people living in a particular area
o_____
- 3 most people
m_____
- 4 give money to, e.g. a charity
d_____
- 5 somebody who takes part in something
p_____
- 6 unpaid work, e.g. for a charity
v_____ w_____
- 7 the set of laws and regulations of a specific country
c_____
- 8 somebody who pretends to be somebody else
f_____
- 9 somebody who asks other people for money or food
b_____
- 10 choose a leader (e.g. the president)
e_____

- 2 Choose the correct answer, A, B, C or D.

- 0 We don't need security ___ outside the building – there's a street lamp right in front of the door.
A lights **C** lock
B firm **D** alarm
- 1 He committed ___ and was sent to prison.
A death **C** murder
B escape **D** kill
- 2 The ___ said he was not guilty and had not left home on the night of the crime.
A police officer **C** suspect
B judge **D** prison guard
- 3 In general, I think criminals should be ___.
A punished **C** burgled
B released **D** followed
- 4 You will do a good ___ if you help him.
A charity **C** benefit
B donation **D** deed
- 5 Would you like to work for a public ___ after school?
A government **C** institution
B community **D** authorities
- 6 Abraham Lincoln ___ slavery in the nineteenth century.
A abolished **C** judged
B punished **D** broke



3 Complete the texts with the words in the box.

arrest awareness begged burglary burgled
 care citizens collection council criminal
 cycle escape event foundation immigrant
 leader memory offender organising press
 second-hand statistics stole thief

ORCHARD LOCAL NEWS

The police are looking for a person who ⁰stole twenty packages of anti-aging cream from The Beauty Shop in Oak Avenue last Friday. The shop's personnel are looking for the ¹_____, who ran away at 15.30. They say it was a medium-height, plump woman, wearing a pink dress and an orange hat.

Sunflower Clinic is holding a(n) ²_____ conference on Saturday. The title is 'Health ³_____ For All'. Entry is free. According to ⁴_____, a lot of people have problems accessing medical treatment.

A florist store in Skylark Street has been ⁵_____ by an unknown man who is still at large. The ⁶_____ occurred last night. The burglar was seen leaving the shop by a witness, who called the police, but the ⁷_____ managed to ⁸_____, taking all the roses that were in the shop.

The Bloom Fund, a(n) ⁹_____ caring for the homeless and poor in the area, is organising a(n) ¹⁰_____ this weekend. The money collected will be spent on rehousing the poorest in Orchard District. The charity ¹¹_____ will be accompanied by a(n) ¹²_____ race; everybody is invited.

The Bloom Fund is also ¹³_____ a sale of ¹⁴_____ clothes, so have a look through your wardrobes. Every penny counts! The Bloom Fund was set up in ¹⁵_____ of Oscar Bloom, the late mayor of Orchard, who ¹⁶_____ on the streets as a young man.

The teenager who attacked two elderly ladies in Rose Street and stole their handbags is already under ¹⁷_____. The young ¹⁸_____ claimed that he desperately needed money to buy his grandmother some medicine.

The city ¹⁹_____ has a new chairperson. The new ²⁰_____ is a(n) ²¹_____ from Algeria who hopes to raise ²²_____ of the problems faced by non-British ²³_____ in our town.

4 Choose the correct answer, A, B or C.

- 0 We've decided to ___ a sale of books and DVDs next weekend.
 A donate
 B inspire
 C organise
- 1 I believe that if I ___ a good deed every day, I will be rewarded in the future.
 A do
 B give
 C make
- 2 In winter the government always runs a campaign to help people who sleep ___ in big cities.
 A badly B rough C barefoot
- 3 A beggar is a person who _____.
 A is looking for a job
 B has nowhere to live
 C asks you for money or food
- 4 A(n) ___ person doesn't have shelter.
 A deaf B elderly C homeless
- 5 The owner has offered a big ___ for the person who finds his lost dog.
 A reward
 B benefit
 C appreciation
- 6 If you don't know the local customs, you could easily break ___ while on holiday in a foreign country.
 A a case B the rules C a crime
- 7 Nobody has been sentenced ___ death in this country since the 1970s.
 A on B to C with
- 8 Car ___ is a serious problem in my town. Two cars have been stolen this week.
 A theft B robbery C burglary
- 9 The police have ___ the person who may have taken the money, but he refused to give any answers.
 A followed
 B questioned
 C investigated
- 10 Three criminals tried to ___ a tunnel under the prison wall.
 A dig B lock C drown
- 11 Is it true that the UK finally ___ the death penalty in 1998?
 A tuned
 B engaged
 C abolished
- *12 After living there for ten years, Raphael finally became a(n) ___ of Canada.
 A citizen B neighbour C immigrant
- 13 In her last article, Angela Stuart made a(n) ___ about public institutions in the UK.
 A point
 B excuse
 C example

Unit 1

Exercise 1

1 ring 2 fleece 3 tie 4 mittens 5 suit

Exercise 2

1 B 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 C

Exercise 3

1 dressed 2 there 3 haired

4 changed 5 aged

Exercise 4

1 don't believe 2 is dancing 3 needs

4 Are you putting/Are you going to put

5 doesn't know

Exercise 5

1 has known 2 has been worrying

3 've understood 4 has been singing

5 have been meeting

Exercise 6

1 C 2 C 3 A 4 A 5 C

Unit 2

Exercise 1

1 resort 2 tracks 3 pitches 4 athlete

5 goal

Exercise 2

1 coach 2 keeps 3 determined

4 passionate 5 courageous

Exercise 3

1 lost the match 2 will break the world

record 3 scored thirty points 4 beat my

opponent 5 made up my mind

Exercise 4

1 had trained 2 went 3 ended

4 had surfed 5 hurt

Exercise 5

1 not to get 2 jogging 3 join

4 do 5 playing

Exercise 6

1 A 2 C 3 B 4 C 5 A

Unit 3

Exercise 1

1 book 2 are going 3 missed

4 go 5 fasten

Exercise 2

1 fasten 2 setting out 3 trip 4 agents

5 rhinoceros

Exercise 3

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 C

Exercise 4

1 must be 2 can't be 3 can't have been

4 could have sprayed 5 must have

forgotten

Exercise 5

1 ~~used to be~~ was 2 ~~Would~~ Did 3 ✓

4 ~~wouldn't~~ didn't use to 5 was be

Exercise 6

1 B 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 C

Unit 4

Exercise 1

1 sour 2 balanced 3 stale 4 salty

5 dry

Exercise 2

1 snack 2 chop 3 without 4 smelly

5 food

Exercise 3

1 prawns 2 greasy 3 crispy

4 seafood 5 shellfish

Exercise 4

1 C 2 B 3 B 4 C 5 A

Exercise 5

1 will have gone down 2 will like

3 will have gone without 4 won't be

working 5 Will you have finished

Exercise 6

1 C 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 B

Unit 5

Exercise 1

1 bay 2 valley 3 foothills 4 climate

5 hurricane

Exercise 2

1 d light bulbs 2 a panels

3 f rainforest 4 b species

5 c community

Exercise 3

1 flows 2 erupted 3 struck 4 locate

5 destroyed

Exercise 4

1 a 2 an 3 the 4 The 5 Ø

Exercise 5

1 Stratford-upon-Avon, where

I was brought up, is famous as the

birthplace of William Shakespeare.

2 Singapore, which is an island country

in South-East Asia, is an extremely clean

and tidy place. 3 Prince George of

Cambridge, whose great grandmother is

the Queen of England, was born in 2013.

4 Ganesha, who is a Hindu god, has

an elephant's head. 5 Penang, which

is an island off the coast of Malaysia,

is sometimes called the 'Pearl of the

Orient'.

Exercise 6

1 B 2 B 3 A 4 C 5 B

Unit 6

Exercise 1

1 leg 2 heart 3 hand 4 thighs

5 thumb

Exercise 2

1 black eye 2 ear ache

3 hay fever 4 sunburn 5 first aid

Exercise 3

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 A 5 C

Exercise 4

1 didn't feel 2 had 3 didn't drive

4 would pay 5 was/were

Exercise 5

1 would've hit, hadn't turned

2 wouldn't have offered, had known

3 had dislocated, wouldn't have played

4 hadn't run, would've been sick

5 would've prescribed, hadn't said

Exercise 6

1 B 2 C 3 B 4 B 5 C

Unit 7

Exercise 1

1 absolutely 2 hits 3 producer

4 compete 5 quite

Exercise 2

1 shares 2 came across 3 came up

with 4 got into 5 lives up to

Exercise 3

1 auditions 2 edit 3 present 4 viral

5 rehearsal

Exercise 4

1 ~~I was watching~~ she was watching

2 ~~told~~ said 3 ~~yesterday~~ the day before/

the previous day

4 ~~we'll meet~~ we'd meet

5 ~~can't be~~ couldn't be

Exercise 5

1 I was sure 2 I had studied Drama

3 I hadn't 4 I could act 5 to show him

Exercise 6

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 B 5 C

Unit 8

Exercise 1

1 friendship 2 materialistic 3 smile

4 prison 5 product

Exercise 2

1 C 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 C

Exercise 3

1 appreciate 2 neighbourhood 3 cruel

4 hopeful 5 stupidity

Exercise 4

1 was hunted 2 has been burgled

3 is being renovated 4 was being

washed 5 will be missed

Exercise 5

1 has had her phone fixed

2 is having its/his/her health checked

3 has (only) had her legs waxed

4 Have you (ever) had your phone taken

away

5 Did Helen have her tattoo done

Exercise 6

1 B 2 C 3 A 4 C 5 A

FOCUS THREE

Focus is a rich, varied, carefully levelled course for upper secondary students. Specially designed to motivate older teens, it helps them to track their level and achieve the exam results they need. With its unique blended learning package, Focus is the flexible course that gets results.

MOTIVATION

- Language is brought to life through grammar animations, interactive videos and culturally relevant clips
- Learning is tracked via personalised reporting in the online Gradebook
- Development of language and exam strategies are carefully levelled to the GSE

MEMORY

- The unique approach to vocabulary acquisition via the Word Store helps new words stick in students' memories
- Language acquisition is driven by careful recycling of vocabulary and grammar
- Exam skills are reinforced by Cambridge and PTE General practice booklets

MEANING

- English is made relevant to students' own lives by frequent personalisation
- Meaningful practice is provided by the extensive selection of editable worksheets, assessment programme and tests

FOR STUDENTS



Students' Book



Workbook



MyEnglishLab

FOR TEACHERS



Teacher's Book



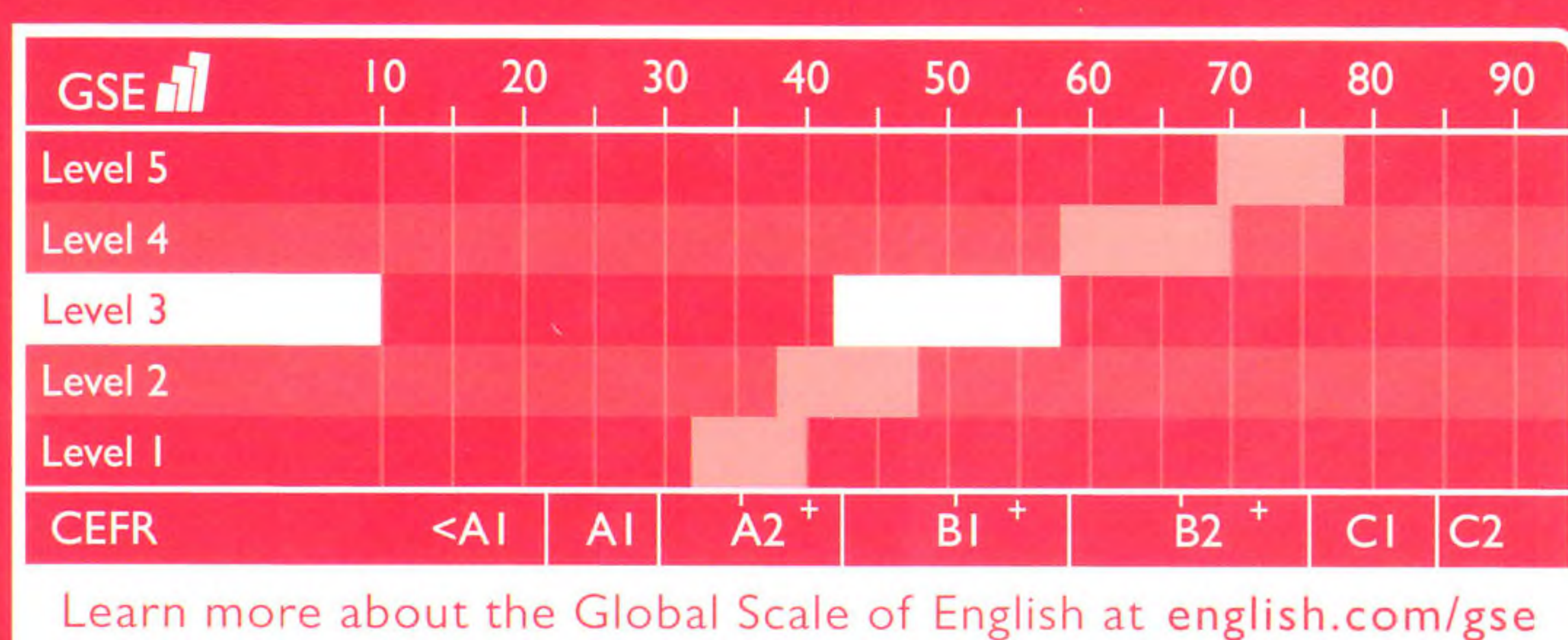
MultiROM



Class CDs



ActiveTeach



Learn more about the Global Scale of English at english.com/gse

www.pearsonelt.com/focus



Progress accurately measures student progress in English, highlighting strengths and weaknesses to inform teaching.

ISBN 978-1-4479-9817-4

